C.7.7.2 Recommendation Approach

The procedure would be similar to that identified for cranes in section C.7.2.2 and would require the following to be submitted to DOB:

First, building structural information submitted by the building Engineer of Record with currently available information to support an analysis of loads imposed by the hoist equipment (if available for existing buildings).

Second, an analysis of the loads imposed by the hoist equipment (considering at a minimum, local resistance of reaction forces and lateral system analysis) by either the building Engineer of Record or by a licensed professional engineer acceptable to the Department of Buildings. The reviewer should document this by a signed shop-drawing stamp on a copy of the approved tie-in drawing.

There could be a tiered process whereby smaller and less complex hoist installations (typical in outer boroughs) would not require the additional engineering review. These could include hoists that are 10 stories or less (less than 125 feet), that are supported on concrete pads bearing on grade, and that are not set back from building (do not require backstructures, common platforms, landing extensions, or any other bridge system between the hoist and the building).

C.8 CRANE OPERATIONS

C.8.1 Description

Crane operations have great influence on the safety aspects while the crane is working within the jurisdiction. Rigging, the practice securing loads to the hoisting equipment, is a particularly critical operation. In fact, the cause of the 2008 crane accident on 51st St was officially classified as due to improper rigging. The HRCO crane team proposes that DOB strengthen various aspects of rigging and eliminate certain practices and promote others. For instance, the HRCO crane team recommends that the Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) have a qualified technician at each assembly, climbing or disassembly activity. This will provide the rigger with a knowledgeable and experienced person that can assist with solving problems and ensure the rigging team adheres to manufacturer approved methods.

Articulating boom trucks (a.k.a, “knuckle booms”) are a type of construction equipment operating within the jurisdiction that have been subject to only limited regulation. The HRCO crane team proposes that this type of equipment be officially classified as a crane and subject to similar requirements as other cranes such as operator licensure and annual inspections.

The US crane industry has all but universally determined that operators should have some form of certification. C-DAC (OSHA’s proposed crane regulation) as well as numerous other jurisdictions have, or soon will, require hoist machine operator (HMO) licenses or certifications. New York City has licensed of HMOs for many years. HRCO crane team proposes that the jurisdiction use a nationally certified provider of certification. This is consistent with the growing trend of utilizing national standards and programs.

Another type of equipment that receives little oversight is the scaffold hoist. These are typically used to install façade panels, windows and similar components. This equipment is presently designed by a professional engineer self-certifying that the hoist is safe to operate to the borough that it will operate. These hoists can lift thousands of pounds and move at high rates of speed. As such, DOB should consider that such hoists be subject to a plan review and pre-use inspection.

A hoist recommendation addresses the practice of riding on top of hoist cars. This is a necessary operation but is also one of the highest risk operations associated with hoists, having caused numerous injuries and fatalities in NYC.

C.8.2 Recommendation C-4: Rigging Safety

The city should increase enforce current regulations related to rigging practices, eliminate the practice of "side pulling" loads and improve rigger training courses.

C.8.2.1 Description

Rigging operations are critical to completing crane work, but also include a high risk level if not preformed properly. Some of the improper practices that the HRCO crane team witnessed are:

- Hoisting over people.
- Load insufficiently attached to crane, danger of losing all or part of the load.
- Load striking other objects during hoisting.
- Slings and other rigging instruments in a deteriorated condition.

There are instances where poor rigging practices were witnessed by the HRCO team. Several of these are included in the pictures that follow. Such occurrences may be reduced if DOB inspectors can increase their frequency of patrol; particularly mobile cranes operating within the Jurisdiction (see Tracking Mobile Cranes Recommendation, C-R-17).

The HRCO crane team experience supports the contention that the causes of most rigging accidents are human error. The rigging material itself is generally inspected and selected with sufficient load rating.

C. 8.2.2 Recommendation Approach

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions:

- Establish a DOB sanction group to discuss the current practices, how they differ from the regulations, and determine the best means to transfer the need for proper rigging to the workers.

- The practice of dragging or side pulling the load should be eliminated.

- The 30 hour tower crane rigger class should devote a substantial portion of its curriculum on the erection, climbing and dismantling of tower cranes as well as general rigging.

Establish a DOB sanction group review current industry practices, how they differ from the regulations, and determine the best means to enforce current regulations.

The HRCO team observed situations that resulted in unsafe practices related to rigging such as the ones mentioned in the above description section and shown below. Current regulations should be sufficient to address these issues. Increased enforcement and interaction with industry is necessary to improve practices.

Table C.8.1 summarizes HRCO crane team observations that illustrate poor rigging practices.

Site C-27 – 10/2/08

- Articulating boom crane with forklift attachment unloading drywall and drywall compound pallets to 5th floor where pallets are unloaded through apartment window.
- Worker climbing on pallet suspended from crane outside of the 5th floor is not tied off.
- Hoisting over pedestrians, no flag person, workers are unloading buckets and drywall sheets over pedestrians, later one flagman appears without hard hat, flag or safety vest.
- Crane with forklift attachment swings out into traffic on a heavily travelled street (3rd lane not closed off).

Site C-72 - 8/5/2008

Tower crane on new building.

Riggers use nylon slings because they received electrical shocks when they touched the bare metal of the hook (no picture).

Site C-94 - 9/5/2008

Climbing operation of tower crane

Rigger not tied off, fell from work platform suspended from crane (no picture).

Site C-88 - 9/25/2008

Truck unloading machinery (probably parts of heating system or pump) on sidewalk.

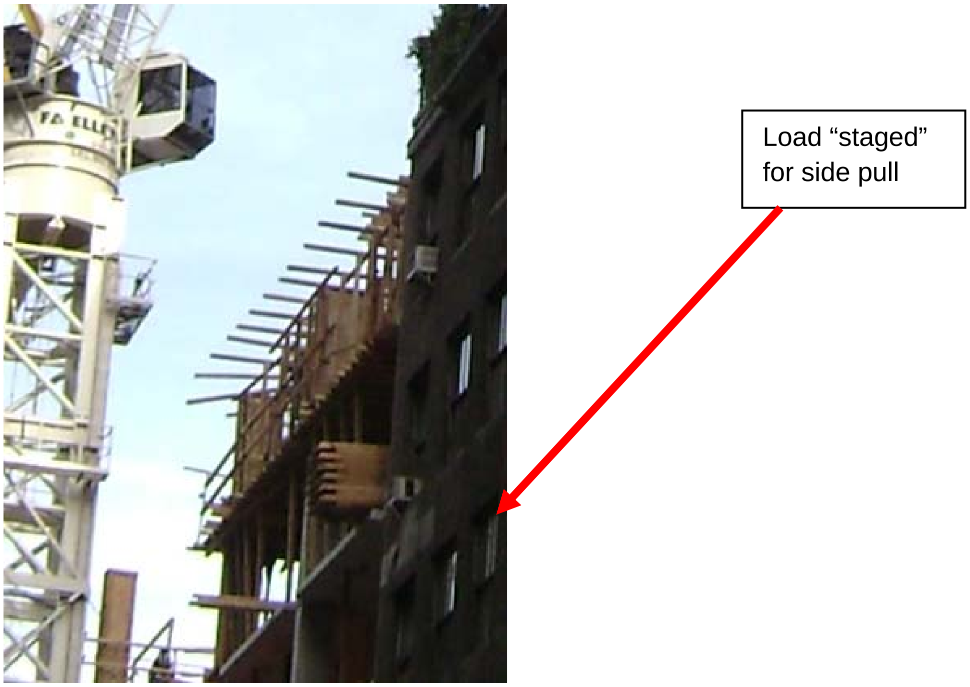
- Load is not rigged properly and rotates. Therefore, operator cannot control load (jerky movements).

- No flag persons, pedestrians passing by on sidewalk. While load rotates approximately 2’ from ground, it almost hits a pedestrian walking by.

Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues

Site C-88 - 9/25/2008

Tower crane operating on new building. Loads repeatedly side-pulled.



Site C-35 – 11/19/2008

Mobile crane moving debris.

- Loose load of debris in container is not secured sufficiently against wind and other forces in a jobsite where workers were active.

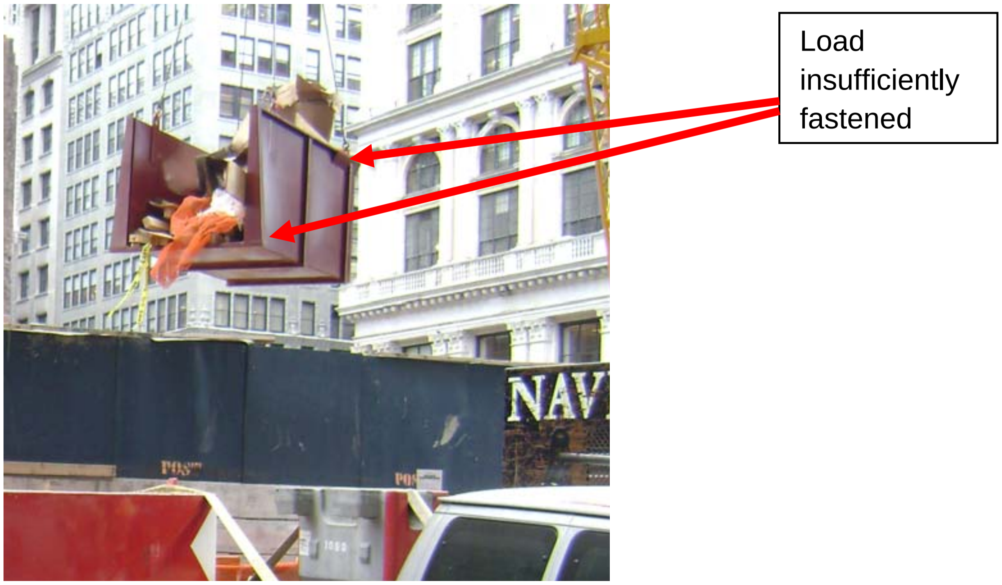
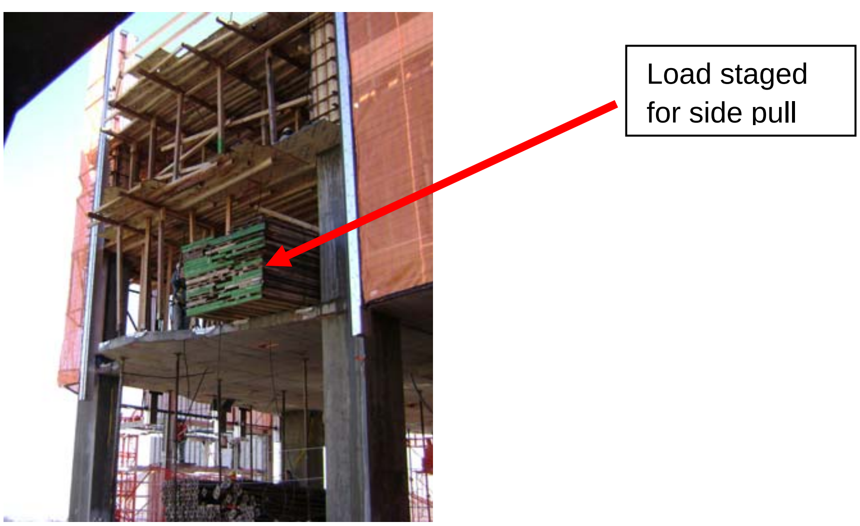


Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues (cont)

Site C-73 - 12/1/2008

Tower crane operations with loads stored in lower floors and dragged out of windows as needed.

- When pulling load out of side of building, a second, adjacent load became caught and was dragged out of building and fell to ground (picture shows a similarly staged load at this building).



Site C-52 - 12/18/2008

Scaffolding hoist “cathead” moving concrete / stone plates for exterior of building

- Guiding wires for load were loose; load collided with stone plate already attached to building while hoisting up. The plate came loose and fell onto an adjacent school.

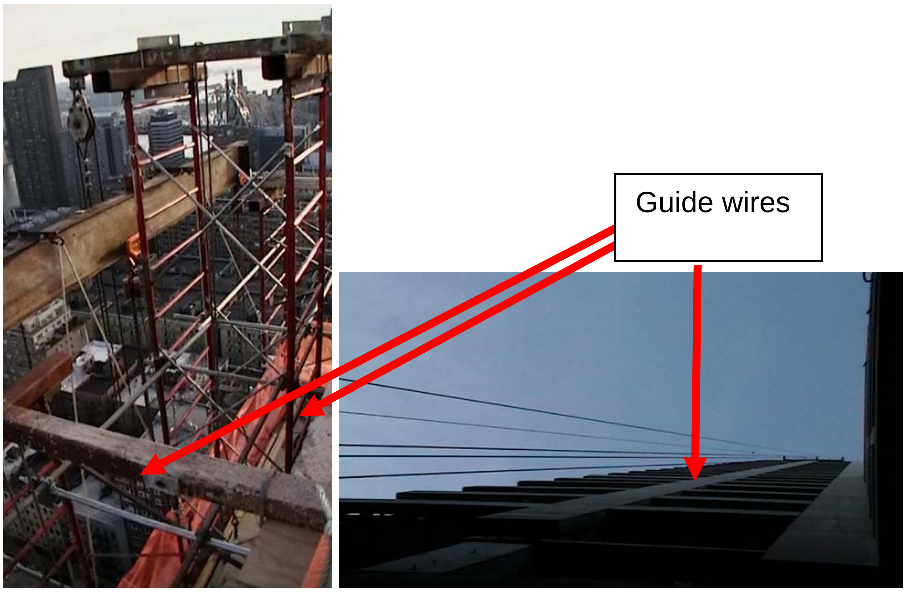


Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues (cont)

Site C-84 - 9/29/2008

Work on foundation and first floor of new building using mobile crane.

- Crane moves loads over people.

Site C-89 – 9/25/2008

Work on new building using crawler crane in tower crane setup.

- Hoisting over people.
- Load hits sidewalk shed because of bad communication to crane operator.
- Load insufficiently fastened.

Load insufficiently fastened

Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues (cont)

Site unknown (observation was made while en route to another site).

- Load fastened to plastic handles of filled water jugs.
- Hoisting over people.

Load fastened to plastic handles of filled water jugs.

Site C-96 - 10/10/2008

Boom truck set up on street

- Spring of catch of main hook defective.
- Rigger does not pay attention while folding jib back into “travel” position.

Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues (cont)

Site C-49 - 11/12/2008

Dismantling of tower crane

- Tower crane rigger climbs onto platform suspended by crane without wearing a safety harness.

Site C-73 - 1/19/2009

Tower Crane safety lines attaching tie-in collar to crane tower:

- Wire rope pinched in shackle.
- No rope protection on edge (leads to dangerous condition known as “bird caging”).

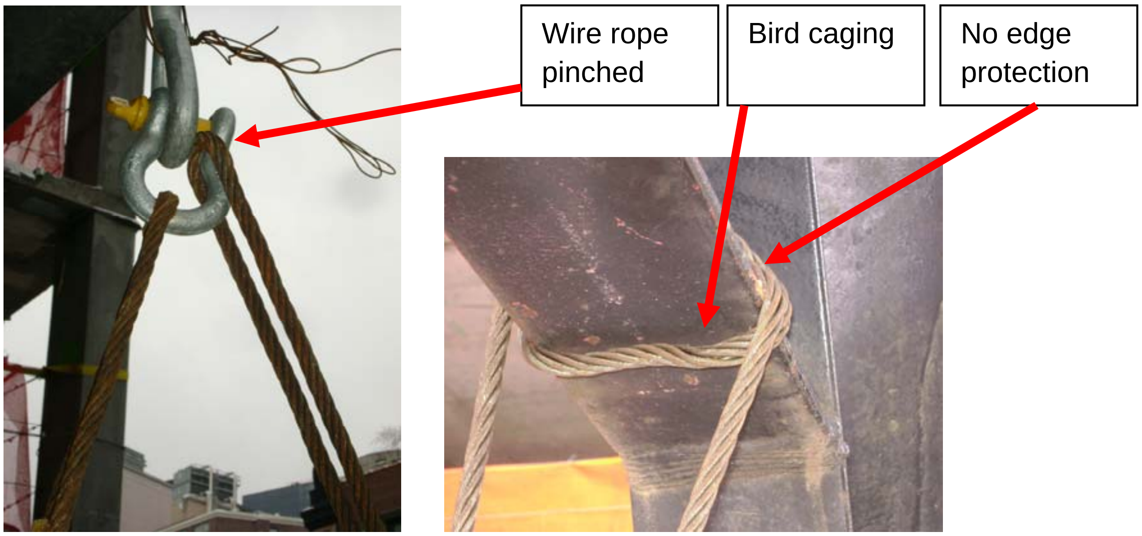


Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues (cont)

Site C-103 – 10/3/2008

New building with crawler crane hoisting precast concrete panels into place:

- Riggers, signal persons on roof without harness.

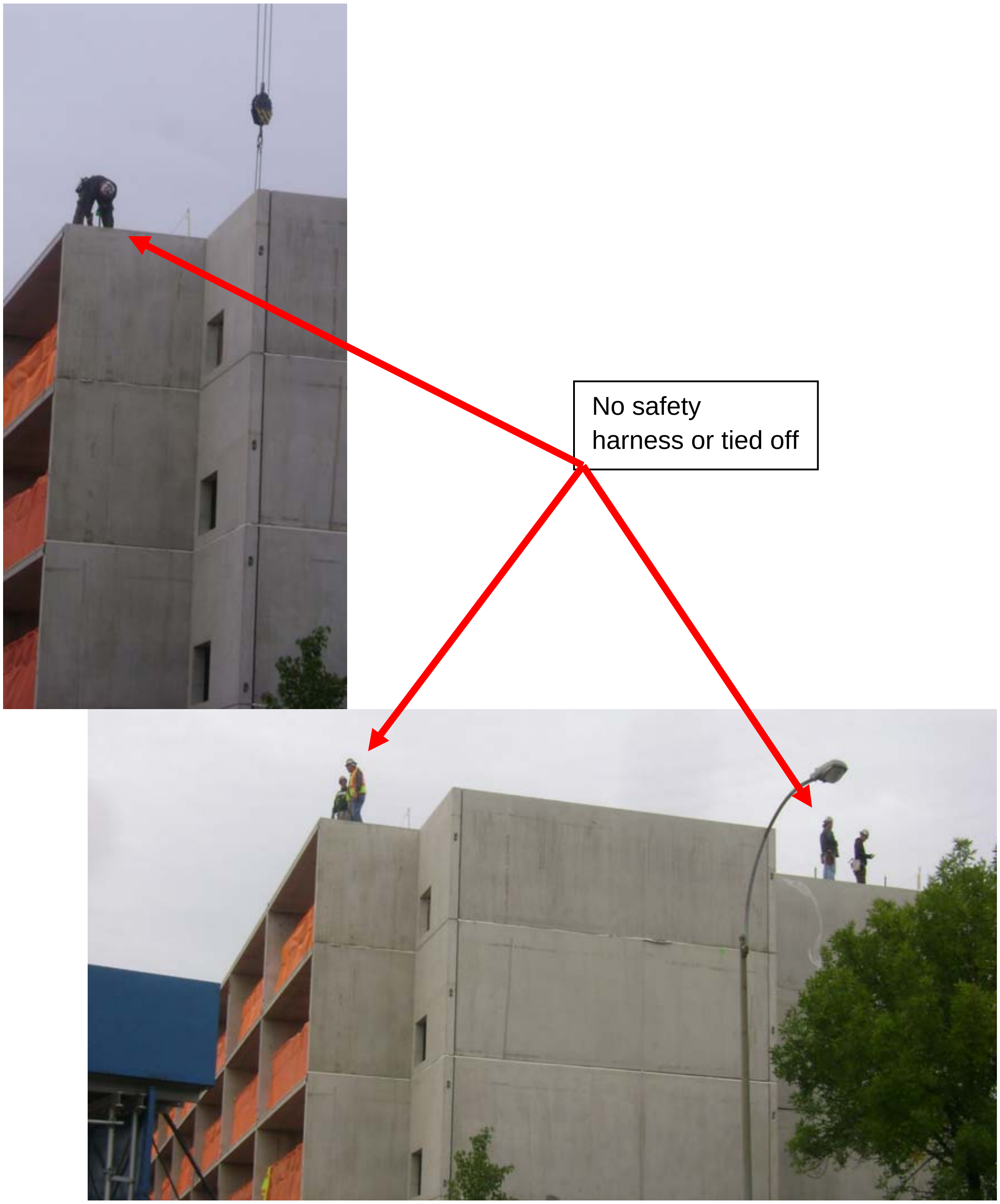


Table C.8.1: Rigging Issues (cont)

The practice of dragging or side pulling the load should be eliminated.

The load should be freely suspended at all times. A load should only be picked up if the top boom sheave and the center of gravity of the load are lined up on the same vertical axis. In addition, shock-loading of cranes is a risky procedure and should be discouraged.

This recommendation targets the current practice of side pulling loads out of buildings. Due to restricted storage space on most building sides, materials such as rebar, wallboard and wood are stored on the lower floors. If stored within the building, the load can not be picked up from above by placing the hook over the center of gravity of the load, because of interference from the next floor above.

The correct way to handle the load in this situation is the use of a loading platform, that cantilevers out of the building (see High-rise Concrete Recommendation C-R-03). A load placed on the platform can be lifted vertically versus dragging a load across the floor.

The HRCO crane team observed two jobsites (see Table C.8.1), where parts were regularly pulled out of the side of buildings. The rigger pulls the hook into the building (the hoist line may touch the edge of the ceiling) and attaches the hook to the load. Then the crane starts to hoist up. The load slides horizontally over the floor to the edge of the floor, then tips over the edge and eventually suspended by the crane. Because of the initial horizontal movement, the load may start to swing like a pendulum. The crane operator dampens this swinging by carefully counter-slewing (turning) the crane.

The risks of this practice include:

- The crane load has a horizontal component (side-pulling) which is not allowed for most cranes (see OEM manuals) because cranes are not designed for this type of loading. In an extreme case the boom or jib can buckle or the crane can tip over.
- There is a danger of shock-loading as the full load is suddenly applied, when the load leaves the edge of the building. In extreme cases, this can tip the crane or buckle a lattice type jib or boom.
- When touching the concrete slab above, the hoist rope is subject to damage.
- Many load limiting devices and load measuring devices do not operate correctly if the load does not hang directly under the hook.
- This practice does not allow a “second try”. Once the crane starts to hoist, the load may move so fast that it often can not be set down again (in essence, load could simulate a fall out of the window). In a normal hoisting situation, the crane operators and riggers can observe the load while it is slowly picked up a few inches. If the load shifts, loosens, or behaves in some other unexpected way, the operator can set the load back down for re-rigging.

The HRCO crane team observed an accident site (C-73) at which a rebar mat that was being pulled out of the building and caught on other staged rebar. The result was that several pieces of rebar fell to the ground. In addition during the team's accident file review, there was another occurrence in 2006 where the operator was pulling a load out of the 13th floor and after the slings shifted and the load fell (the implication of the accident report was that this was associated with side pulling).

The HRCO crane team reviewed current regulations regarding hoisting operation, including OSHA regulations (CDAC included), NYC Building Code RS19-2 and ASME B30.3 (construction tower cranes), and B30.5 (mobile and locomotive cranes. These have provisions that would restrict the side pulling of loads from buildings.

For example, the proposed new OSHA rules for the construction industry (OSHA 1926) from C-DAC have the following provisions regarding side-pulling:

> ***"1417 Operation***
> *(q) The equipment shall not be used to drag or pull loads sideways."*

The ASME B30.3-2004 "Construction Tower Crane" requires that side loading of booms should be limited to freely suspended loads, not from dragging loads

This following is an example of a manufacturer's recommendation regarding side pulling and load dragging:

> ***"06.01 16/18 Notes on Safety Measures***
>
> *The load hook must hang directly over the load (observe center-of-gravity position). The permissible load limits refer only to loads that are freely suspended on a vertical hoist rope.*
>
> *! Attention*
>
> *Dragging and diagonal pulling is prohibited because the load limiter may not react properly.... Danger of injury and material damage"*

The NYC regulatory code RS19-2 has rules concerning side-pulling of loads:

> *"23.0 Handling the Load.-No crane or derrick shall be loaded beyond the rated load.*
>
> *23.3.4 Side loading of booms shall be limited to freely suspended loads. Cranes shall not be used for dragging loads sideways. Derricks shall not be used for side loading."*

The 30 hour tower crane rigger class should devote a substantial portion of its curriculum on the erection, climbing and dismantling of tower cranes as well as general rigging.

The City passed a law that requires the members of assembly/climbing/dismantling crews attend a 30-hour training course covering instruction on fall protection, crane assembly and disassembly, pre-lift planning, weights and materials, the use of slings, lifting/lowering loads, signaling and other proper means of communication with the crane operator, crane and hoist inspections, rigging requirements, and generally how to avoid accidents with cranes and hoists. The goal is to promote safety through a better understanding by the crew of these procedures.

The schooling material for this class is approved by DOB. As of March 15th, there were five (5) approved courses.

A member of the HRCO crane team observed a 4 hour section of a class. The HRCO crane team also reviewed DOB approved schooling materials for the class and noted the following:

- The printed material addresses general rigging practice, but did not focus sufficiently on the procedures related to crane assembly/climbing/dismantling.
- 42 pages of 120 pages dealt directly with tower cranes, 11 additional pages contained basic crane information including load charts and “contact with live wires”. The remaining pages included basic rigging and information including items like calculating the center of gravity and the weight of loads or splicing ropes.
- The material did not cover the inner / outer tower crane design although it is used frequently in NYC.
- Methods of torquing bolts were not described sufficiently even though this type of work is generally handled by riggers.
- Personnel safety and fall protection, especially working with lanyards / safety harnesses and the rescuing of persons hanging on a safety harness, should be included.

See the chapter “tower crane erection” (C-R-13) for examples of erection related issues observed by the HRCO crane team. Some of these examples are either the result of little knowledge or of a lack of sufficient oversight during this critical job.

C.8.3 Recommendation C-12: Articulating Boom Cranes

The definition of "crane" should be changed so that articulating boom cranes are regarded as a special type of crane. This, in turn, would require each such crane to have an annual inspection (Certificate of Operation) and a licensed operator (HMO).

C.8.3.1 Description

Articulating boom cranes have become increasingly large and more complex. One such crane can lift 40 tons and reach heights over 100'. Presently, these machines are allowed to deliver and pick up material at job sites and erect scaffolding without requiring a Certificate of Operation (CD) for the machine or a hoist-machine-operator (HMO) license for the operator. Due to such cranes not having a CD, they cannot perform construction activities because they cannot receive a CN.

These machines typically have inner, outer and jib booms actuated by hydraulic cylinders (no hoist winch). The unit may have a hook or other attachment (e.g. fork lift, drywall cradle, etc.).

The safe operation of an articulating boom crane is similar to a boom truck. For example, both require knowledge of load charts, the ability to set up the machine (prevent tipping) and basic rigging and safety checks and inspections of the machine.

.

Figure C.8.1: Articulating Boom Crane

Figure C.8.2: Boom Truck

C.8.3.2 Recommendation Approach

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions:

- Operators for articulating boom cranes should be licensed as hoisting machine operators. DOB would issue a new type of license for articulating boom cranes used for the loading and unloading of trucks and trailers, that includes the following:
  - A written test administered by a nationally recognized certification agency. NCCCO is currently preparing a license certificate for articulating boom crane operators and is scheduled to be available in 2009.
  - A practical test administered by a recognized certification agency.
- A Certificate of Operation (“CD”) (NYC Building Code BC 3319.5) including the annual inspection / renewal should be required for articulating boom cranes.
- Articulating Boom Trucks operating in loading and unloading of trucks and trailers as described in NYC Building Code BC 3319.10 should be exempt from the requirement of a “Certificate of on-site Inspection” (C/N) (BC 3319.6) and from a “Certificate of Approval” (BC 3319.7). This exemption allows the operator of an articulating boom truck to erect scaffolding and temporary roofing, deliver material to the upper stories of a building and to the roof and to remove debris etc. as long as the bed of a truck or trailer are involved in the load movement.
- The other exemptions in Building Code BC 3319.3 should stay in place and should apply to articulating boom cranes in the same way as for conventional hoisting mobile cranes. This includes the “conventional” unloading of trucks.

The HRCO team relied on chance encounters during other site visits or while traveling to sites. During its field research, the HRCO crane team encountered a total of six (6) articulating boom trucks in operation. In five (5) of these cases, the team observed issues regarding the setup and/or the operation and/or rigging.

DOB accident/incident database and the list of ECB (Environmental Control Board) violations provided by DOB often do not generally specify the type of crane with sufficient detail to identify whether articulating boom cranes were associated with accidents and incidents. However, the Cranes and Derricks division’s files offer the following:

  - 1/15/08, “knuckle boom tips over due to set up (short outriggers)”
  - 10/16/2008, “knuckle boom brakes off due to possible overload”

Site C-27 - 10/2/08

Crane with forklift attachment unloading drywall and drywall compound pallets to 5th floor where pallets are unloaded through window.

Operational Issues:

- Worker climbing on pallet suspended from crane outside of the 5th floor is not tied off.
- Hoisting over pedestrians, no flag person, workers are unloading buckets and drywall sheets over pedestrians, later one flagman appears without hardhat, flag or safety vest.
- Crane with forklift attachment swings out into traffic on a heavily traveled street (3rd lane not closed off).

Site C-88 - 9/25/2008

Truck unloading machinery (probably parts of heating system or pump) on sidewalk.

- Load is not rigged properly and rotates. Therefore, operator cannot control load (jerky movements).
- No flag persons, pedestrians passing by on sidewalk. While load rotates approximately 2' from ground, it almost hits pedestrian walking by.

[no pictures available]

Table C.8.2: Articulating Boom Crane Issues (cont.)

Site C-46 - 1/20/09

Crane removing roofing material and temporary decking from 5 story building.

Crane-Setup Issue:

- Crane has outriggers on top of underground vault (basement).

Operational Issue:

- Crane operator used a remote control. He could not see the load or the crane and did not have the sufficient number of signal-persons. The operator is on crutches and sits in a vehicle parked on the curb at other side of the street. He has no oversight of the load and crane behavior (DOB) Inspector saw outrigger move on pad).

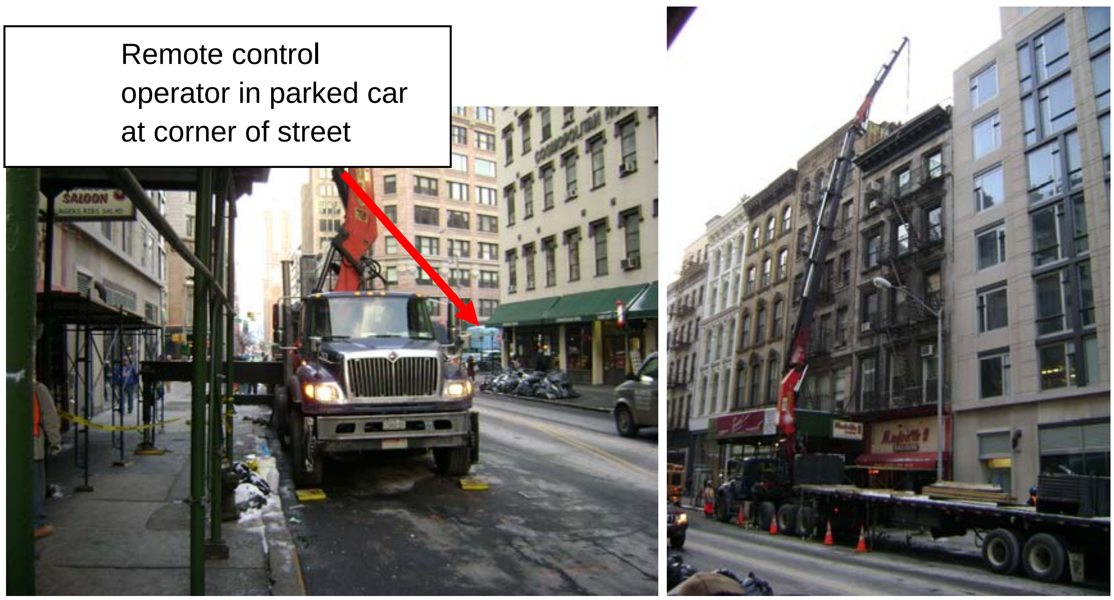


Figure 8-3.4, Interviews with articulating boom truck operators

The HRCO team tried to interview crane operators in various cases, and all were reluctant to talk to the HRCO team member. The following issues were similar in these cases:

- The operators did not show a crane operator license.
- Other persons involved in the load movement seemed to lack basic safety knowledge regarding rigging, people protection and safety of the public during hoisting operation.

Table C. 8.2 Articulating Boom Crane Issues (cont.)

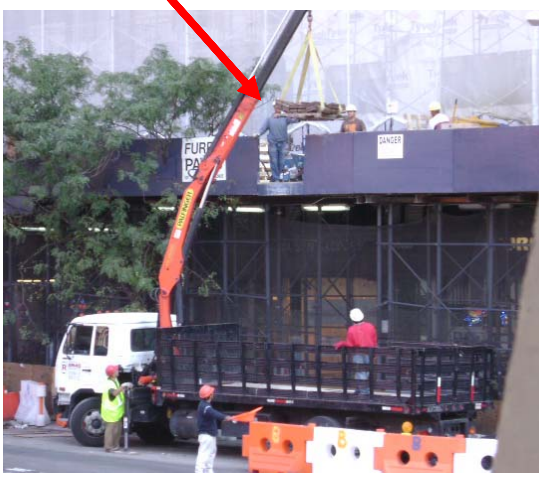
Site C-41 - 9/23/08

Crane unloading steel blocks onto 2nd story scaffolding.

Operational Issue:

- Workers receiving load on scaffolding not tied off.
- Load rigged with sling around pallet. Pallet rigged with basket hitch cannot support load and disintegrates during lift. Load moves, almost falls.

Not tied off



Pallet disintegrates

Interviews with DOB inspectors

DOB inspectors expressed the opinion that a substantial percentage of the complaints about crane operations received via its "311" hotline, is caused by articulating boom trucks. These trucks often have left the building site when the inspector arrives to follow up.

Table C. 8.2: Articulating Boom Crane Issues (cont.)

Site C-91 - 1/9/2009

Steel beams are unloaded onto scaffolding on 2nd – 3rd floor.

Crane-Setup Issue :

- Outriggers are not properly positioned on pads.
- Front outriggers (under engine compartment) are not extended.
- Crane is not level.

Operational Issue:

- Flag-persons do rigging work and do not stop pedestrians.
- Steel beams are hoisted over pedestrians for installation. Existing sidewalk shed will probably not protect pedestrians against this type of falling load.
- Workers on scaffold are not tied off.

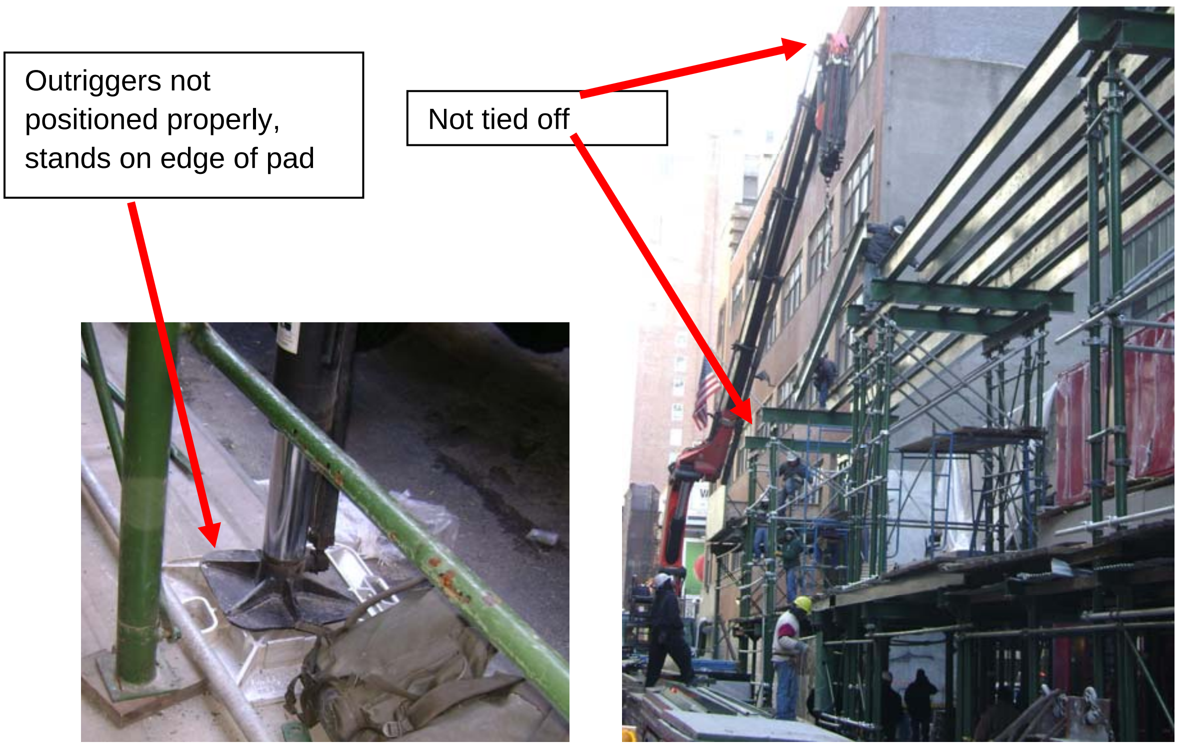


Table C. 8.2: Articulating Boom Crane Issues (cont.)

Table C.8.8.3 shows a summary of the applicability of crane operation topics that NCCCO covers in its mobile crane operator written exams. The HRCO crane team analyzed each topic (see Section C.8.3.3) with respect to whether it was applicable for the operation of an articulating boom crane. The majority of the exam material did apply. An important distinction, however, is the load chart for an articulating boom crane. Additional knowledge regarding the reading and interpretation of these load charts would be needed because the articulating boom crane can have different load capacity for the same load radius (because of different angles and extension length that the inner and outer boom could have for the same load radius).

Knowledge Requirement	Quantity (%)
Topic fully applies	29 (71%)
Partial applicable	10 (24%)
Does not apply	2 (5%)

Table C.8.3: NCCCO Summary for Articulating Boom Cranes

C.8.3.3 Additional HRCO Observations

C-DAC covers these cranes by having a broader definition of a crane: *1400.a This standard applies to power-operated equipment used in construction that can hoist, lower and horizontally move a suspended load.* Accordingly, rules that describe and regulate cranes should apply to articulating boom cranes (e.g. rules regarding outriggers apply to all cranes, but rules regarding an anti-two-block device only apply to cranes using wire rope and a hoisting drum).

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers issued a specific standard for this type of crane (B30.22-2005). This is indicative that the industry believes there are sufficient numbers and a separate standard should apply.

The following table shows the NCCCO knowledge requirements covered in the core portion of a test for mobile crane operators [www.nccco.org]. The HRCO crane team evaluated for each requirement if the knowledge would be needed for the safe operation of a large articulating boom crane mounted on a truck.

	Description of Knowledge for Mobile Crane Operator as per NCCCO	Applicability for Articulating Boom Crane
	DOMAIN 1: SITE *(Approximately 20% of the test)*	
1.1	Know that the suitability of the supporting surface to handle the expected loads. Elements of concern include but are not limited to: (a) weakness below the surface such as voids, tanks and loose fill; (b) weakness on the surface such as retaining walls, slopes, excavations and depressions.	**fully applicable**
1.2.	Know the proper use of mats, blocking or cribbing and outriggers or crawlers as they affect the supporting surfaces to handle the expected loads of the operation.	**fully applicable**
1.3.	Know electric power line hazards, corresponding regulations and safety practices.	**fully applicable**

1.4.	Know how to identify and evaluate hazards associated with: (a) access to job site (b) site hazards such as underground utilities (c) transportation clearances	**partially applicable**, [carrier vehicle normally stay within load and size limits of ordinary road trucks]
1.5.	Know how to review how to review lift requirements with site supervision to include determination of working height, boom length, load radius, load weight, crane capacity, travel clearance, extension of crawlers or outriggers/stabilizers and counterweights.	**fully applicable**
	DOMAIN 2: OPERATIONS *(Approximately 26% of the test)*	
2.1.	Know which federal regulations and industry standards affect safe operation of the crane, including but not limited to ASME B30.5, B30.10, B30.23, OSHA 1910.180, 1926.550.	**fully applicable**, B30.22 for articulating boom
2.2.	Know how to conduct daily crane inspections for unsafe conditions/deficiencies and to notify supervision of these conditions.	**fully applicable**
2.3	Know how to pick, carry, swing and place the load smoothly and safely on rubber tires and on outriggers/stabilizers or crawlers (where applicable).	**fully applicable**
2.4	Know proper procedures and methods of revving all wire ropes and methods of revving multiple part lines and selecting the proper load block and/or ball.	**Does not apply** [no wire rope used for hoisting]
2.5	Know standard hand signals as specified in ASME B30.5.	**fully applicable**
2.6	Know how to shut down and secure the crane properly when leaving it unattended, based on manufacture's recommendations in both normal and emergency conditions.	**fully applicable,**
2.7	Know the manufacture's recommendations for operating in various weather conditions, and understand how environmental conditions affect the safe operation of the crane.	**partially applicable** [behavior in winds related to the hoist rope length not applicable]

2.8	Know how to verify the weight of the load and rigging prior to initiation of the lift	**fully applicable**
2.9	Know how to determine where the load is to be picked up and places and how to verify the radii.	**fully applicable**
2.10	Know basic load and rigging procedures.	**fully applicable**
2.11	Know how to perform daily maintenance and inspection.	**fully applicable**
2.12	Know how to use the following operator aids: (a) LMI, (b) anti-two block device, (c) boom angle indicator, (d) rated load indicator, (e) Boom length indicators.	**(a) fully applicable** **(b) does not apply** **(c) fully applicable** **(d) fully applicable** **(e) fully applicable**
2.13	Know which operations reduce crane capacity or require specific procedures or skill levels such as: (a) multi-crane lifts, (b) suspended personnel platforms, (c) duty cycle operations, (d) Barge operations.	**(a) fully applicable** **(b) fully applicable** **(c) does not apply** **(d) does not apply**
2.14	Know the proper procedures for operating safely under the following conditions: (a) traveling with suspended loads, (b) approaching two-blocking, (c) operating near electric power lines, (d) using suspended personnel platforms, (e) lifting loads from beneath the surface of the water, (f) using various approved counterweight configurations, (g) handling loads out of the operators vision ("operating in the blind"), (h) Using electronic communications techniques, such as radios, extreme weather.	**(a) does somewhat apply** [vehicle normally has truck bed to carry loads] **(b) does not apply** **(c) fully applicable** **(d) fully applicable** **(e) fully applicable** **(f) does not apply** **(g) fully applicable** **(h) fully applicable**
2.15	Know the proper procedures for load control and the use of hand-held tag lines.	**Partially applicable** [load control is easier because load is always near to boom tip]
2.16	Know how to react to: (a) electric power line contact, (b) loss of stability, (c) control malfunction, (d) block and line twisting, (e) carrier or travel malfunction.	**(a) fully applicable** **(b) fully applicable** **(c) fully applicable** **(d) not applicable** **(e) fully applicable**
2.17	Know how to properly use the outriggers in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.	**fully applicable**
2.18	Know the alternative operating procedures when operator aids malfunction.	**fully applicable**
2.19	Know the effects of dynamic loading from: (a) wind, (b) stopping and starting, (c) impact loading (d) moving load (e) traveling with the load (pick and carry).	**fully applicable except (e) does somewhat apply** [vehicle normally has truck bed to carry loads]

2.20	Know the effect of side loading.	**fully applicable**
	DOMAIN 3: TECHNICAL KNOWLEDGE *(Approximately 28% of the test)*	
3.1	Know the basic crane terminology and definitions.	**fully applicable**
3.2	Know the functions and limitations of the crane and attachments.	**fully applicable**
3.3	Know wire rope: (a) construction and breaking strength, inspection procedures, (b) replacement criteria and procedures, (c) capacity and when multi-part rope is needed, (d) maintenance and lubrication, relationship between line pull and safe working load.	**Does not apply, except as part of rigging**
3.4	Know rigging devices and their use, such as: (a) slings, (b) spreaders, (c) lifting beams, (d) wire rope fittings, such as clips, shackles and wedge sockets, (e) saddles (softeners), (f) clamps, (g) Hook blocks and overhaul balls.	**fully applicable**
3.5	Know the limitations of protective measures against electrical hazards.	**fully applicable**
3.6	Know the effects of load share and load transfer in multi-crane lifts.	**fully applicable**
3.7	Know the significance of the instruments, gauge readings and machine power system.	**fully applicable**
3.8	Know the requirements of pre-operation and inspection and maintenance.	**fully applicable**
3.9	Know the uses and limitations of all operational devices/aids.	**fully applicable**
3.10	Know how to calculate net capacity for the crane configuration using the applicable manufacture's load chart.	**fully applicable**
3.11	Know how to use the manufacturer-approved attachments and their effect on the cranes operation.	**fully applicable**
3.12	Know the principles of backward stability.	**partially applicable**, [accidental back swinging of load attached to boom tip less likely]
	DOMAIN 4: MANUFACTURERS' LOAD CHARTS *(Approximately 26% of the test)*	
4.1	Know the terminology necessary to use load charts.	**fully applicable**

4.2	Know how to ensure that the load chart is the appropriate chart for the machine in its particular application.	**fully applicable**
4.3	Know how to use capacity load charts. This includes knowing: (a) the operational limitations of load charts and footnotes, (b) the difference between structural capacity and capacity limited by stability, (c) what is included in load chart capacity, (d) the range diagram and its relationship to the load chart, (e) the work area chart and its relationship to the load chart, (f) where to find and how to use the "parts-of-line" information, (g) The safe working load of hoist line.	**(a) – (e) fully applicable,** **(f), (g) does not apply**
4.4	Know how to use the load chart together with the load indicators.	**fully applicable**

C.8.4 Recommendation C-13: Crane Assembly

All assembly, climbing and dismantling of a tower crane must include the on-site participation of a Technical Advisor who is one of the following:

1. *A representative from the Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM).*
2. *A qualified, factory trained representative of the distributor / OEM.*
3. *A qualified, factory trained owner's representative.*

C.8.4.1 Description

In New York City, the assembly, climbing and dismantling of tower cranes is performed by riggers. Assembly, climbing and dismantling of a tower crane are critical phases of a crane installation and are unique for different crane models. There are a wide variety of make and models and new crane models are introduced to the city regularly.

The individual rigger may not be the most knowledgeable person for the intricate details of the assembly, climbing and dismantling procedures for all the different tower crane models in the city. The HRCO team found instances of unsafe work practices as well as poor work quality on its site visits. Due to the above, the HRCO team has identified a need to have a consistent source of expertise on site during assembly, climbing and dismantling, particularly to be able to safely handle emergency situations (e.g. due to equipment failure) such as a representative from the OEM or trained by the OEM.

Figure C.8.3: Climbing process

Figure C.8.4: Dismantling process

C.8.4.2 Recommendation Approach

The Technical Advisor is on-site to provide technical oversight as needed. The most important function of this person is to be able to “identify and resolve problems” for the particular crane being assembled, climbed or dismantled. Further, their duties will be to assist and provide advice to the rigging crew, but not to supervise.

Requirements for the technical advisor should include the following:

1. The advisor is employed by an OEM or its local distributor for the crane being assembled, climbed or dismantled and should have:
    - Completed OEM approved classes that cover assembly, climbing and dismantling of the particular crane model or model family.
    - A certificate from the OEM, declaring him capable of supervising the assembly, climbing and dismantling of that crane model.
    - Regular and direct contact with the OEM should it become necessary
    - Clear understanding of the latest rules and technical notes regarding procedures for that particular crane.
2. When the OEM, or its successor(s), does not offer this kind of technical advisory service, the advisor should be employed by the owner. This person should have:
    - Received training from the OEM prior to their suspending such a service, or OEM training from another crane manufacturer that provides cranes with similar climbing procedures (e. g. for an inner/outer tower crane design).
    - Supervised or actively worked on at least 10 assemblies, 10 climbs and 10 dismantlings of this particular crane model or model family within the last 5 years.
    - Supervised or actively worked on at least 50 assemblies / climbs/ dismantlings of tower cranes within the last 5 years.
3. At the end of the assembly, climbing or dismantling the technical advisor would submit a short report to DOB and owner. The owner will keep these reports with the crane’s maintenance file. The report should include the following:
    - His observations regarding safety concerns and open issues
    - Any irregularities that occurred during the process

In New York City, assembly, climbing and dismantling of tower cranes are performed by tower cranes riggers and supervised by a tower crane master rigger (licensed by NYC) or a foreman designated by the master rigger. A new law now requires individual members of these teams to have attended an approved DOB course (see C-R-04, Rigging).

Generally, a DOB inspector visits the site during the assembly, climbing or dismantling.
Some crane owners provide their own representative during erection of a crane as a service to the customer, and some are crane OEM distributors as well.

On 3/15/08 a tower crane collapsed during a climbing procedure, killing 7 people. One cause noted for the accident was pour rigging practice / poor job supervision. 5 people were injured when a part was dropped on 9/29/2006 during dismantling of a tower crane.

The HRCO team performed 17 site visits related to assembly, climbing or disassembly of tower cranes. The following observations during HRCO crane team site visits show either a lack of training or a non-attentive approach to work quality and safety.

Site C-31 - 1/21/09
Tower sections of a tower crane installed wrong as it was turned 90 degrees. Ladders do not align. This is a safety hazard for operators and maintenance personnel.

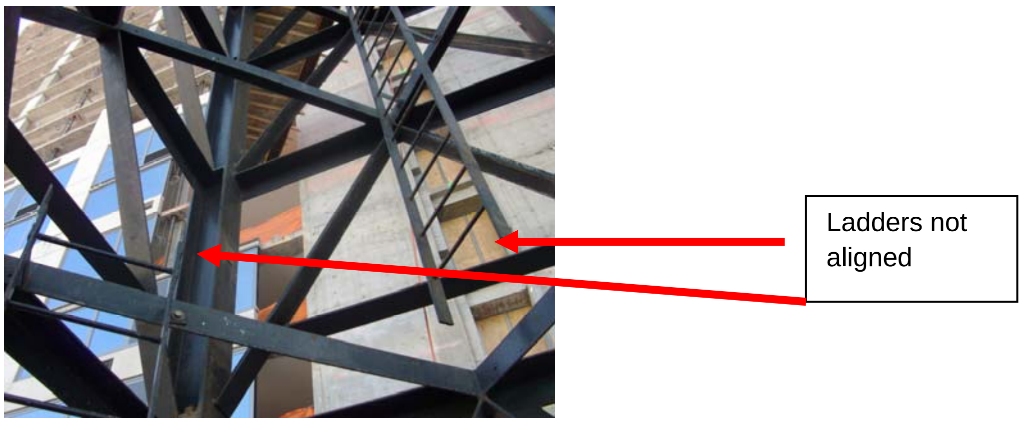


Figure C.8.5

Site C-6 - 8/15/2008
Climber platform of interior climbing tower crane was not secured (set at 30 degree). No pictures are available**.**

Site C-150 - 1/9/2008
The HRCO crane team observed a 4 hour period of a 30 hour tower crane rigger class. The HRCO received the training material for that class. The class gives a good overview regarding basic rigging practice (regulations, calculating weight of parts, safe operation, slings and rigging tools, etc.) but judging from the training material, the assembly, climbing and dismantling of tower cranes receives only a small portion of the class (see recommendation C-4, Rigging Safety).

C-61 - 12/1/2009

The hook of the climbing frame on a tower crane was bent. The bent hook would not properly latch into the member of a supporting tower section and could either slip off or break off during climbing operations

The site was visited after the erection of the crane. The hook was bent either during the last climbing, or the climbing frame was installed damaged.

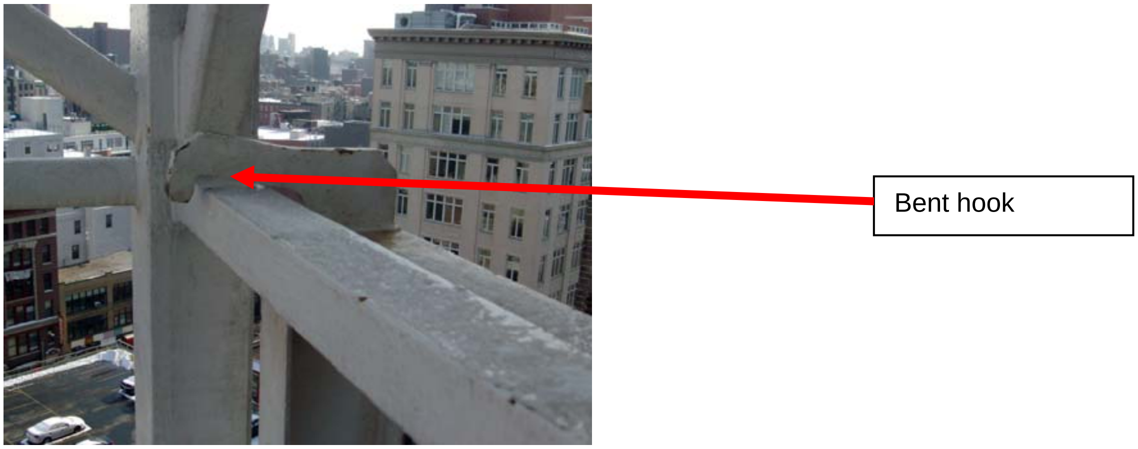


Figure C.8.6

Site C-94 - 9/5/2008

This site was visited after an accident in which a rigger fell over 40 stories to his death while working on a platform suspended from the tower crane during climbing. This platform is used to work on bolted connections on the outside of the tower. The picture shows a worker trying to loosen a similar work platform on the same crane on 11/11/08 (after the original accident). In this case, the worker is tied off.

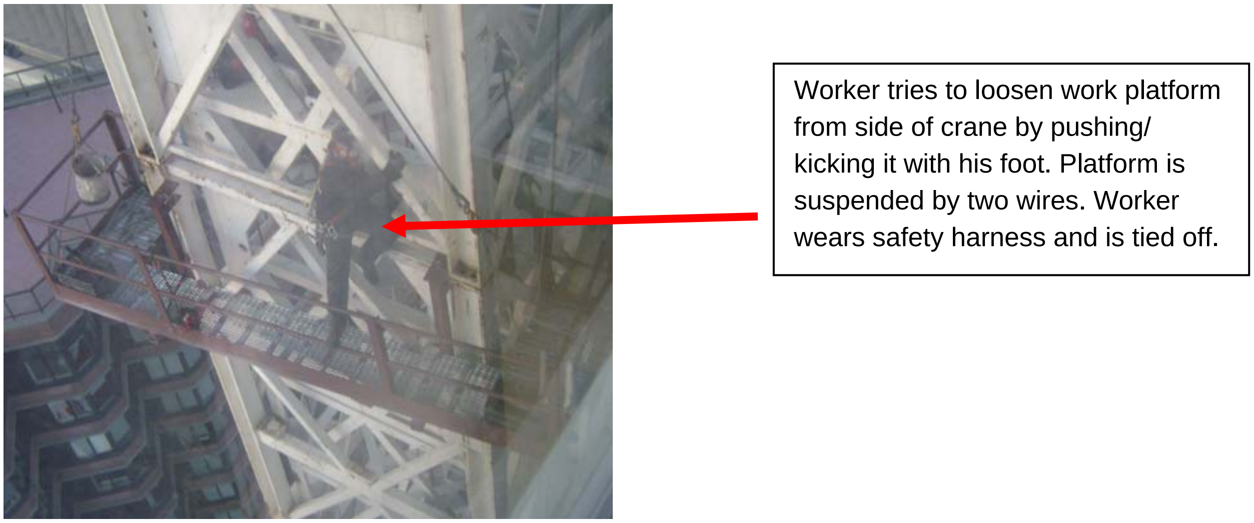
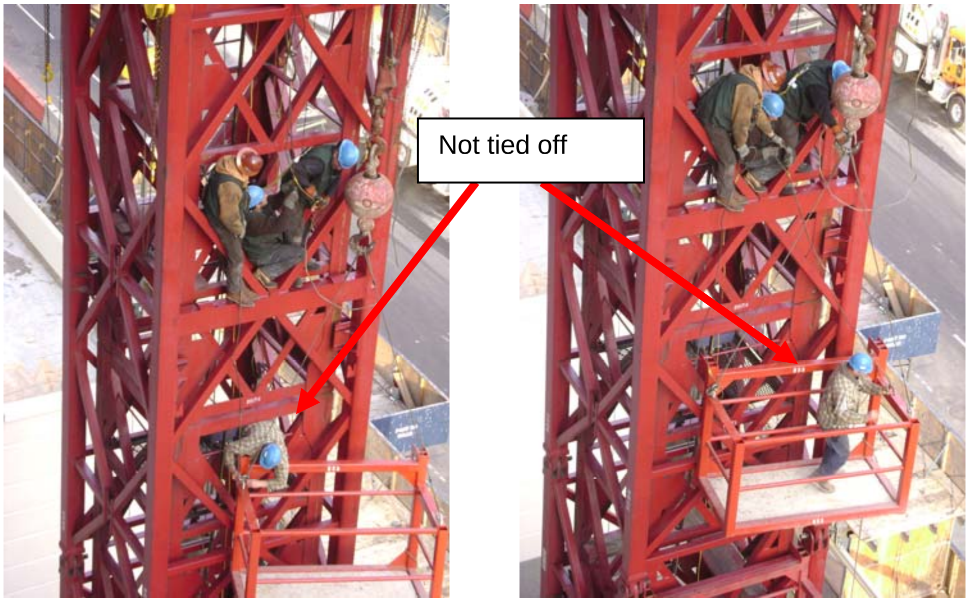


Figure C.8.7

Site C-49 – 11/12/08

During climbing of a tower crane, a worker without safety harness climbs onto a platform, which is suspended by the crane on only two wire ropes (platform is not stable). This situation is very similar to the fatal accident at site C-94 on 9/5/08.



Site C-94 - 11/11/2008

Disassembly of a tower crane:

Issue 1: Workers on crane after sundown without lights.

Issue 2: Shouting, miscommunication and some signs of confusion in the rigger team. This improved during the second day of the climb-down. The rigger team did not appear to be experienced with the particular type of crane, was “learning on the job”. With each tower half-section the riggers had to change the load bearing hook twice, while the tower sections were suspended in the air.

Figure C.8.10

Site C-73 - 1/19/2008

On a tower crane secondary safety slings of tie-ins are installed improperly, bird caging and pinching wire.

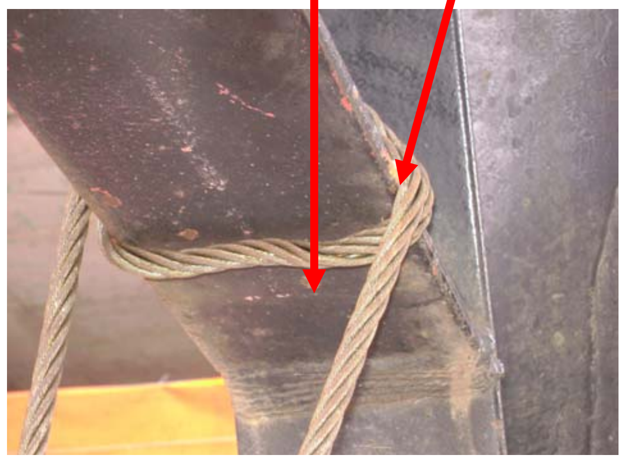


Figure C.8.11

Figure C.8.12

Site C-10 - 1/26/09

A nut on a tower section was missing. The tower bolt was only fastened using a jam-nut. (A jam-nut is a locking device for a load bearing nut, and does not engage enough threads to properly bear loads).

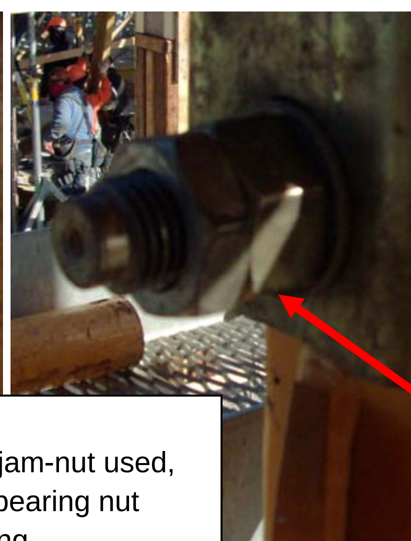


Figure C.8.13

Figure C.8.14

Site C-10 - 3/5/2009
The HRCO crane team observed 3 hours of the removal of a tie-in as part of the crane disassembly. A representative of the crane distributor was on site as an advisor. The master rigger was safety conscious but appeared to lack experience with the particular tie-in removal procedure, and rigging material that would have made the job less difficult, was not on site. The representative was experienced working with the particular type of tie-in and frequently gave advice on the working procedure**.**

C.8.4.3 Additional HRCO Observations

Several jurisdictions and national standards have regulations that specifically address requiring a highly knowledgeable person to be at all crane assemblies, climbs and dismantling. Four examples are:

California requires a qualified person to be present at the installation of a tower crane. This can be an OEM representative or a "Crane certifier" (a Californian OSHA certified 3rd party inspector) that has detailed knowledge about the type of crane. See Chapter 3.2 of California Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (CAL/OSHA), Subchapter 2. Regulations of the Division of Occupational Safety and Health, Article 1. "Tower Cranes--Operating Permit and Certification Requirements", §344.71 "Application for and Issuance of Operating Permit"*.*

The State of **Washington**, while not requiring an OEM to witness the assembly, climbing or dismantling process, determined that requiring a specific number of inspections were required to become a crane inspector.

Singapore requires an approved crane contractor to perform the assembly, climbing and dismantling operations.

Australia requires that "*All persons involved in climbing operations must receive thorough training and instruction in the climbing procedure for the particular model and type of crane involved in the climbing sequence. The climbing sequence must be carried out in strict accordance with the crane manufacturer's instructions."*

C.8.5 Recommendation C-1: HMO C Licensure

Require National Crane Operator Certification for Hoisting Machine Operator "C" License Examination and Evidence of Fitness for Duty

C.8.5.1 Description

In order to operate a crane in New York City a person must apply for and obtain a Hoisting Machine Operator (HMO) license under article 405 of the New York City Construction Codes. HMO Licenses are classified as A, B or C depending on the type of equipment to be operated, the boom length, and the rated capacity.

Class C licenses are sub-categorized into Class C-1 through Class C-3 in the municipal code with one additional administrative category of Class C-4 which applies to limited boom truck configurations utilized by ConEd and other utilities.

Because of security concerns involving the pending results of the HMO-C test from several months ago, DOB requested HRCO crane team support to evaluate and develop a solution for the implementation a new HMO-C testing process. This was also intended to be applicable for the re-test of pending applicants and restart testing of future applicants.

Additionally, effective July 1, 2008, Section 28-405.3 required all licensed hoisting machine operators as a condition of license renewal to provide evidence satisfactory to the department that he or she is fit to perform work. This requirement has been implemented to date by requiring a declaration from all renewal applicants to sign a document promising to comply with fitness requirements when they are determined or face revocation of their newly renewed license.

C.8.5.2 Recommendation Approach

DOB implemented this recommendation in 2008. After considering options, DOB decided to utilize NCCCO certification along with the existing HMO experience requirements. The basis of this decision was to provide both written and practical testing in an expeditious manner. The NCCCO program does not address local provisions or issues, and as such DOB decided to require a 4 hour training class that covers this subject matter. In addition, DOB now requires the operator to attest that they passed a substance abuse test and a physical exam that complies with the ASME B30 standard for their certification category and to continue to comply with those requirements.

Details of this recommendation are similar in many respects to Recommendation C-23 (A and B Licensure of HMOs). Therefore, the reader is referred to section 8.6 for further information.

C.8.6 Recommendation C-23: HMO A and B Licensure

Require all Hoist Machine Operators (HMOs) to have a nationally recognized certificate and ensure each operator has the necessary experience to operate the cranes he uses.

C.8.6.1 Description

A person must have the proper license to independently operate a crane in NYC. To receive a Hoist Machine Operator (HMO) license in NYC a person must submit an application to DOB for approval. The statute that regulates the HMO license is §28-405 of the New York City Construction Codes.

HMO Licenses are classified as A, B or C depending on the type of equipment to be operated, the boom length, the rated capacity and operator's experience. Class C licenses are sub-categorized into Class C-1 through Class C-3. A class C-4 exists and applies to limited boom truck configurations utilized by Con-Ed and other utilities. Class A licenses allow operation of all cranes in the C category, and larger cranes with boom lengths up to 200 feet. Class B licenses allow operation of any crane approved by NYC assuming the operator has required experience on the application crane.

The application requirements for Class A, B and C HMO Licenses include combinations of experience under the supervision of a licensed HMO, written and practical examinations. DCAS (Department of City-wide Administrative Services) administers Class A and B examinations, and DOB had administered the Class C examination. Recently, DOB added the requirement that the Class C HMO's obtain the proper certificate from the National Commission for the Certification of Crane Operators (NCCCO) and removed itself from the testing aspects. A city license is still required and DOB reviews each application for the required documentation and experience.

The applicants for the A license must currently have at least three years experience within the five years prior to the application under the direct and continuing supervision of a licensed hoist machine operator. The applicants for the B license must have a valid A License and at least two years of experience prior to application under the direct and continuing supervision of a Class B licensed hoisting machine operator operating the equipment for which they are applying for endorsement

C.8.6.2 Recommendation Approach

The applicant must receive the designated certification from NCCCO or an approved certifying agency for the type of crane they wish to operate, submit a copy of his certificate, list of their experience, and sign the Hoist Machine Operator Substance Abuse Attestation form. DOB will then double check the experience and the other documentation submitted.

As with the HMO C licenses, DOB should consider maintaining the New York City HMO experience provisions. However, each applicant should attend a 4 hour training class designed that would cover operating a crane in a dense urban environment (including NYC regulations) and re-certification test provisions similar to the NCCCO.

Once fully implemented an operator would be required to possess two documents while operating a crane: the appropriate valid HMO license and the applicable NCCCO certification.

This recommendation is consistent with utilizing existing national standards and programs whenever possible instead of developing and maintaining standards and programs specific to New York City.

The classification structure for crane operator certificates in the NCCCO program is based on the type of equipment instead of weight and boom length. The five classification of crane operator are: small telescopic, large telescopic, lattice boom crawler, lattice boom truck and tower. The last four typically apply to the A and B HMO licenses.

As crane configurations, features, and capacities continue to evolve, load charts are becoming lengthy and complex requiring crane operators to stay abreast of current developments in the field. On July 1, 2008 and with the NCCCO certification, the HMO C operators must now pass a written test every five (5) years and have at least 1,000 hours within this period or pass another practical test.

C.8.6.3 Additional Considerations for Good Practice

Change the experience criteria from “years” to “hours”.

DOB requirements currently use “years” as the basis of experience for each license classification. Presently, Chicago, Washington State and New Jersey have varying hour requirements. See Table 8-3.6 for the specifics of their programs. In addition to crane specific regulations, there are a number of other professions that require hours versus years for experience and/or log maintaining, such as Pilots, and CDL Truckers. Most states require new drivers have a prescribed number of hours before they can receive a license.

The use of “years” may allow an applicant to appear that he/she has the necessary experience when in fact may not. For example, consider two applicant scenarios. The first has worked with the same company for three years and as part of his job operates a crane one day each month (96 hours per year) for three years (288 hours). The second applicant is assigned to a year-long construction project and her job is to operate the crane every day. This may give her 2,000 hours by the end of the project. In these scenarios, the second operator has more experience and probably is better equipped to handle emergencies, but she is not eligible for a license for two more years.

To comply with this requirement, the operators would need to maintain a daily log of the hours worked, type and model of crane and the person supervising their activities. The person overseeing the operator would initial the log and include their license number. Ideally, the trainee would include other data such as the weather, time of day, number of cycles, special lifts made, etc.

Interviews with DOB inspectors that have an HMO license indicated that many HMO license holders already maintain a personal log, which they use as a means to track where and the hours they work to ensure they receive proper payment.

Require a specific friction crane endorsement and HMO classification.

There is a significant difference in operating a friction and hydraulic cranes. The primary difference similar to that of automobiles with manual and automatic transmissions. The friction crane requires extensive hours learning how to operate it safely and smoothly. Due to this, NYC should consider requiring a specific endorsement to the HMO license for these cranes.

Currently NCCCO is developing criteria for a friction crane sub-classification. When that classification is available, DOB should consider utilizing a friction endorsement as an additional certificate required for those HMO license holders operating a friction machine within the applicable license category. Until that time, the 4 hour mandatory class when developed should offer clear advisement to all operators that they must only operate equipment within their skill and training experience profile as required by § 28-405.3 of the New York City construction codes. Depending on the anticipated availability of the 4 hour class, DOB should consider a regulatory notice to the industry regarding the operation of friction cranes.

Develop and maintain an ongoing policy and criteria for consideration of other accredited certification programs and agencies.

DOB approved NCCCO to provide the “C” HMO certification in 2008. There may be other organizations that offer equivalent programs, and these should be likewise considered to provide certification services. A list of criteria should be established whereby these firms may gain accreditation from DOB and issue certifications.

Table C.8.4 outlines possible criteria that DOB may use to qualify organization as accredited to issue certification for the NYC licenses**.**

Table C.8.4: Requirement Matrix for Other Nationally Accredited Organizations

Program Element	Review Criteria
OSHA recognized	Recommended
NCCA accredited	Required
ANSI accredited	Recommended
Date of organization	Organization should have several years experience with certification activities. If the organization provides separate training and certification services, there should be confirmation of the independence of the two services (e.g. documentation of at least one complete accreditation cycle of separation from previous training activities.
Certifications issued	Organization shows ongoing track record of stability, capacity and delivery.
Industry supported	Organization has in depth program for industry participation with the strategic content and direction of program, test development and ethics resolution elements.
Test development	Should include: job analysis; subject matter expert panel; weighting system; benchmarking questions; and thoroughly address: knowledge, skills and abilities.
Subject matter experts	Group from industry with sufficient depth and experience.
Psychometric review	3rd Party independent review.
Training provided	Organization should not be involved with training and test development and scoring for the same materials (also see date of organization above).
Medical	Signed application w/ penalty of perjury, physical exam by physician: ASME B30.
Substance/Alcohol	Signed application w/ penalty of perjury w/ ASME B30 testing.
Card Issued	Yes, durable card is required along with data backup of valid certifications.
Ethics Statement	Required along with backup, investigation and potential discipline as appropriate.
Disciplinary Process	Demonstrated working process with track record showing complaint investigation, review with due process afforded to certificate holder resulting in timely decisions and action. Process must be sufficient to protect public interest of safety.
Appeals Procedure	Appeal to board independent from investigation and action with sufficient knowledge, depth and experience. Due process and representation allowed.
Practical exam for each class of crane	Reasonable matchup between certification categories and common equipment. Organization should develop and provide a clear description of the relationship between DOB license classifications, existing certification categories and proposed certificate classifications.
Closest practical test location	Should be able to provide practical testing close by with expansion into New York City area within reasonable time.
Use and accreditation of 3rd party practical exam sites:	Organization should allow applicants with both Union and Non-Union affiliation to have reasonable access to practical testing in the New York City area.
Written Test	Ability and capacity to provide testing in New York City required within reasonable time.
Recertification	Required with test and ongoing applicable experience or renewed practical testing.
Recertification hour verification in lieu of practical exam	Written verification of statement under penalty of perjury or documentation of 1000 hours “crane related experience” or re-take practical exam
Complete spectrum of crane certifications	Should cover complete spectrum of mobile cranes including lattice boom (crawler and truck mounted), telescoping boom, boom trucks and tower cranes.

C.8.6.4 Additional HRCO Data

Benchmarking other locations has shown a variety of classification structures in other municipalities and countries.

The HRCO crane team researched and developed benchmarking documentation including a visit the Cal OSHA crane safety unit in California. California adopted a law in 2003 which became effective June 1, 2005 requiring the certification of mobile and tower crane operators. Several other jurisdictions have also issued similar laws.

A benchmarking report is attached (Table C.8.5). The NCCCO was identified as the most comprehensive program to initially provide certification for crane operators

Continued certification and fitness for duty requirements are an integral part of the current American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) American National Standard ASME B30.5-2007 for Mobile Cranes and the OSHA C-DAC Consensus Document for Proposed Revisions to Worker Safety Standards for the Use of Cranes and Derricks in Construction 29 CFR 1926.550 Subpart N.

Table C.8.5: HMO Requirements of Other Jurisdictions

			Specifically Required				
			Medical	Substance	Written	Practical	
		NCCCO	Cert	Abuse	Exam	Exam	Exp.
State							
California		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	(1)
Hawaii		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Minnesota		Yes			Yes	Yes	
Montana		Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	1,000
Nevada	(2)	Yes					
New Jersey		Yes			Yes	Yes	1,000
New Mexico		Yes					(4)
Pennsylvania		Yes			Yes	Yes	5 yrs
Utah		Yes					
Washington State		Yes		Yes			2,000
West Virginia		Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	
Connecticut		No					
Massachusetts		No	Yes		Yes	Yes	
New York State		No			Yes	Yes	
Oregon		No					
Rhode Island		No					
Cities							
Chicago		No					2,000
New York		(3)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Depends
1) Upon recertification, applicant must show 1,000 hours or take practical							
2) Relies on certifying agency							
3) One classification uses NCCCO (C license)							
4) Need 3 out of 5 years and 500 hours in the specific crane							

Table C.8.6: Various Hour Requirements

State	Experience
California	(a)
Montana	1,000 Hrs
New Jersey	1,000 Hrs
New Mexico	(b)
Washington State	2,000 Hrs
Cities	
Chicago	2,000 Hrs
NCCCO	(a)

a) Upon recertification, applicant must show 1,000 hours or take practical

b) Need 3 out of 5 years and 500 hours in the specific crane

C.8.7 Recommendation C-24: Scaffolding Hoist (Further Study)

DOB should require a plan review and inspection of custom built hoisting systems that are able to hoist loads exceeding 1 ton (907 kg).

C.8.7.1 Description

This recommendations addresses construction hoisting equipment that is custom designed and built on site using scaffolding elements, structural steel and other material that is not pre-fabricated exclusively for crane use for a large part of their structure. These hoists are typically powered by a base mounted drum hoist that is either located on the ground or affixed to the hoist-structure. Examples of components of and names for such lifting systems are “catheads”, “monorail systems”, “raceways”, “pulley blocks”, “gin wheel” material hoist and other powered “block and tackle” designs.

In New York City, this type of hoisting equipment does not fall under the auspices of the Crane and Derrick Division of DOB, but rather the individual boroughs. The requirements and oversight for this type of equipment is less stringent than for cranes or derricks with similar hoisting capabilities.

This equipment has the ability to lift several tons of material several stories, and poses the risks of falling loads and lifting over people. During interviews with DOB personnel, the HRCO crane team was informed that this type of hoisting equipment is used frequently within the jurisdiction. ASME Standard B 30.7 provides guidance specific to these types of hoists.

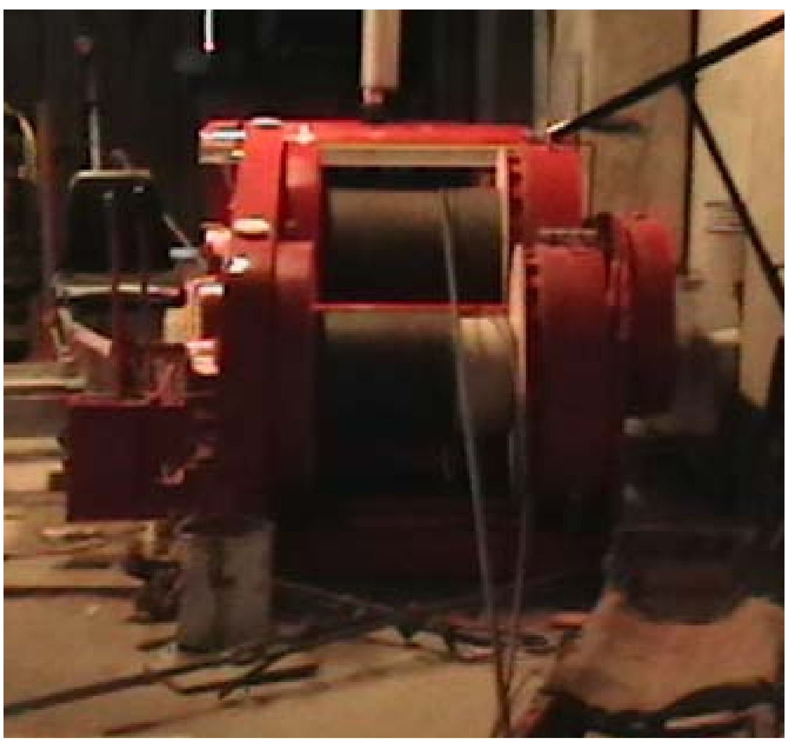


Figure C.8.15: Hoist engine (Site C-52, 12/18/08)

Figure C.8.16: Scaffold structure for hoist (Site C-52, 12/18/08)

C.8.7.2 Recommendation Approach

The capacity of one (1) ton is based upon the threshold for derricks that need a certificate of on-site inspection, which requires a plan review. The custom designed hoisting equipment is similar to certain types of derricks as both can be powered by a base mounted drum hoist and both often rely on anchorage to existing structures or the ground.

Custom built hoisting equipment should be subject to plan review.

The specialized equipment is used in NYC for construction work mainly to install facade coverings and windows on new buildings, roofing work and renovation projects. The capacity is often limited to 5 tons. However, these devices can reach high hoisting speeds that could result in increased impact forces if the load hangs up or if there is a two-block situation (hook is pulled into upper sheave). To achieve these high speeds, the equipment has a powerful hoist winch (equaling quick acceleration) and typically has no load limiting devices. The maximum capacity, like the derrick, is normally limited by the structural design and anchorage of load bearing components.

In New York City, this type of hoisting equipment and its anchorage is designed by a professional engineer who submits plans to the applicable borough office. The plans are part of a building permit application. DOB checks that design drawings are submitted, but does not perform a formal plan review of the design and calculations.

The HRCO crane team went to an incident involving such a device (see figures 8-3.15 and 8-3.16 - site 52, 12/18/08) where the devise dropped its load and the load landed on a neighboring school. There were no injuries.

Custom build hoisting systems should be inspected by DOB inspectors knowledgeable in this type of equipment when they are installed but prior to operation.

The inspection should include test operation with 100% of the rated load of the hoisting equipment to check load holding and braking equipment and should address the communication between hoist operator and riggers.

Often the hoisting equipment is relocated several times during construction. An example is the installation of windows where a “monorail system” is installed on different sides of the buildings. In these cases the repositioning could take place without further re-inspection.

Anchor pull tests and welding certificates should be required on anchor-points as decided by the DOB plan examiner.

Presently, there is no inspection requirement by DOB inspectors for these devices. DOB relies on general site inspections and users and companies assembling these systems. There are no further testing requirements by DOB.

C.8.7.3 Additional Considerations for Good Practice

DOB should further investigate the use of the additional safety devices and rules on custom designed hoisting equipment

The devices and operating rules could include the following:

- upper limit switch / anti two block
- load limiter or load measurement system
- hoist speed restrictions,
- no freefalling of loads - power assisted down hoisting

These items should be a matter for further study, because there are required safety devices used in modern completely OEM manufactured cranes, and as such should apply for these devices.

The limitation of hoisting speed should be evaluated because these hoists operate near the building and the danger of the load getting caught could be high. At high hoisting speeds, the impact forces on the support structure when the load catches increase. The same is true for the impact forces, if a free falling load is suddenly stopped.

These safety devices are not installed on a majority of the base mounted drum hoists that are powered by combustion engines. The operator has to operate the hoist in a way that does not overload the supporting structure. In a lot of situations the operator cannot see much of the load movement, relying solely on signal persons. Because the base mounted drum hoist is not directly connected to the rest of the hoist support structure, the operator has only a limited “feel” for the device.

C.8.8 Hoist Recommendation H-3: Riding on Top of Cars (Further Study)

Restrict actions of workers riding on top of cars to limit inherent dangers of working on and in close proximity to moving equipment.

C.8.8.1 Description

There is currently no formal protocol used for riding on, or operating from, the top of car. However, this is an inherently dangerous location due to the exposure to moving hoist machinery and falling objects. The following table identifies recent NYC accidents associated with this practice.

1	Brooklyn	2348	1	3V21761	June 20, 2008	Hoist motor moved pinning mechanic	Major Incident
2	Manhattan	54	1	1V21608	August 29,2007	Ele. Pump jack crash through rear gage from 23rd floor: Fell to landing; overhead covering injured 2 firemen.	Major Incident
3	Manhattan	816	67	1V21943	January 11,2008	Male employee left leg pinned between cwt and hoist tower	Major Incident
4	Manhattan	716	5	1V21941	March 5, 2008	Person leaned over top of car and crushed his head	Fatality
5	Manhattan	851	59	1V21979	March 19, 2008	Traveling cable struck person	Minor Incident

Table C.8.7: Historical NYC Hoist Accident Data

Unauthorized personnel have been witnessed conveying material larger then the footprint of the car and conveying personnel on top of the car. During field inspections the HRCO-Hoist team witnessed once directly the illegal transportation of material, as can be seen in the below photo which depicts a non-union worker removing a 14” scaffold walk-board from the top of the car.

There were two other occasions of contractors illegally using the hoist car to transmit material and personnel which were indirectly identified by the HRCO. On one site the car’s side door limit switch was found to be inoperable. Upon further inspection it was discovered that the lower limit switch was by-passed by physically bending the switch arm out of the way. Later a worker came forward and told HRCO staff that they were transporting 18 foot ornamental steel pieces to the roof level. Since the tower crane had already been removed from the site, they opted to utilize the hoist to lift the oversized components.

Figure C.8.17: Improper use of hoist car to transport material.

The second indirect observation was on a site where the hoist did not have sufficient mast height to access the roof. By inspection it was seen that the roof had a landing but the mast did not appear to be of sufficient height to provide hoist access. Further inquiry obtained the admission of one of the construction crew that they had been using the top of the car to transport workers, who could then climb from the car top to the roof.

C.8.8.2 Recommendation Approach

Introduce and implement safety protocol precautions for operations conducted on top of personnel hoist cars. Potential restrictions could be:

1. Limit access to the top of cars to competent authorized individuals designated by the hoisting contractor.
2. When workers are on top of the car the car must be operated from the controls located on the top of car.
3. When more than one person is on top of the car at least one person, most likely the person operating the car, will be the designated safety person responsible for warning riders of hazards and warning riders when the car will be moving, it's direction and when it will stop.
4. When working on top of a car or on the mast tower the adjacent car will be removed from service.
5. Personnel hoist worker's regulation should include the "Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook" section defined below and/or manufacturer recommendation.

6. Equipment traveling on top of cars is to be made safe in a protected area or securely restrained by competent personnel, capable of recognizing hazards, if material extends outside the footprint of the car.

C.8.8.3 Additional HRCO Observations

The following, relevant excerpt is from the "Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook"

8.1.2 Safety Precautions When Working On Car Tops:

(a) *Familiarize yourself with the position of the car and counterweights of the car being accessed as well as any other cars/counterweights in the vicinity and take appropriate measures to keep yourself and others away from hazards.*

(b) *If movement of the car is needed while on the top of the car, be sure to have a firm hold on the crosshead, or other part of the car structure.*

(c) *Never stand or sit on the crosshead when the car is moving.*

(d) *Never hold onto the ropes, sheaves or sheave guard.*

(e) *If the car top is not clean (i.e., oil, grease), clean prior to performing any activities.*

(f) *Verify proper operation of top-of-car inspection operating buttons.*

(g) *Where outlets are provided, use a grounded portable light with a suitable, non-conductive or grounded lamp guard and reflector.*

(h) *Electrical cords are not to be hung on car or counterweight ropes.*

(i) *When a top-of-car operating device is available and operational, use it to operate the car instead of depending on an operator in the car.*

(j) *If top-of-car operating device is not available and you much ride on top of the car ensure:*

1. *The person on the car top shall identify and be positioned in a safe refuge space. Do not enter areas marked with Red and White strips.*
2. *The operator in the car is briefed on the signals to be used.*
3. *The operator in the car repeats instructions each time before moving the car.*
4. *That hall buttons cannot control the car.*

5. *The operator shall only run the car on the slowest possible speed and only in the specified direction.*

6. *In the case of single and collective-operation elevators or any elevator whole reversal at the terminals is automatically controlled, instruct the operator to reverse the direction of the car before the terminals by means of the reversal switch in the car.*

(k) When a fall hazard exists, fall protection shall be used. (see section 4)

(l) Wire ropes shall only be inspected or lubricated when the car is stopped. Avoid pinch points.

(m) When opening hoist-way doors from the car top, do so slowly so that no one steps in the landing thinking a car has arrived.

(n) Observe overhead clearances.

(o) Use extra care when working on car tops that are curved, domed, or located in unenclosed hoist ways.

(p) Do not leave parts, lubricants, etc on the top of elevator cars. This is a violation of the ASME A17.1 Code.

(q) The car top emergency exit shall remain in the closed position except when passing through same.

(r) Before performing repairs from top-of-car, with the car at or above the top landing, place a ladder in car under top emergency exit to provide means of exiting from car top.

C.9 INSPECTION

C.9.1 Description

The current NYC approach of equipment and site-specific inspections is a rational approach. The HRCO proposes strengthening this process by providing for third-party inspectors to conduct some of the functions currently conducted solely by DOB. This will allow DOB to operate in the more effective policing role. This recommendation also provides for the indispensible action of providing a rigorous definition of qualifications for a Qualified Person. The third party inspector recommendation also addresses the important concern of impartiality.

A recommendation on bolted connections provides important clarification on this aspect of inspections.

A recommendation for tracking of mobile cranes identifies workable solutions for DOB inspectors to be able to locate and inspect mobile cranes for inspection.

Hoist recommendations address the Adoption of ANSI A10.5 to address standards for material hoists and approaches to improve and standardize inspection practices.

C.9.2 Recommendation C-3: Third Party Inspection

Allow third party inspectors (inspectors from entities independent from DOB and the crane owner or user) to perform the required annual crane inspections needed for the CD permit.

C.9.2.1 Description

An important component of crane safety is an annual safety inspection, which is reflected in various standards, e.g. ANSI B30.3 [1] and B30.5 [2] or OSHA [3]. Currently, DOB performs annual inspections of all cranes registered in the City (Certificate of Operation or “CD”). The Jurisdiction relies on the Cranes & Derricks division’s inspectors and outside contractors for this task.

The use of Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs), the pressure to innovate their products and niche markets requiring specialized machines increases complexity and requires constant training for crane inspectors. As such, a crane inspector is faced with a large number of designs from different crane manufacturers.

Crane owners should be performing the required OSHA annual inspections as well as additional inspections and maintenance procedures to keep their equipment safe, improve reliability and sustain the market-value of their cranes.

The new version of OSHA 1926 subpart N [4 and 5] will require a “qualified” person to perform the annual inspection (definition is in next section).

C.9.2.2 Recommendation Approach

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions:

- Establish the minimum experience required for the certified crane inspector
- Provide guidelines for the inspections and set expectation of the certified crane inspectors
- Determine impartiality requirements for the inspectors
- Institute a quality assurance system to audit the inspectors

Certified Crane Inspector

The crane inspector should be a person that is “qualified” to inspect cranes. OSHA presently defines such a person using the “competent person” definition below.

§1926.32(f) "Competent person" means one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them

However, the proposed C-DAC regulation moves toward a more restrictive definition using a “qualified person” as noted below.

§ 1926.1401 defines ‘‘qualified person’’ as a person who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, or professional standing, or who by extensive knowledge, training, and experience, successfully demonstrated the ability to solve / resolve problems relating to the work, the subject matter, or the project.

The above definitions have some subjectivity. As such, the HRCO team recommends narrowing the definition to include the following requirements.

1. There should be individual types of certifications for individual types of cranes and derricks. The HRCO proposes the following:
   - Tower cranes and derricks
   - Mobile cranes with hydraulic hoisting system could include articulated boom cranes
   - Mobile crane with mechanical (clutch and brake) hoisting system
   - Mast climbers could also include scaffold hoists.
2. Experience requirements for an applicant should include:
   - At least 3 years experience in the repair and inspection of the particular type of crane as a mechanic responsible for individual repair jobs, (excludes mechanics-helper, oiler, etc.) within the last 5 years, or
   - At least 10 years (5,000 hours) experience as a crane operator, or
   - A mechanical engineering degree with at least 2 years experience in the design, repair or inspection of the particular type of crane, AND (for all three),
   - An OEM certificate showing that the applicant attended a training course for the crane model(s) they intend to inspect. This course should have been attended within the previous 3 years of the application.
3. The certification process should include a written test administered by an independent, accredited organization. The written test should test an applicant’s knowledge of:
   - Current national rules, regulations and standards,
   - The type of crane they plan to inspect,
   - Local NYC crane rules and regulations (this may be tested via attending a separate class).
4. The certification process should include a practical examination in the form of a crane inspection under the evaluation of an approved crane specialist / engineer or DOB inspector.

5. The certification would be valid for 5 years. To renew, the applicant would provide the following:

   - A statement that they have inspected at least 20 cranes within the last 5 years, and provide a list,
   - A statement that they completed at least two additional training courses taken within the last 5 years,
   - Proof that they passed a recent written test by the certifying agency,
   - DOB will publish a list of certified crane inspectors with their contact information on its website.

During the HRCO Manufacturer conference, crane manufacturers agreed to offer classes for DOB and outside inspectors and to provide equipment information within the framework of an “Approved Manufacturer”.

HRCO inspectors observed several annual inspections performed by a third party inspector under contract to DOB. No issues regarding the quality of the inspection performed by the third party inspector were identified.

Guidelines for Third Party Annual Inspections

1. DOB should provide a list or inspection form outlining the minimum requirements of an annual inspection, which consists of two sub lists.

   - There will be a general checklist for each general crane type. As a minimum, current OSHA rules for an annual test and the rules provided in RS19-2 will apply (see section C.9.3).
   - Inspection and test requirements related to the specific crane model, where available. For new cranes this information will be part of the Approved Manufacturer application and provided by the crane OEM (C-R-07 approved Manufacturer).

   There could also be special inspection requests requested by DOB, for example, (a) examine repaired structural damage, (b) additional inspections for older equipment or (c) inspection request based on recalls and manufacturer information.

   The inspector and the crane owner should be able to download these specific inspection requests and forms from a DOB website.

2. The inspector will provide the inspection report to DOB, which, in turn, will be the basis of the CD renewal.

   - The Inspector must supply the inspection report for both passed and failed inspections. The Inspector must inform DOB immediately by calling 311 if the crane poses a safety hazard.

- The Inspector must inform DOB about signs of possible repairs on load bearing and fracture critical components.
- The Inspector must review the maintenance documents and provide a comment in the inspection report.
- The Inspection report must include a digital photograph of the machine taken during the inspection and document his findings using digital photographs.

3. The Inspector must perform or witness all steps of the completed inspection. They can use inspection results of an outside specialist if that special expertise or equipment is needed (e.g. non-destructive testing).

Impartiality

The inspector should be a third party, and must not be employed by entities owning or operating the crane being inspected. The Inspector can be the employee of an OEM, a crane distributor, repair facility or an individually certified person that is independent from the ownership of the crane.

The Inspector is not allowed to perform an annual inspection if they performed any repair or maintenance work within the last year on the inspected crane (e.g. no self inspection).

The HRCO team considered inspector independence in detail. The central issue weighs the desire for impartiality with having the most qualified individual perform the inspection, which at times lies with the crane owner. This matter is resolved differently by various municipalities. The primary considerations and arguments for independent and affiliated inspectors are outlined in Table C.9.1.

Topic	Independent Inspector	Affiliated Inspector
1. Impartiality	The primary benefit of employing an independent inspector is impartiality.	The inspector employed by a company may an interest in the outcome of the inspection.
2. Knowledge	The inspector normally gains knowledge about the type and model of crane from his previous experience and OEM schooling.	The inspector typically has specific knowledge and experience with the particular piece of equipment. Certification would still be required.
3. HRCO observations with self monitoring of industry	Not applicable	The HRCO site visits show that some cranes have issues and are currently not properly inspected / maintained.
4. Convenience for crane owner / user	Must schedule a time and date for inspection similar to the current DOB system.	Assign a certified internal inspector as needed.

Table C.9.1: Comparison Between Independent and Affiliated Inspectors.

The HRCO recommends that DOB continues to work with the industry to assess whether there is an approach, such as an Approved Vendor program, that would allow for affiliated inspectors without compromising impartiality. Via this model, organizations such as a crane owner, could apply to be approved to provide inspection services. The approval process might include criteria such as (1) having Certified Inspectors on staff, 2) maintain and service their own equipment and 3) a proven track record of well-maintained cranes (via past CD inspections

Supervision of third party inspectors

DOB would audit the third party inspections to check quality. Audit procedures could include:

1. The Inspector must submit the inspection report within 5 business days via email to DOB including crane CD#, crane location and a local contact phone number. DOB will reserve the option to re-inspect a certain number of cranes ("spot check").
2. DOB has the right to revoke the certification of the third party inspector for the following:
   - Misrepresentation of facts in the applicant's submittal.
   - Falsification or misrepresentation of the tests performed during an inspection or the outcome of an inspection.
   - Failure to report knowledge of structural repairs and accidents to DOB.

The current NYC building code includes annual inspections as part of the "Certificate of Operation ("CD") and does not mention who performs these inspections: BC 3319.5.1 - 2: 1. *"The commissioner shall issue the initial certificate of operations for the crane or derrick with certificate of approval upon satisfactory inspection and test indicating that such crane or derrick is in safe operating condition. The initial certificate of operation shall expire one year from the date of issuance. 2. The owner of a crane or derrick covered by the certificate of operations shall renew the certificate of operation each year."*

C.9.2.3 Additional HRCO Observations

The inspectors in the Crane and Derrick division perform the majority of the annual inspections. The inspections take place at jobsites or at the crane yards of owners. The inspector issues the "Certificate of Operation" should the crane pass all the items on the checklist.

The initial certificate of operation renewal fee is US$500.00 for a small to medium mobile crane ("boom less than 200 feet") and up to US$3,000.00 for a tower crane, and the renewal fees are $250.00 and $400.00, respectfully.

Crane owners, represented in the industry subcommittee, reported that they typically conduct voluntary, detailed, in-yard inspections for which they retain specialty contractors (e.g. Ultrasonic Testing technicians) as needed.

Between the beginning April 2008 and ending December 2008, DOB Cranes and Derricks Division performed a total of 527 annual inspections. In addition, 213 re-inspections were performed, part of which are re-inspections of cranes that failed an initial annual inspection. Table C.9.2 provides the breakdown of the various types of inspections provided during this same period.

Quantity	Inspection Type
676	Complaint (complaints etc.)
12	Incident (incidents, accidents etc.)
328	Audit (chief specials, safety meetings etc.)
572	annual (annuals)
124	Unassembled (unassembled etc.)
169	Assembled (assembled including visuals, load test, on-site, etc.)
112	Climbing (up, down, erections, and dismantle)
213	Re-inspection (annual defect re-inspections, SWO lifts, etc...)
46	MR (master rigger)
543	Sweep (sweep, patrols, etc.)

Table C.9.2: Number of DOB Inspections for Nine Months Ending 12/2008.

Several jurisdictions require third party annual inspections and others are considering such in their upcoming legislation. Table C.9.3 provides a summary of some of the requirements of several agencies.

Jurisdiction	General Experience	Specific Crane Experience	Written Test Requirement	Independent
California	5 years related experience	2 years crane inspections or similar job	Yes	Yes
Washington State	5 years crane related experience	2 years crane inspections	Yes	No
Miami (proposed)	5 years crane related experience	2 years inspections	No, but requires inspector to have attended an OEM approved class	Yes
Nevada	5 years employed as representative of manufacturer	5 years crane inspection	Yes	Yes
New OSHA C-DAC	Qualified Person	Qualified Person	No	No
Great Britain	Competent Person, with description	Competent Person, with description	No	Partial Yes

Table C.9.3: Summary of Jurisdictional Requirement for Certified Inspectors.

The following are the current DOB and proposed C-DAC annual inspection checklist items

Reference Standard 19-2 - DOB

- *"Deformed, cracked or corroded members in the crane or derrick structure and boom.*
- *Loose bolts or rivets.*
- *Cracked or worn sheaves and drums.*
- *Worn, cracked or distorted parts such as pins, bearings, shafts, gears, rollers and locking devices.*

- *Excessive wear on brake and clutch system parts, linings, pawls and ratchets.*
- *Load, boom angle and other indicators over their full range, for any significant inaccuracies.*
- *Gasoline, diesel, electric or other power plants for improper performance or non-compliance with safety requirements.*
- *Excessive wear of chain drive sprockets and excessive chain stretch.*
- *Crane or derrick hooks.-Magnetic particle or other suitable crack detecting inspection should be performed at least once each year by an inspection agency retained by the owner and approved by the department. Certified inspection reports are to be made available to the department upon request.*
- *Travel steering, braking and locking devices, for malfunction.*
- *Excessively worn or damaged tires.*
- *Derrick gudgeon pin for cracks, wear and distortion each time the derrick is to be erected.*
- *Foundation or supports shall be inspected for continued ability to sustain the imposed loads."*

C-DAC §1412 (f) 2 – 12 Month Inspection Criteria

"(i) Equipment structure (including the boom and, if equipped, the jib):

(a) Structural members: deformed, cracked, or significantly corroded.

(b) Bolts, rivets and other fasteners: loose, failed or significantly corroded.

(c) Welds for cracks.

(ii) Sheaves and drums for cracks or significant wear.

(iii) Parts such as pins, bearings, shafts, gears, rollers and locking devices for distortion, cracks or significant wear.

(iv) Brake and clutch system parts, linings, pawls and ratchets for excessive wear.

(v) Safety devices and operational aids for proper operation (including significant inaccuracies).

(vi) Gasoline, diesel, electric, or other power plants for safety-related problems (such as leaking exhaust and emergency shut-down feature), condition and proper operation.

(vii) Chains and chain drive sprockets for excessive wear of sprockets and excessive chain stretch.

(viii) Travel steering, brakes, and locking devices, for proper operation.

(ix) Tires for damage or excessive wear

(x) Hydraulic, pneumatic and other pressurized hoses, fittings and tubing, as follows:

(a) Flexible hose or its junction with the fittings for indications of leaks.

(b) Threaded or clamped joints for leaks.

(c) Outer covering of the hose for blistering, abnormal deformation or other signs of failure impending failure.

(d) Outer surface of a hose, rigid tube, or fitting for indications of excessive abrasion or scrubbing.

(xi) Hydraulic and pneumatic pumps and motors, as follows:

- *(a) Performance indicators: unusual noises or vibration, low operating speed, excessive heating of the fluid, low pressure.*
- *(b) Loose bolts or fasteners.*
- *(c) Shaft seals and joints between pump sections for leaks.*

(xiv) Hydraulic and pneumatic valves, as follows:

- *(a) Spools: sticking, improper return to neutral, and leaks.*
- *(b) Leaks.*
- *(c) Valve housing cracks.*
- *(d) Relief valves: failure to reach correct pressure (if there is a manufacturer procedure for checking pressure, it must be followed).*

(xv) Hydraulic and pneumatic cylinders, as follows:

- *(a) Drifting caused by fluid leaking across the piston.*
- *(b) Rod seals and welded joints for leaks.*
- *(c) Cylinder rods for scores, nicks, or dents.*
- *(d) Case (barrel) for significant dents.*
- *(e) Rod eyes and connecting joints: loose or deformed.*

(xvi) Outrigger pad/floats and slider pads for excessive wear or cracks.

(xvii) Electrical components and wiring for cracked or split insulation and loose or corroded terminations.

(xviii) Warning labels and decals required under this standard: missing or unreadable.

(xix) Operator seat: missing or unusable.

(xx) Originally equipped steps, ladders, handrails, guards: missing.

(xxi) Steps, ladders, handrails, guards: in unusable unsafe condition."

C.9.3 Recommendation C-2: Bolted Connections

All bolted connection must be checked regularly. Crane maintenance personnel must have basic knowledge about bolt torquing (see C-6).

C.9.3.1 Description

The majority of cranes (tower and mobile) have some type of bolted connection within the turntable, tower and the upper crane structure.

The majority of tower cranes have temporary bolted connections that are essential for the structural integrity of the crane. These bolted connections are assembled and disassembled during the assembly, climbing or dismantling process. Bolts are pre-tensioned to a specified torque value via a torque wrench or hydraulic bolt tensioner. Pretension on a bolt connection is used to reduce the stress fluctuation on a bolt and to insure even load distribution when more than one bolt is installed. Failing of such connections can have catastrophic results.

This set of recommendations outlines issues observed by the HRCO crane team . Presently, there is no consistent practice regarding the handling of the various bolted connections including the inspection of previously used bolts. Information regarding torque values, bolt grade and type, and lubrication is not easily accessible for persons inspecting and maintaining the crane.

Figure C.9.1 Turntable Bolted Connections

C.9.3.2 Recommendation Approach

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions:

- Fasteners used on load bearing connections of cranes which were removed during maintenance or crane disassembly should be cleaned and visually inspected after each use.
- All bolts and nuts critical for the structural integrity of the crane should show appropriate markings of grade and type approved by the OEM or by an Engineer of Record. Whenever possible, fasteners should be installed with the markings facing outside (not obstructed by other parts or fasteners).
- Critical information for fasteners used on load bearing components must be readily available on site during erection and operation.

Proposed implementation time frames should be developed with input from the industry. For example, high strength bolt connections must be checked for proper torque or pre-tension after initial erection; as well as bolted connections that are part of a tie-in connection which typically includes a concrete surface. If the engineer of record (for tie-ins and foundations) or the OEM (for the crane) recommends time frames, they should apply.

Crane maintenance personnel may typically check bolted connections by tapping the connection with a hammer and checking for movement or a “loose” sound. Bolt check requirements are shown on some drawings prepared by the EOR and in operation manuals provided by the Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM). DOB inspectors normally visually check bolted connections, but do not use torque wrenches or tapping techniques to determine bolt tightness. A torquing tool (e. g. bolt tensioner or “Hi-torque” tool) is typically not on site, but brought in by the tower crane assembly crew.

HRCO observed several cases of loose bolts on tower crane mast sections; tie-ins and foundations (Table C.9.4). On site interviews after a loose connection was found revealed that on-site maintenance personnel did not possess enough knowledge about bolt torquing, for example, identification of grades of bolts, ability to determine the required minimum torque and the procedures to check torque.

The educational material for the 30 hour tower crane rigger class attended by the HRCO included limited information on fastener markings. Only two pages were dedicated to bolted connections.

Type	Cranes Investigated	Loose Bolt Occurrences
Tie-in – Friction connection	11	3
Foundations	16	4
Mast Sections	16	6

Table C.9.4: HRCO Observations of Loose Bolts.

Fasteners used on load bearing connections of cranes which were removed during maintenance or crane disassembly should be cleaned and visually inspected after each use.

Fasteners are typically reused. The testing and maintenance of fasteners is voluntary and is handled differently by various crane owners. DOB inspections do not directly address corrosion, damage and possible fatigue of fasteners.

Bolts and other fasteners could be damaged, elongated or corroded resulting in a weakening of a bolt connection and the possibility of it becoming loose after installation. This could compromise the structural integrity of the bolt, and possibly the structure itself.

The inspections should include ones for elongation, cracking, deformation, and checking of threads between erections. In addition, all bolt connection surfaces must be clean and free of any burrs.

In addition, all reused load bearing bolts that are regularly assembled and disassembled must undergo a Non-Destructive Test (NDT) to check their integrity every 3 calendar years or be discarded. The HRCO recommends the owner use a color coding to accomplish this.

Bolts that fail any of the above tests should be discarded.

The HRCO crane team encountered fasteners stored in buckets that had filled with water and corroded the bolts (Figure 9-3.2). In addition, there were others that appeared worn, and it is unclear if the Owner reused them.

During a visit to an owner, the HRCO team was shown NDT equipment and a workstation to clean fasteners. This owner color-coded the bolts as they preformed NDT on bolts every five years.

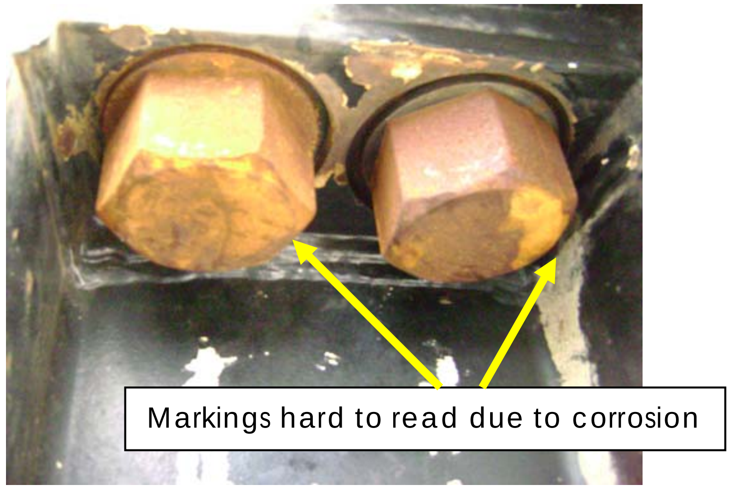


Figure C.9.2 (Site 62, 8/22/08)

Figure C.9.3: Site C-73, 1/19/09

All bolts and nuts critical for the structural integrity of the crane should show appropriate markings of grade and type approved by the OEM or by an Engineer of Record. Whenever possible, fasteners should be installed with the markings facing outside (not obstructed by other parts or fasteners).

Fasteners are rated for a particular tensile strength. During the pre-assembly inspection for tower cranes, the qualified inspector should check the bolts to be used during assembly and ensure all bolts and nuts have the appropriate markings and lubrication.

Different fasteners with the same dimensions but different material strength and probably different quality are available.

During crane inspection, the HRCO team observed bolts with different bolt head sizes or no markings on crane towers. The HRCO team observed nuts mounted in a fashion that makes it impossible to read the markings (figures 9-3.3, 9-3.4, 9-3.5 and 9-3.6).

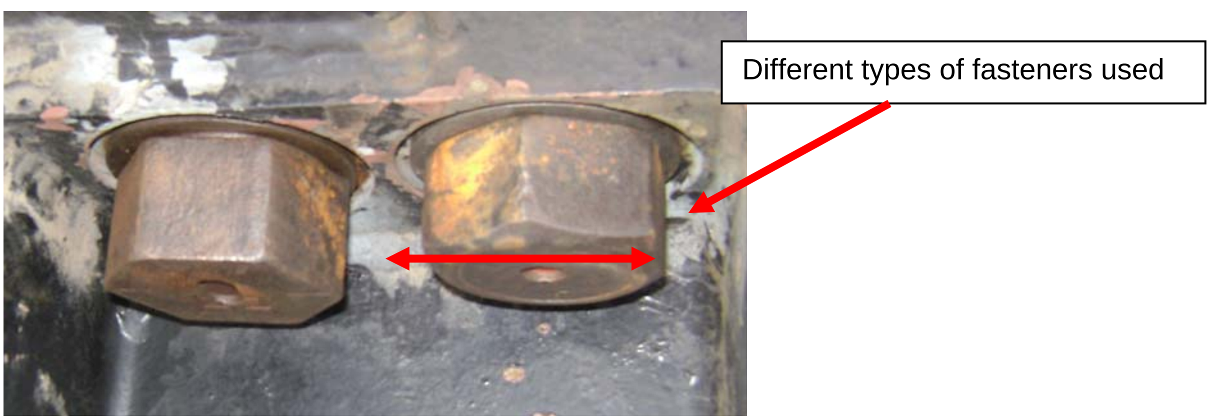


Figure C.9.4: Site C-73, 1/19/09

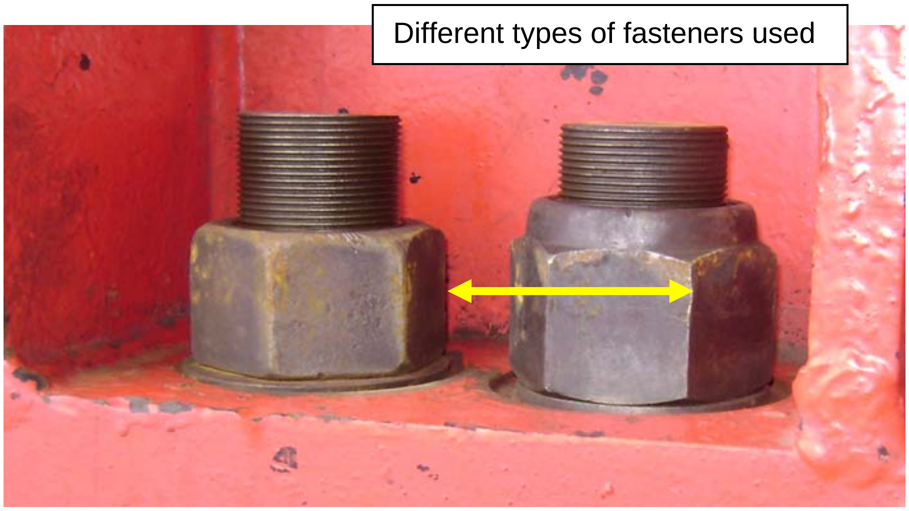


Figure C.9.5: Site C-73 – 1/19/09

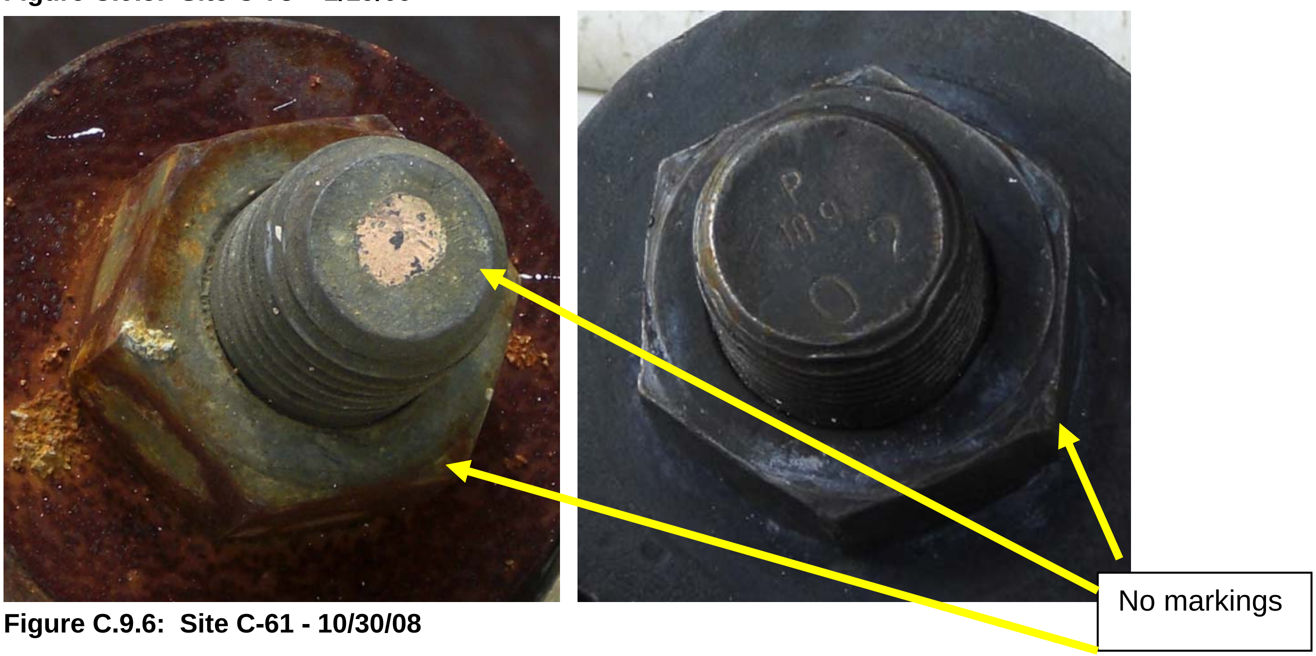


Figure C.9.6: Site C-61 - 10/30/08

Critical information for fasteners used on load bearing components must be readily available on site during erection and operation*.*

This information should include:

- Pre-tension or torque values corresponding to the lubrication method used during torquing,
- Fastener grades by component, if different.
- Fastener dimensions.

The primary reason for this recommendation is that these values should be on site should a situation occur that requires re-torquing the bolts.

Manufacturers generally supply bolt information in their manuals, but sometimes this is incomplete (e. g. only manufacturers part number instead of full description of fastener, type of lubrication not clear). In some cases the drawings of the engineers of record do not have torque values or the lubrication information. DOB crane regulations do not include any specific requirements on bolt information.

Missing torque values on site for the custom engineered parts of foundations and tie-ins was evident in three cases:

- Site C-40 – 12/3/08, loose foundation bolts
- Site C-55 – 1/5/09 loose tie in bolts
- Site C-91 - 1/9/05 loose foundation bolts for inner climber

In all 3 cases, the maintenance personnel had the EOR drawings on site, but the applicable torque values were not clear to local maintenance personnel.

C.9.3.3 Additional Considerations for Good Practice

Torch-cutting bolted connections should be avoided whenever possible. If a bolted connection must be cut, DOB should be notified including the identification number(s) of the affected sections.

Tower crane riggers try to disassemble the crane without torch cutting. Some bolts cannot be loosened with the impact wrenches. Possible reasons include corrosion, damaged threads and crane positioning at the time of dismantling. If a bolt can not be unthreaded, the tower crane riggers generally cut the bolt off using oxy-fuel cutting gas or similar cutting method.

Torch cutting bolts can cause heat damage to the crane components in vicinity of the cutting. The areas surrounding the connections must be inspected for damage. If there was resultant damage, the proper repair procedure should be followed (see Repair recommendations C-R-06) prior to the next use.

The HRCO team noted several examples of poorly executed repair welds to damaged components. The location of the welds indicates that the parts could have been damaged by torch-cutting the bolt during a previous dismantling operation (figures 9-3.6, 9-3.7, and 9-3.8).

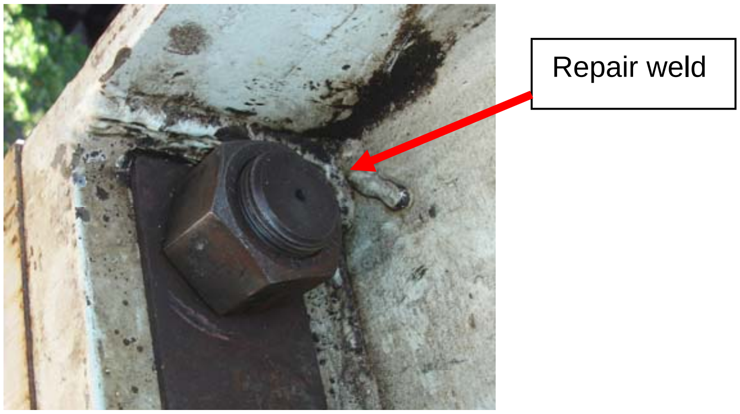


Figure C.9.7: Site C-95 – 8/28/09

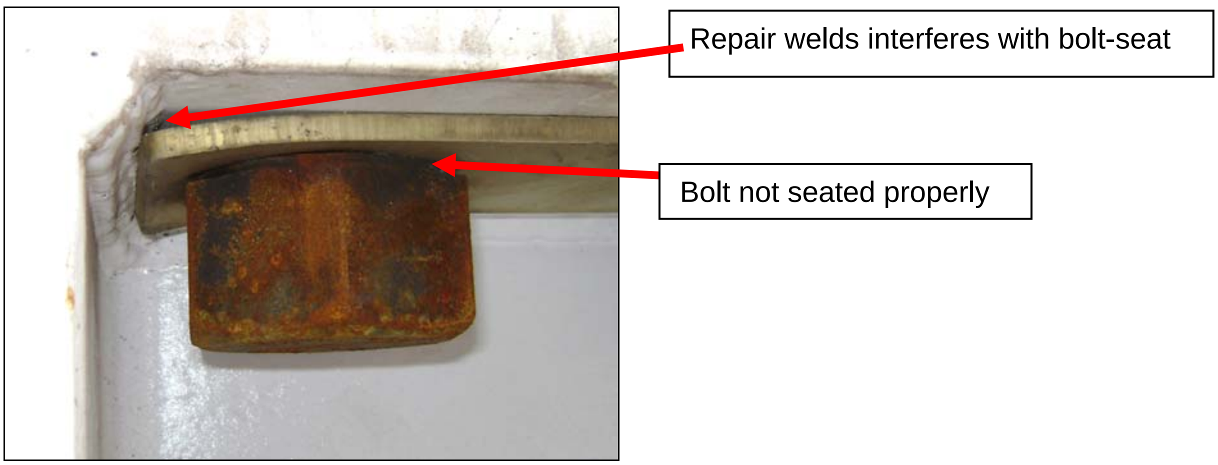


Figure C.9.8: Site C-89 – 1/19/2009

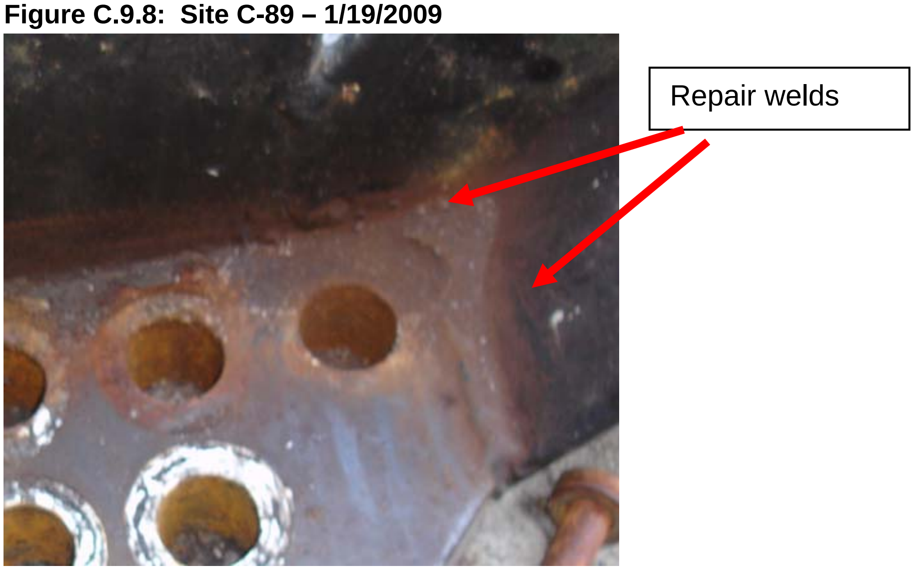


Figure C.9.9: Site C-53 – 8/5/2008

DOB should investigate the use of "calibrated" pneumatic or electric impact wrenches for the exact torquing of bolts.

This is a common practice with some crane erectors in NYC. These types of tools apply shock loading to a bolt during the tightening process and are probably not exact enough to pretension a connection sufficiently without over-tightening it. A possible approach would be to request information from the OEMs and engineers of record for their respective designs.

C.9.3.4 Additional HRCO Observations

Several jurisdictions and national standards have regulations that specifically speak address bolted connections. Detailed citations are included below, and summarized in Table C.9.5.

Agency	Points of Interest:
C-DAC	- At least every 12 months, bolts, rivets and other fasteners for looseness, failed or significantly corroded.
California (Cal-OSHA)	- Tower crane applicant must provide a written plan that covers operation, erection, climbing, and dismantling of the tower crane. This plan must address the manufacturer's manual and tailored to the site conditions. Further, the plan must contain the procedure for torquing all slew ring and tower section bolts.
Hong Kong	- Bolts must be the correct type and quality and tightened to recommended values. - All bolts should be carefully inspected before re-use - Strongly recommended that the joint between the gear ring in the crane base and the tower top ring be broken whenever the crane is moved to a new site and the used bolts should be destroyed. - The tower ring should be examined for weld cracks and for flatness of the bolting surfaces when dismantled and before each erection.
Singapore	- Recommends using new bolts on the bottom three sections of a tower crane at the beginning of each new use. - Prohibit use of connecting fasteners (i.e., bolts/pins) older than eight (8) years. - All bolts/pins or connecting fasteners used in accordance to manufacturer's design and readily identifiable. - Random samples of all bolts/pins or connecting fasteners must undergo NDT (non-destructive testing) for any defects. The Jurisdiction provides a table. - Random samples of all slew ringbolts used are tested for any defects. These bolts should be taken from positions on the slew ring that are mutually 90 degrees apart and identified in some manner that is indicative of their original position.
Australia (Queensland)	- The slew ring must be split each time the crane is moved, 10% of slew ring bolts must undergo NDT. Bolts to be tested are to be selected from the slew ring by a competent person. If any cracks are detected, all bolts must be tested. - A minimum of 10% of tower bolts must be crack tested by NDT prior to each crane erection. If any cracks are found, all tower bolts must be crack tested. - A system that ensures all tower bolts are tested over time is preferred, however a random system of testing may also be used

	- All slewing ring bolts must be inspected using NDT for mobile cranes at the 10 year inspection interval.
Great Britain	- Use high tensile bolt connections purchased from the original crane manufacturer, or from a quality assured vendor to the original manufacturer's specification. - It is important that the replacement parts are to the correct strength grade and the thread specification is rolled rather than cut. - High tensile bolt connection components are not reused unless permitted by the manufacturer. - All high tensile bolt connections are re-tensioned within the period specified by the manufacturer. This period is typically 3-6 weeks. - If it is suspected that a bolted connection has failed in fatigue, or has been overloaded, all components making up the joint are replaced. - The crane manufacturer should be consulted for bolt / nut/ washer replacement criteria and for the specific installation procedures that should be followed.
New Zealand	- Crane bolts operating in tension to be tested for defects by visual and magnetic particle inspection techniques upon each dismantling of the joints/connections or every five years, whichever occurs first, or earlier if recommended by the manufacturer. This includes slewing, tower and tower head bolts, if applicable. - Requires a torque wrench accuracy certificate.
ASME	- A qualified person shall instruct the erection personnel in the means of identifying and installing these special devices and high strength bolts. - Requires that bolts, pins or other connection parts be inspected for condition, such as visible cracks, difficulty in threading, or visible elongation. - Fasteners should undergo a visual inspection between 1 to 12 months or as recommended by the manufacturer or by a qualified person. - Mast (tower) or the slewing bearing bolts should be checked for proper torque pursuant to the manufacturer's recommendation or as mentioned above.

Table C.9.5: Various Jurisdiction Bolted Connection Inspection Requirements

C-DAC: There is an annual requirement to check the bolted connections.

§1412. (f) Annual/Comprehensive

(1) At least every 12 months the equipment shall be inspected by a qualified person in accordance with paragraph (d) (shift inspections).

(2) In addition, at least every 12 months, the equipment shall be inspected by a qualified person for the following:

(A.i.) Equipment structure (including the boom and, if equipped, the jib):

(A) Structural members: deformed, cracked, or significantly corroded.

(B) Bolts, rivets and other fasteners: loose, failed or significantly corroded.

California has the following requirements as part of the application package needed to erect a tower crane (Cal-OSHA Title 8 Section 1938 Chapter 5 part 1 paragraphs 73.70 to 73.84):

The tower crane Applicant shall provide to the Division a written plan covering operation, erection, climbing and dismantling of the tower crane. The written plan shall address the requirements of the manufacturer's manual tailored to the site conditions where the tower crane will be installed, including the following as appropriate for either erection or operation:

… The type and calibration of torque wrenches and/or belt stretchers and the procedure to be used for all tower sections and slew-ring bolts, including re-torquing after final assembly. A procedure for written verification of all slew-ring and tower section bolt torques to be maintained at the worksite or on the crane.

Hong Kong offers recommendations about the bolted connection of tower cranes in the manual "Code of Practice for Safe Use of Tower Cranes", published by the Hong Kong Labour Department, Occupational Safety and Health Branch:

10.1.1 (c)..... Bolts of the correct size, type and quality, tightened to the recommended torques should be used at their appropriate locations. All bolts should be carefully inspected before re-use......

10.14.5 Tower cranes are particularly severe on their slewing rings and ring bolts, and cracks have been found in many instances at the welding of the gusset plates in the tower ring. Severe accident would occur due to the fatigue failure of the bolts. It is strongly recommended that the joint between the gear ring in the crane base and the tower top ring be broken whenever the crane is moved to a new site and the used bolts should be destroyed. The tower ring should be examined for weld cracks and for flatness of the bolting surfaces when dismantled and before each erection. Lack of bearing area at the contact face of a bolt head can lead to slackness under cyclic loading, with the consequent danger of inducing fatigue cracks.

Singapore has the following requirements for tower crane bolts before each erection, as described in the "Notification for use of Tower Crane in Workplace" of the Ministry of Manpower.

7.2 Pre-installation Checks

b) If possible, use new bolts/pins or other connecting fasteners for the bottom 3 mast sections. The supplier or owner must ensure that only original load bearing members from the manufacturer are used in the Installation. A letter of undertaking shall be submitted at application.

c) Bolts/pins or other connecting fasteners of 8 or more years shall not be used

Appendix 6: Checklist for Inspection & Testing of Tower Crane

2) *All bolts/pins or connecting fasteners used in accordance to manufacturer's design and readily identifiable.*

5) *Random samples of all bolts/pins or connecting fasteners must undergo NDT (non-destructive testing) for any defects*

Number of Bolts/Pins Used *(excluded those used at the bottom 3 mast sections)*	***Sample Size Required***
9 to 15	*5*
26 to 40	*10*
41 to 65	*15*
66 to 110	*20*
111 to 180	*25*

Table C.9.6: Bolt Test Requirements.

6a) *Random samples of all slew ringbolts used are tested for any defects. These bolts should be taken from positions on the slew ring that are mutually 90 degrees apart and identified in some manner that is indicative of their original position.*

27) *The bolts/pins or other connecting fasteners used for the bottom 3 mast sections are new ones.*

Australia (Queensland) has the following requirements for bolted connections in its "Tower Crane Code of Practice 2006":

16.2.3 Crack testing of slew ring bolts

The integrity of slew ring bolts is critical for ensuring both the machine deck and boom remain attached to the tower. Slew ring bolts may become damaged, and their effective life reduced if bolts are either under or over-torqued.

For tower cranes, where the slew ring must be split each time the crane is moved (e.g. Favco 1500), 10% of slew ring bolts must undergo NDT. Bolts to be tested are to be selected from the slew ring by a competent person. If any cracks are detected, all bolts must be tested.

All slew ring bolts on tower cranes, including self-erecting tower cranes, must undergo NDT at least every five years. The preferred system of testing is to completely remove the bolts from the slew ring and examine them by magnetic particle testing.

16.2.4 Crack testing of tower bolts

Tower bolts are a critical part of the crane, and permit the effective transfer of load from the crane boom to the crane base. Tower bolts may become damaged from job to job. Their effective life may also be reduced if the bolts are either under or over-torqued. While all tower bolts are high tensile bolts, some are made from extremely high grade steel and may be more susceptible to cracking A minimum of 10% of tower bolts must be crack tested by NDT prior to each crane erection. If any cracks are found, all tower bolts must be crack tested. A system that ensures all tower bolts are tested over time is preferred, however a random system of testing may also be used. A crane owner may decide to test more than 10% of bolts where deemed necessary (e.g. due to a history of cracking). The tested bolts should be identified by a method that does not damage the bolt.

In addition, all slewing ring bolts must be inspected using NDT for mobile cranes at the 10 year inspection interval.

Great Britain: The Health and Safety Executive HSE (an institution similar to the American OSHA including inspection and enforcement powers) issued a safety alert about tower crane high tensile strength bolts on 25 January 2007:

Those responsible for the installation, thorough examination, inspection, maintenance and operation of tower cranes should ensure that:

Use of correct bolt connections:

1. *They use high tensile bolt connections purchased from the original crane manufacturer, or from a quality assured vendor to the original manufacturer's specification. It is important that the replacement parts are to the correct strength grade and the thread specification is rolled rather than cut.*

3. *High tensile bolt connection components are not reused unless permitted by the manufacturer. Components that have been continuously immersed in water should not be reused unless subjected to 100% non-destructive testing (NDT), using appropriate techniques for the application. ......*

7. *All high tensile bolt connections are re-tensioned within the period specified by the manufacturer. This period is typically 3-6 weeks...*

13. *If it is suspected that a bolted connection has failed in fatigue, or has been overloaded, all components making up the joint are replaced. The old parts should be quarantined so that a detailed examination can be undertaken and so that they cannot re-enter service. The crane*

manufacturer should be consulted for bolt / nut/ washer replacement criteria and for the specific installation procedures that should be followed.

New Zealand states the following requirements in the "Approved Code of Practice for Cranes" published by the Department of Labour:

10.2 (6) Inspection of new and existing tower cranes is to be in four distinct parts as follows:

Part 1: ***An inspection by an equipment inspector prior to erection together with inspection of any repairs found necessary.*** *Inspections will cover (but are not limited to):*
.....(v) crane bolts operating in tension to be tested for defects by visual and magnetic particle inspection techniques upon each dismantling of the joints/connections or every five years, whichever occurs first, or earlier if recommended by the manufacturer. This includes slewing, tower and tower head bolts, if applicable.

Note*: Any bolts found with crack-like indications shall be removed from service and destroyed. IANZ-endorsed NDT reports are required.*

Part 2: ***The inspection and testing of the tower crane after erection and annual inspection for recertification.*** *Inspections and testing will cover (but are not limited to) the following items. The following documentation is to be provided by the controller to the equipment inspector prior to testing commencing:*

(c) IANZ-endorsed NDT report of crack testing of tower bolts.

(f) Torque wrench accuracy certificate.

The **ANSI B30.3-2004** "Construction Tower Cranes" has the following recommendations for bolted connections:

Section 3-1.1.2 General Erection and Dismantling Requirements:

(d) Since crane masts or other components utilize connections with special devices or high strength bolts, a qualified person shall instruct the erection personnel in the means of identifying and installing these special devices and high strength bolts.

(f) Before reusing bolts, pins or other connection parts, they should be inspected for condition. Visible cracks, difficulty in threading a nut by hand, or visible necking down of the shank are indications of yielding or damage and reason for rejection.

3-2.1.2 Inspections Classification

(b) (2) Periodic Inspection. Visual inspection by an appointed person at 1 to 12 month intervals or as specifically recommended by the manufacturer or by a qualified person. Records shall be kept of apparent external conditions to provide a basis for continuing evaluation.

Section 3.2.1.4 Periodic Inspection

(a) Complete inspections of the crane shall be performed at intervals, as generally defined in Para. 3-2.1.2(b) (2) depending on its activity ....Any deficiencies, such as listed below, shall be examined and determination made by a designated person as to whether they constitute a hazard:

.... (2) loose bolts or rivets...

(c) High strength (traction) bolts used in mast (tower) connections and in connection of the slewing bearing shall be checked for proper tension (torque) at intervals recommended by the manufacturer or as suggested in (a) above. Bolts that loosen should be checked for permanent deformation or other damage. Visible cracks, difficulty in threading or unthreading a nut by hand or observable necking are reasons for replacement.

C.9.4 Recommendation C-17: Tracking Mobile Cranes

Require the crane user/owner of mobile cranes to notify DOB prior to the start of a job and when the crane will leave the jobsite. DOB must also be notified if there are changes in the schedule. The notification is required for all jobs that require a Certificate of On-site Inspection.

C.9.4.1 Description

Certain aspects of crane inspections are best done on an active site, such as reviewing and auditing the:

- License of operators, safety managers, riggers and other on site personnel
- Crane setup including protection of the public and workers against falling loads, out rigger support and hydraulic systems.
- Comparison of the Certificate of On-site Inspection to the actual conditions
- Status of rigging gear
- Hoisting operations

DOB has difficulties inspecting rubber tired mobile cranes on site because of their high mobility and short job durations. Presently, DOB uses Department of Transportation (DOT) information to create daily lists that DOB inspectors use to check a certain area ("sweeps"). However, this procedure is very inefficient because the DOT permit is valid for 90 days. Thus, on any given inspection day, typically only 10% of the listed cranes are actually on site.

Figure C.9.11: DOB Inspecting a Mobile Crane

C.9.4.2 Recommendation Approach

An approach that DOB should consider is as follows:

- The user/owner notifies the 311 call center by 12:30 hours the day before the crane will start work. DOB has a call-center (“311”) that is available 24 hours 7 days per week. This is the main number for all complaints from the public and emergency calls. Therefore, a mechanism is in place that receives crane related calls.
- DOB would provide the user/owner a confirmation number
- Password protect the system to guard against false notifications
- Implement this recommendation incrementally (e.g. phasing in cranes with different capacities and boom lengths – largest first).

The notification should include the following information:

- Certificate of on-site inspection (CN) number (identifies the job including job address).
- CD number (identifies the crane).
  Proposed start time and date.
- Proposed finish time and date.

Notifications for repeated schedules should be accepted, e.g. “crane C/N 1234/08, CD 5678, will operate from Monday 1/15/09 to Friday 1/19/09 each day from 8:00 AM to 3:00 PM”.
The information received by the call center could then be assembled into inspection route sheets for DOB personnel.

C.9.4.3 Additional HRCO Observations

DOB requires all cranes with a combined boom length over 250’ to be inspected by DOB on site prior to its use. The owner or user notifies DOB with a request for inspection. There is no such rule concerning smaller mobile cranes. DOB has general knowledge about a planned crane operation because the owner or user must submit a Certificate of on-site Inspection (C/N) for cranes engaged in a construction activity. The C/N includes:

- The crane’s identity via the CD number or a group of possible CD numbers
- The address of the jobsite
- The setup and configuration of the crane

The C/N process includes an engineering plan review of the crane’s set-up. The application for the C/N is often filed several days or weeks in advance and is valid for one (1) year. The C/N allows the user to operate the crane anytime within the specified period with no requirement to notify DOB.

For crane operations that utilize a public street, walkway or sidewalk, the user needs a Department of Transportation (DOT) permit. This permit is typically valid for 3 months.

DOB uses different approaches to spot inspect mobile cranes.

- In a “patrol”, DOB inspector drives around searching for operating mobile cranes. Interviews with DOB inspectors showed that this method yielded approximately 2 – 3 crane inspections per day. The success of this method depends upon the number of cranes in a certain area and the weather.
- In a “DOT - sweep”, DOB collects DOT permit information and prepares an inspection route visiting all the sites that have a current DOT crane permit. Interviews with inspectors showed that the inspectors encounter a crane that is operating or where an operator is available approximately 10 – 15% of the locations, resulting in 1 to 3 inspections per workday.

In September/October 2008, the HRCO crane team conducted a “sweep” for mobile cranes. Forty (40) jobsites were chosen randomly from the outstanding C/N list. Jobsites in the Bronx, Brooklyn, Manhattan and Queens where visited. The weather conditions where dry with mild temperatures. Table C.9.7 shows the results of that sweep. The HRCO team found the listed crane at 10% of sites. At 27.5% of the locations, a crane was available for inspection, but the CN number did not match the one listed on the spreadsheet provided by DOB based upon information contained in their database. For 62.5% of the jobsites, no crane was available (in some cases there was no sign of a construction site).

Explanation	**Quantity**	**Percentage**
Total numbers of mobile crane C/Ns chosen for the sweep	40	100
Number mobile cranes, encountered on the sweep, which had the correct C/N number	4	10
Number of sites, where the HRCO team did not encounter the crane as described in the C/N but different mobile cranes (with different crane C/N) where encountered and inspected	11	27.5
Number of site visits, where there was no crane on site or the crane was not accessible	25	62.5
Number of sites, where the HRCO inspector could watch an ongoing crane operation on his unannounced visit	9	22.5

Table C.9.7 Results of HRCO CN Mobile Crane “Sweep”

DOB database provided that a total of 1,173 C/Ns for mobile cranes were processed in 2008. This represents the number of possible “spot” inspections that DOB could make.

Figure C.9.12: Crane Observed During CN "Sweep"

DOB uses a call ahead/appointment system for the use of all c-hooks and outrigger beam suspended scaffolds being erected in the jurisdiction. This recommendation builds upon this effort already initiated by DOB. For instance, licensed riggers must call a specific number to provide the location and date of installation, and DOB provides a confirmation number. In addition, the NYC DOB schedules a large number of inspections via telephone in different areas, e.g. for plumbing, sprinkler or standpipe systems or for residential electrical inspections.

C.9.5 Hoist Recommendation H-4: ANSI Standards

Adopt the ANSI A10.5 Material Hoist standard. Regularly update regulation to reflect current versions of A10.5 (Material Hoist) and A10.4 (Personnel and Material Hoist).

C.9.5.1 Description

Hoist systems are typically categorized as follows:

Personnel Hoist:	Hoist machines that only carry personnel.
Material-Only Hoist:	Hoist machines that only carry materials and equipment (also called “Equipment Hoist”).
Material and Personnel Hoist:	Hoist machines that carry both equipment and personnel.
Back-Structure:	Supports, platforms and other systems that connect the hoist machine to the building.

National standards exist for these systems; however, these standards are not sufficiently incorporated into DOB’s regulatory scheme. The NYC DOB references the 1981 version of ANSI A10.4 for Personnel Hoists. There is no NYC reference standard for Material-Only Hoists, and while they are used infrequently (the HRCO only observed two of approximately 90 sites), it is desirable to have a recognized standard as a basis for regulations.

This recommendation proposes the adoption of ANSI A10.5 for Material-Only hoists. Also, hoist regulations should be regularly reviewed and updated to reflect any important changes in the ANSI standards. For example, the 2007 version of ANSI A10.4 contains important minimum requirement for equipment inspections not found in the 1981 version

Unofficially the contractors in NYC installing Material-Only Hoists are using ANSI A10.5 as a general guide line, because NYC does not have any regulating standard for these devices.

The lack of a clear regulatory standard complicates the inspection process. If an inspector identifies an issue with the as-built condition of a Material-Only Hoist, the contractor can challenge that the issue is subjective and is a matter of the inspector’s opinion. For example, during an HRCO site observation that happened to coincide with a DOB inspection, DOB inspector required the contractor build a ramp to the loading dock in addition to stairs that were already in place. This particular loading dock was designed to accommodate tractor trailers, not hand trucks. Though it may have been a good idea to have a ramp as well, there is no Material-Only standard in NYC to provide a consist basis for these types of decisions (in this case, ANSI A10.5 would not require a ramp to a loading dock).

At a different site it was reported to the HRCO that an inspector took issue with the location of the winch on a Material-Only hoist. Upon further investigation the HRCO found that the winch would not satisfy A10.5, were that the basis for hoist regulations.

At both of the above sites, the primary complaint of the hoist contractor was that DOB inspection of Material-Only hoist equipment is inconsistent. Inspections and regulations based on a national standard will help to address this.

C.9.5.2 Recommendation Approach

Building Code requirements of hoist machines should be re-written to reflect, among other things, HRCO recommendations that DOB chooses to enact (such as Qualified Inspections). As a part of this process the current versions of ANSI A10.4 and A10.5 should be adopted and employed as the basis for all code provisions.

C.9.6 Recommendation H-5: Qualified Inspections

Introduce a "Qualified Hoist Inspection" Program that establishes the requirements and qualifications of the inspectors performing inspections of temporary personnel and material hoists inspections, as well as the inspection criteria and Drop Test Reports that are filed with DOB after the inspections are performed.

C.9.6.1 Description

There is an apparent lack of understanding of basic regulatory requirements within the NYC hoist industry. As an example, it is almost universally misunderstood that the "Drop Tests", performed initially and then later at every 90 day interval or cathead jump, are actually supposed to be full inspections of the entire hoist machine and installation. This may in part be attributed to insufficient inspections, inspector qualifications and inadequate hoist inspection reporting forms (for both DOB and independent inspectors).

When the HRCO asked contractors when the last hoist inspection was performed it often resulted in some confusion. Most contractors had no knowledge when an inspector was last on site. Only 6 of 90 sites claim that complete inspections were performed in addition to the Drop Tests that are performed every 90 days and at jumping operations. None had a record.

As a result of the current industry inspection practices there were many sites which exhibited as-built equipment conditions that did not satisfy applicable codes, whether or not any form of a Drop Test inspection had been performed. In all, 46% of sites observed by the HRCO had more than 3 minor code violations or at least 1 more serious one.

Additionally it was found that 21% of sites maintained as-built conditions that did not comply with design details shown on the hoist installation drawings. One particular hoist site lacked shoring at the 3rd floor balcony that was clearly indicated on the installation drawings. The hoist had been in-service for about 9 months. In that time it underwent approximately 6 Drop Test "inspections", none of which had identified and corrected the oversight.

<u>Credentials</u>

Currently in NYC all hoist inspectors, Departmental or Private Agency, require a NYC Elevator Inspector, or Director License. The qualification for this license is to successfully pass a written Elevator Inspection exam administered by NYC. The exam is essentially very similar to the nationally recognized Qualified Elevator Inspector Exam (QEI) with additional questions tailored to construction type personnel hoists from ANSI A10.4.

NYC Department of Buildings - High Risk Construction Oversight (HRCO)

Do to the secured nature of the exam the HRCO was unable to review the content of the NYC inspector exam. The HRCO understands through discussions with past examinees that there are approximately only 4 to 6 questions devoted to hoist-specific material.

Qualifications

Currently, in order to be eligible to sit for the exam applicants must have specific elevator experience for either the Director or Inspector License. The application mentions specifically "Elevators", as in the common permanent build-type found in any multi-story building. These are vastly different from the hoists common to the construction industry. Construction hoists ride on a mast or tower using temporary building ties to laterally support the mast and cars.

Inspections and Recording

As per applicable codes and standards (i.e. ANSI A10.4, A10.5, OSHA, and NYC Building Code) inspections are performed initially, which is prior to a newly installed hoist being put into service. Initial inspections are normally performed by a NYC - Elevator Department licensed elevator inspector. The inspection is intended to include a fairly detailed review of the as-built equipment. However, the formal Elevator Inspection Reports, the name implies, are specifically constructed for elevators. There are essentially no items on the report that support rack and pinion construction-type hoists. The one truly common item is the "Drop Test" which happens to be a requirement of both permanent building elevators, as well as construction hoists. In fact, due in part to the report form's limitations, the construction industry in NYC does not even refer to these efforts as inspections, they simply call them Drop Tests, because that is the only readily recognizable item on the form..

C.9.6.2 Recommendation Approach

Director / Inspector Requirements

The current system of establishing Directors and Inspectors for Private Agencies is reasonable; however the qualifications should be based specifically on rack and pinion type Personnel and Material Hoist machines used in construction. Inspector qualifications are recommended to follow a similar formwork as is currently in place, but modified to be hoist-specific.

- **Director Requirements**
  - Have a minimum of 10 years of satisfactory experience within the 15 years immediately preceding the date of the application for the exam in the supervision of the assembly, installation, maintenance, repair, design or inspection of Personnel Hoists, Material Hoists, and Personnel & Material Hoists, as well as back-structures and common platforms.

  - o Have a minimum of 5 years of experience within the 7 years immediately preceding the date of the application for the exam, if you are a NY State licensed Professional Engineer in the supervision of the assembly, installation, maintenance, repair, design or inspection of Personnel Hoists, Material Hoists, and Personnel & Material Hoists, as well as back-structures and common platforms.

- **Inspector Qualification Requirements**

  - o Have a minimum of 5 years of satisfactory experience within the 7 years immediately preceding the date of application for the exam, in the erection/installation, design, or inspection of elevators as well as back-structures and common platforms.

Qualification Exam

A Qualified Hoist Inspector exam should be developed that is specific to construction hoists. Example content is:

- 50% - question pertaining specifically to the most current ANSI 10.4 recognized by DOB.
- 20% - questions pertaining specifically to the most current ANSI 10.5 recognized by DOB.
- 20% - questions pertaining specifically to back-structures and common platforms, relevant OSHA requirements, and special NYC-DOB requirements.
- 10% - questions pertaining to incident and accident data as well as site safety information.

Inspections and Reporting

Hoist inspection criteria and intervals should be required to be performed in accordance with ANSI 10.4, 10.5, and OSHA, as well as the NYC-DOB Building Code (refer to the following section for a detailed description of these provisions)

Also, the NYC Hoist Inspection Report forms need to be revised to accommodate items specific to the rack and pinion type hoists being inspected as required by the respective specification. In other words, there should be separate forms, or at least separate section on the form, for material, personnel and material and personnel hoists. Drop Test results also need to be incorporated into these forms.

Inspection intervals would probably remain as they are currently required; once after initial installation, after every major alteration to an existing installation, after every jump up or down, and at every 90 day interval.

The inspector’s reports need to be filed following each inspection and Drop Test. A copy of each report could be forwarded to the following, for their review and record:

- Office of the Hoist Contractor
- NYC-DOB Hoist Department Manager
- Hoist Sealing-Engineer
- Inspecting Agency
- Hoist Equipment On-Site Log Book

C.9.6.3 Additional HRCO Observations

Applicable codes (ANSI, OSHA, and NYC) require some form of inspections, as included below. Current NYC rules and regulations regarding inspection items to be covered and when, or at what intervals, appear to be satisfactory. However, the NYC inspector qualification requirements would not satisfy most any definition of “qualified” inspector, and need to be revised.

A10.4 – Personnel Hoists

- Inspection and Tests of Personnel Hoists
  - 26.1 – Acceptance Inspections and Tests
    - 26.1.1 – Load requirements for inspection and test. In order to ensure the safe operation of new hoists, new installations or following alterations, all hoist devises, before being placed in service, shall be subjected to an acceptance inspection and a full load test in the field. The inspection and test is to determine that all parts of the installation conform to the applicable requirements of this standard, and that all safety equipment functions as required. A jump of the tower is not considered an alteration.
    - 26.1.2 – Inspections and load tests as defined in 26.1.1 shall be witnessed by an inspector employed by the enforcing authority. If such a person is not available, a qualified inspector shall conduct or witness the inspection.
    - 26.1.3 – Acceptance Inspections, All parts of the installation shall be inspected for conformity with the application requirements of this standard.
    - 26.1.4 – Acceptance Test, Acceptance tests shall be performed on all safety devices and equipment to determine that they function in accordance with the applicable requirements of this standard.
  - 26.4 – Periodic Inspections and Tests of all Installations.
    - 26.4.1 – Requirements for periodic inspection and test. All operating installations shall be subjected to regular inspections

and test as defined by this standard and in conformance with manufacture's recommendations. The object of these inspections is to determine that the equipment is in safe operation condition.

- 26.4.2 – Persons authorized to make periodic inspections and tests. Periodic inspections and test shall be made by a qualified inspector.

- 26.4.3 – Inspections and test periods. Periodic inspections and test of hoists shall be made at intervals not to exceed three months.

- 26.4.4 – Periodic Inspections and tests. All parts of the equipment shall be inspected and, where necessary, tested to determine they are in safe operating conditions and that parts subject to wear, such as a ropes, bearings, gears, car safety and governor parts and buffers, have not worn to such an extent as to affect the safe operation of the installation. Any such worn parts shall be adjusted or replaced.

- A10.5 – Material Hoist

- 4.2 – Initial inspections. Before the hoist is placed in service, and each time after the tower is extended, all parts of the tower or mast cage, bucket, boom, platform, hoisting machine, guys an d other equipment shall be thoroughly inspected by qualified personnel.

- 4.3 – Periodic Inspections. All sheaves, racks and pinions, guy ties, bolt connections, miscellaneous clamps, braces and similar parts shall be inspected. The inspection shall be conducted by a qualified person after the initial installation. Subsequent inspections shall be performed at intervals not exceeding one month. All parts that may compromise the system's integrity shall be repaired or replaced.

- 15.19 – Daily inspections. All hoisting machines, including brakes, gears, levers and wire ropes, shall be visually inspected by a competent person daily. All broken, worn or defective parts that may affect operational integrity shall be repaired or replaced before start-up.

    - 15.19.1 – The results of the daily inspection shall be entered into the Maintenance Records logbook, outlined in Section 23.

OSHA

- 1926.552(c)(15) – Following assembly and erection of hoists, and before being put in service, an inspection and test of all functions and safety devices shall be made under the supervision of a competent person. A similar inspection and test is required following major alterations of an existing installation. All hoists shall be inspected and tested at not more than 3 month intervals.

NYC Building Code

- Title 26/ Subchapter 3 / Article 4 - Inspections
    - 26.219 – Inspection of construction machinery and equipment, etc – The commissioner shall cause inspections to be made of machinery and equipment used for construction and excavating work, and for cableways, hoisting and rigging purposes.
    - 26.220 - The commissioner shall cause all signs for which permits have been issued to be inspected at least once in every calendar year.
    - 26.221 – Inspection reports. All inspection reports shall be in writing, and signed by the inspector, or the responsible individual, or the officer of the service, making the inspection; and a record of all inspections shall be kept by the department.
- Title 27 / Subchapter 18 / Article 3 – Test and Interval
    - 27.997 – Acceptance test, No new, relocated or altered equipment shall be placed in operation until it has been tested and an equipment use permit has been issued by the commissioner. Such test shall be made as required in section 27.999 of this article and shall be conducted by the person or firm installing, relocation or altering the equipment and shall be witnessed by a representative of the commissioner.
    - 27.998 – Periodic inspection and test intervals, Every new and existing device listed in article one of this subchapter except elevators located, (i) in owner occupied one-family or two-family dwellings provided that the elevator services only the owner occupied dwelling unit and that such dwelling unit is not occupied by boarders, roomers or lodgers, or (ii) within convent of rectories which are not accessible to non-occupants on a regular basis, or (iii) within an owner occupied dwelling unit which is not occupied by boarders, roomers or lodgers shall be inspected and tested at least at the following intervals:
        - (d) Workers' hoists – every three months and immediately following each increase in travel.
    - 27.999 – Inspection and test requirements, Every new and existing device listed in article one of this subchapter shall be subjected to inspections and test requirements as follows:
        - (a) Elevators, dumbwaiters and escalators to the requirements specified in the reference standards RS 18-1
        - (b) Moving Walks
        - (c) Lifts, conveyors, and amusement devices

C.10 MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR

C.10.1 Description

This chapter addresses issues that relate to the repairs and upkeep of the cranes operating in the jurisdiction.

Regular maintenance is a necessary aspect of safe crane operation. Repair of damaged, malfunctioning or worn components must be conducted in a manner that restores intended functional integrity. The repair and maintenance recommendation addresses the need to monitor repairs to critical components and the need to keep good maintenance records as evidence of proper crane up-keep.

The component tracking is a related aspect of maintenance and repair; with out being able to track critical crane components there is no way to document service history.

The Data Recorder (sometimes referred to as a “Black Box”) recommendation is for further study that outlines how DOB can incorporate technology to enhance the first two recommendations.

Hoist recommendations address procedures to evaluate the condition of hoist components while at a storage yard (Off-site Controls) and on-site documentation of critical information (On-site Log Book).

C.10.2 Recommendation C-6: Maintenance and Repair

C.10.2.1 Description

The use of appropriate repair and maintenance procedures, the selection and use of quality materials, and regular maintenance greatly influence crane safety and longevity. The present system for maintenance and repairs (including the rebuilding and modifications of crane parts) has short comings:

a) DOB typically relies on voluntary information from crane owners, users and operators for notification of a major repair. The exception being situations where the repair was either initiated by a DOB inspection or an accident reported to DOB.

b) While the practice regarding maintenance and inspection logs is apparently improving, they still are not routinely updated so that a DOB inspector can successfully audit them.

While OSHA and DOB require frequent and periodic crane inspections, there is currently no NYC or national requirement to keep inspection, repair or maintenance records for longer than 1 year. If records are available at NYC sites, they often do not include information about the person performing the procedures or a “sign-off” of the work performed. In addition, these records are often either hand written or generic forms. It is therefore difficult to determine if all required maintenance and inspections were performed.

Some rental contracts shift the maintenance and repair responsibility from the owner to other persons or firms, which includes the record keeping. For example, the owner, operator, maintenance person (“oiler”), rental customers and persons responsible for crane operations (often different persons as the job progresses) can all be involved in the maintenance and inspection process. DOB expanded the role of the “crane safety coordinator” to ensure the required safety and maintenance inspections are properly completed and recorded.

Figure C.10.1 and C.10.2 show a major boom buckling (for which there was, at the time, no specific repair requirements) and poor maintenance of a crane electrical cabinet (corroded electrodes and improper flammable liquid storage).

Figure E.10.1: From DOB incident / accident files

Figure E.10.2: Site C-18, 9/30/08

C.10.2.2 Repair

The Owner must notify DOB of all major structural repairs while the component is actively registered (has CD) or upon renewal if the CD lapsed. All parts (structural and major components) should be replaced with OEM parts or OEM equivalent as determined by DOB.

The proposed process is:

- Work with the industry and manufacturers to identify key components. Initially, the HRCO recommends the following: cords on mast, boom and jib sections, castings, pin connections, turn table, suspension system and A-Frame. Crane recommendation C-R-20 provides a list of components to be tracked. However, the list for this recommendation would likely include additional items. For example, the tower crane suspension system will be considered here and not on C-R-20.
- Major repairs would be identified following an accident or during standard inspections by either DOB or a qualified inspector (see C-R-03).
- Should an accident or incident occur involving a key component while operating in the jurisdiction, the Owner and User must notify DOB immediately (current regulations require this). If such happens outside NYC, then the Owner must notify DOB prior to operating the crane in the City or the next CD renewal, whichever occurs first.
- Require the manufacturer's involvement in all such repairs (i.e., repair procedure, supply of parts and repair certification).
- Owner submits the manufacturer's approved repair procedures to DOB. If a crane is no longer supported by a manufacturer, then the CD will not be renewed unless a Professional Engineer designs a repair procedure and certifies that the repair will essentially restore the crane to its original state and the crane is safe to operate.
- The repair will be completed by a certified person pursuant to the Manufacturer or Professional Engineer's recommendation(s).
- A third party inspection is required after completion of the repair or modification (see the Qualified Inspectors recommendation, C-R-03).
- If a professional engineer provided the repair procedure, they must approve that the repair is pursuant to their direction.
- The inspector sends his original report to the Owner (to be filed with the crane's maintenance file) and a copy to DOB.
- Owner notifies DOB the crane has been repaired and ready for re-inspection, if required by regulation (e.g. stop work notice filed).

The current regulation requires that if a crane accident occurs in the Jurisdiction, the person directly in charge of the crane or owner must notify DOB of the incident prior to moving or removing the equipment.

DOB then visits the job site and completes an initial incident/accident report, and issues a Stop Work Order (SWO) if the inspector deems the machine unsafe. In order to lift the SWO, the Owner must repair the damaged equipment, request DOB to re-inspect, and then they may place it back into service when DOB lifts the SWO. For instances that occur outside the City, there is no such requirement.

Figure C.10.1 above shows a crane for which the heel section of the boom was buckled due to malfunctioning equipment. The accident occurred in January 2005. DOB file shows the section as being repaired, but did not include the manufacturer's repair procedure. The SWO was lifted after DOB re-inspected the crane.

The HRCO reviewed two situations where a tower crane sustained damage while either being assembled or in place. The first incident had three lacings damaged by the hoist rope (Figure C.10.3), and the second had a bent lacing and cracked weld of unknown cause (Figure, C.10.4).

In the first instance, the Owner, via the Engineer of Record, submitted a Manufacturer's procedure for the repair, made the repair, and the SWO lifted. The CD folder does not contain documentation regarding the actual repair.

Figure C.10.3: Site C-80 – 9/8/08

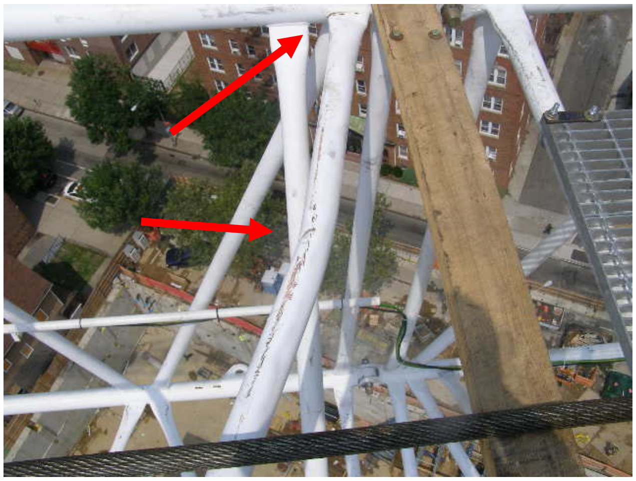


Figure C.10.4: From DOB incident / accident files

The boom section shown in picture in Figure C.10.4 depicts a situation where the Owner elected to replace it rather than place it in situ. Under the current system it can not necessarily be determined whether the replaced section will be properly repaired before being returned to service.

The HRCO team also witness five instances of poor welds near the bolted connection (Figure C.10.5). This could be could be indicative of flame cutting bolts (the practice of removing difficult bolts by cutting with a torch). These welds may interfere with the surface of bolts, and put bending stresses on the bolt endangering the connection.

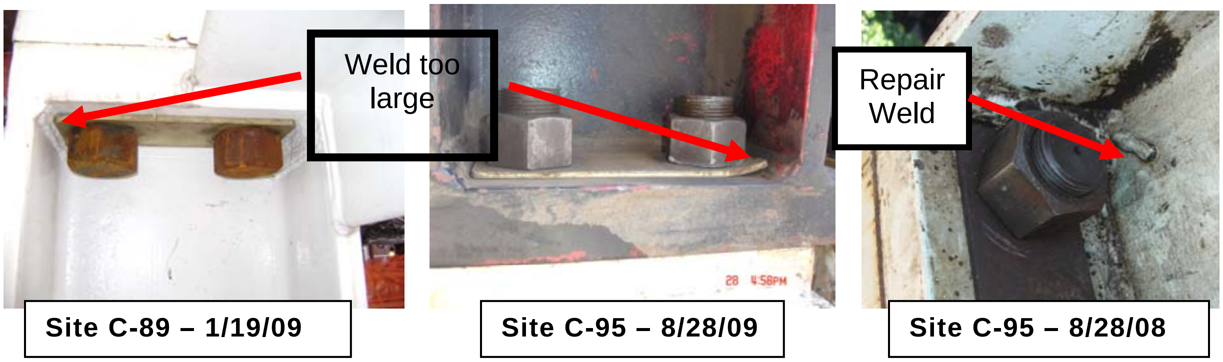


Figure C.10.5: Poor repair welds

There are web sites that portend to manufacture and sell OEM parts that actually have no relationship with the OEM. These parts may be inferior to the OEM parts (see Component Tracking Recommendation, C-R-20).

The HRCO team observed a crane that appeared to have been repaired (heel boom section) with non-OEM manufactured parts. The lacings do not have taper that is consistent with the original equipment. Structural member details, such as tapers, are designed by manufacturers to support design objectives such as fatigue life. Figures C.10.6 and C.10.7 illustrate these points. In figure C.10.6, the catwalk differs between the two boom sections. One has a toe guard and a different grating. While Figure C.10.7, the lacing attached to the cord has a crimp in it versus having a sloping angle that manufacturer typically use.

ASME B30.3 also addresses this point by stating that replacement parts should ordinarily be obtained from the original equipment manufacturer or at least equivalent to OEM parts.

Figure D.10.6 - Site C-88 – 10/17/08

Figure D.10.7 - Site C-88 – 10/17/08

C.10.2.3 Maintenance

Increase the written maintenance and inspection log requirements to provide more complete records of the work performed on each crane.

Strengthen the maintenance/inspection log book requirement for tower and large mobile cranes operating within the jurisdiction and that are on a job site for a minimum specified duration (i.e., longer than a continuous 3 months period on-site).

The proposed process is:

- Users maintain the inspection and maintenance logs while the crane is on site, and DOB audits them. The information that should be included in the logs are the date and time the work was performed, inspection items required by RS19-2, any additional OEM recommendations, items that DOB may request and the initials of the person performing the work.
- Designate the Crane Safety Coordinator responsible for the upkeep of the crane's maintenance and inspection records (they do not need to perform the work – just ensure that it is completed).
- During dismantling, DOB would audit the logs a final time. The user would send the logs back with the crane to the owner, and the owner would keep them with the crane's maintenance file.
- The Owner would fully inspect the crane upon its return and file the completed check list and the maintenance and repair work performed with the crane's maintenance and repair file (these will available during the annual CD inspection).
- The Owner would certify that the crane is ready and fit to return to service.

This procedure would allow the Third Party Inspector to review the file at the annual inspection and make note of any troublesome trends or repairs. However, if there is a gap in the log and it arose due to the crane operating outside of New York City, the Owner should not be penalized for not having proper logbook entries. However, all repairs to structural components must be included in the crane's maintenance file.

DOB inspectors review logbook entries and have issued violations for not maintaining them on site. The Owner is not currently required to maintain records on a particular crane or certify that it is ready and fit for service.

Maintenance and inspection issues represented 55% of the issues that the HRCO team noted (see graph in Figure C.10.8). A good example is figure C.10.2 as it shows a battery compartment (typically a closed space) with a flammable liquid. An inadvertent spark from the battery could lead to a crane fire.

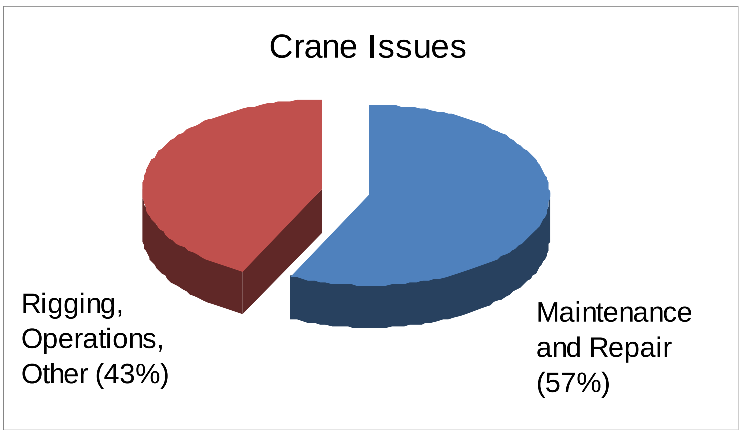


Figure C.10.8: Inspection and Maintenance Issues

There were at least six (6) situations in which the crane maintenance (tower and mobile) were severely lacking (see Figure C.10.9). One of the most egregious examples was a large mobile crane that used a golf sock, duct tape, bungee cords and rubber bands to assist the operator run the crane.

Maintenance/Inspection log updates tend to be inconsistent. The team tested 17 sites and 7 had inadequate logs, and the available logs had limited or no information about repairs. The latter point may be indicative that no repairs were made.

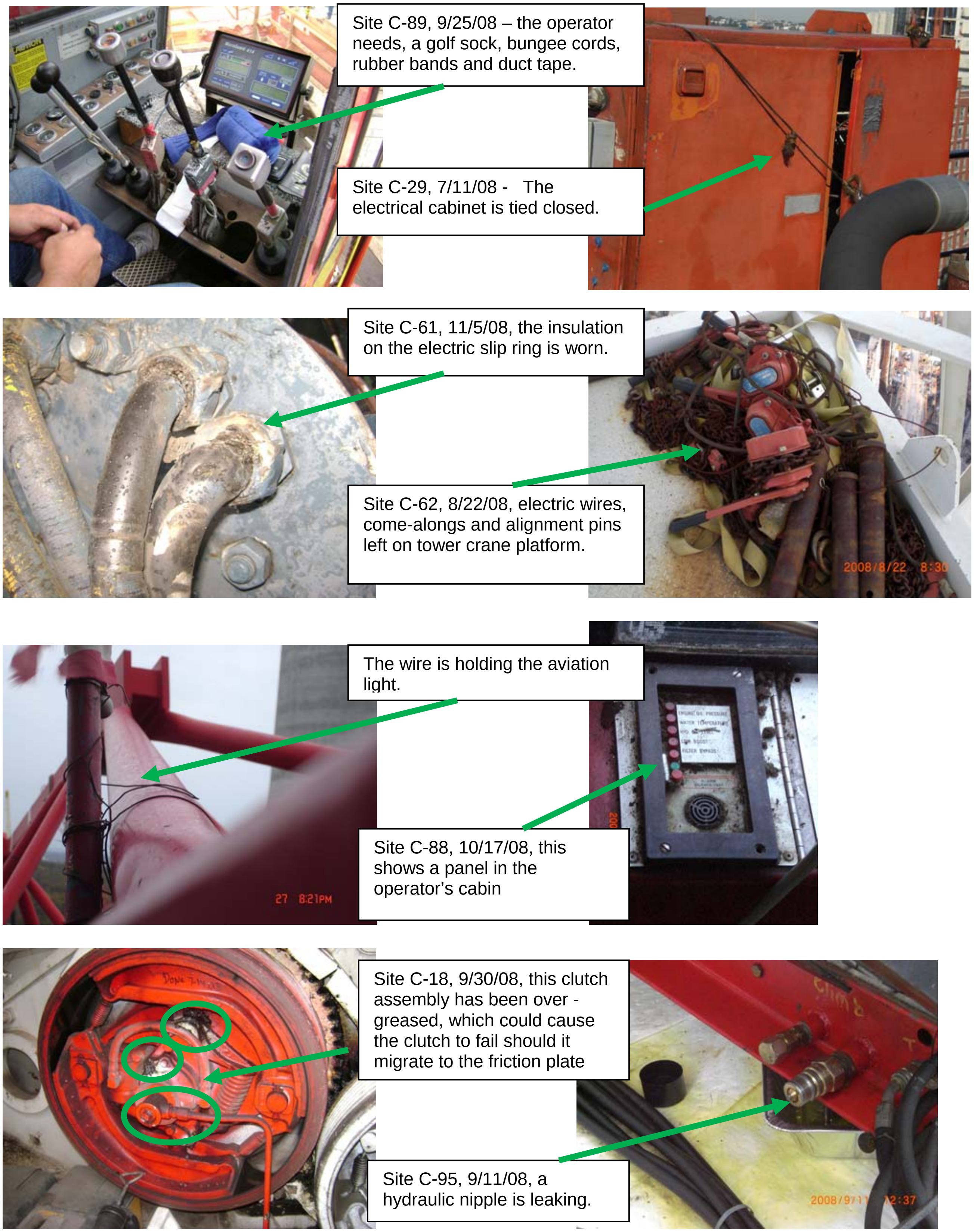


Figure C.10.9: Maintenance Issues

In one of the industry meetings, the participants noted that they typically do not provide the logs to the Owner at the end of the job, nor do the Owners request them. A number of crane owners said that such logs have limited value as they perform a complete inspection upon the crane's return.

Require a logbook for mobile cranes (short term rental) showing maintenance and repair modifications.

The owner would include date and person performing each procedure. The log should start with the date the crane was first registered in NYC and would follow the crane.

During the industry meeting, some Owners mentioned that they keep maintenance files for each of their cranes, and some did not. These logs would be reviewed by the Qualified Inspector during the annual registration process. The inspector would note any concerns in the repair/maintenance history on the annual report. The Owner would keep each of the annual inspection forms in the crane's maintenance file.

C.10.2.4 Additional Considerations for Good Practice

Contractors should keep the tower crane pit free from water and debris.

The tower crane foundation pit is typically one of the lowest points at a job site, and as such will collect water and debris over the period that the tower remains on site. The foundations typically have steel components and as such are susceptible to rust so water egress and accumulation should be discouraged.

DOB inspectors have required various contractors to pump out the water from the pits. One such case was Site C-89 – 10/28/08.

Below are pictures of tower crane pits that either had water or debris in them (Figure C.10.10 to 12). Five tower crane foundation pits (three shown below) contained water and debris; this presents a corrosion issue and rendered inspection of the foundation integrity difficult. In the winter, ice formation could adversely affect the steel of the mast section as well as bolted connection.

Figure D.10.10: Site C-10 – 3/5/09 The HRCO team made three visits to this crane (also 8/16/08 and 1/26/09) and each time the foundation pit contained water and debris.

Figure D.10.11: Site C-13 – 1/26/09 This tower crane contained frozen water .

Figure D.10.12: Site C-89 – 10/28/08 The HRCO team made two visits to this crane (also 1/19/09) and each time the foundation pit contained water.

Based upon further review, DOB could approve repair facilities, e.g. OEM approved facilities for different makes or models of cranes*.*

An established set of criteria would need to be developed to approve non-OEM facilities. Proposed criteria should include, but not limited to, the following:

- Certified welders on staff with experience in the type of metal and procedures required by OEM. DOB requires that all welding repairs be completed by a certified welder. The City certifies welders based upon set requirements (see Regulation section).
- The repair personnel received factory (OEM) training on the particular make and model of crane requiring repair.
- Personnel has maintenance and repair experience with the make and model of crane.
- The company has access to manuals for the crane.

C.10.2.5 Additional HRCO Observations

Several jurisdictions and national standards have regulations that specifically address repairs and maintenance. For example:

Repairs

Cal-OSHA addresses the repair recommendation in part in Title 8, Chapter 4, Subchapter 7, Article 100:

"§5035. Damaged Booms *(a) Prior to further use, boom sections or boom suspension components that have been damaged shall be repaired, restoring them to not less than the capacity of the original section or components. (b) Repairs to critically stressed members of a boom or boom extension, such as a boom chord, mast chord, or boom sections, shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturers' or certified agent's recommendations."*

Singapore has a similar procedure as outlined in this recommendation. If a structural member requires repair, the company that intends to carry out the repair must notify the regulator three (3) days prior to the work and the work must be performed by an approved crane contractor and it must follow the manufacturer's recommendations.

Maintenance

Cal-OSHA requires the employer to create a written plan that addresses the requirements of the manufacturer's manual tailored to the site conditions, including the following (Title 8, Section 1938, Chapter 5, Part 1 §7370-7384):

- *"Inspection responsibilities of supervisors, inspection intervals and what is to be inspected, i.e., a written crane inspection program.*
- *A written crane maintenance and preventive maintenance program."*

Washington State requires the Crane certifier (WAC 296-155-53200) to:
"(1) The accredited crane certifier must review the following documents as part of the crane certification process:

(a) Crane maintenance records of critical components to ensure maintenance of these components has been performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(b) Crane periodic and frequent inspection documentation."

And under WAC 296-155-53114

"Accredited crane certifiers are required to maintain complete and accurate records pertaining to each crane of all inspections, tests and other work performed as well as copies of all notices of crane safety deficiencies, verifications of correction of crane safety deficiencies, and crane certifications issued for the previous five years and provide these records to the department upon request. Failure by an accredited crane certifier to maintain required records may result in accreditation suspension or revocation."

Australia requires a maintenance log book to be transfer with ownership. The regulation says (cited from Tower Crane Code of Practice 2006 Handbook):

"A crane service record, such as a maintenance logbook, of the significant events concerning the safety and operation of the crane must be kept and readily available. The records must be easily understood, and written in plain English.
Records may be kept in any suitable format, and must be transferred with ownership of the crane. All entries in the maintenance logbook are to:

(a) clearly describe the work undertaken and parts replaced;

(b) be dated;

(c) note the name of the person carrying out the work; and

(d) be signed by the person carrying out the work. Documentation stating that the crane has been inspected by a competent person, and is in a safe and satisfactory condition, should be readily available. The checks, adjustments, replacement of parts, repairs and inspections performed, and all irregularities or damage concerning the unit's safe use, must be recorded. In addition, all complete routine, annual inspection and 10-year major inspection reports must be maintained and made available for examination as required."

British Colombia, Canada requires crane owners to maintain a log from cradle to grave for each crane.

Maryland's proposed regulation requires the employer to maintain daily inspection records for one (1) year and the annual reports for three (3).

C.10.3 Recommendation C-20: Component Tracking

DOB should institute a tracking system for the major structural components.

C.10.3.1 Description

The Department of Buildings currently requires that owners provide IDs for boom and tower mast sections. This requirement should be expanded to include other key structural components such as the A-frame, turntable, climbing section, machine platform (operator's cab), counter jib and the movable counter mechanism (if applicable).

Tracking these major components will help guard against the use of counterfeit or substandard structural components, which are readily available at discounted prices on the internet. In addition, such a system would provide a means to determine the age of the components, over time, of tower and large mobile crane that operate within the jurisdiction.

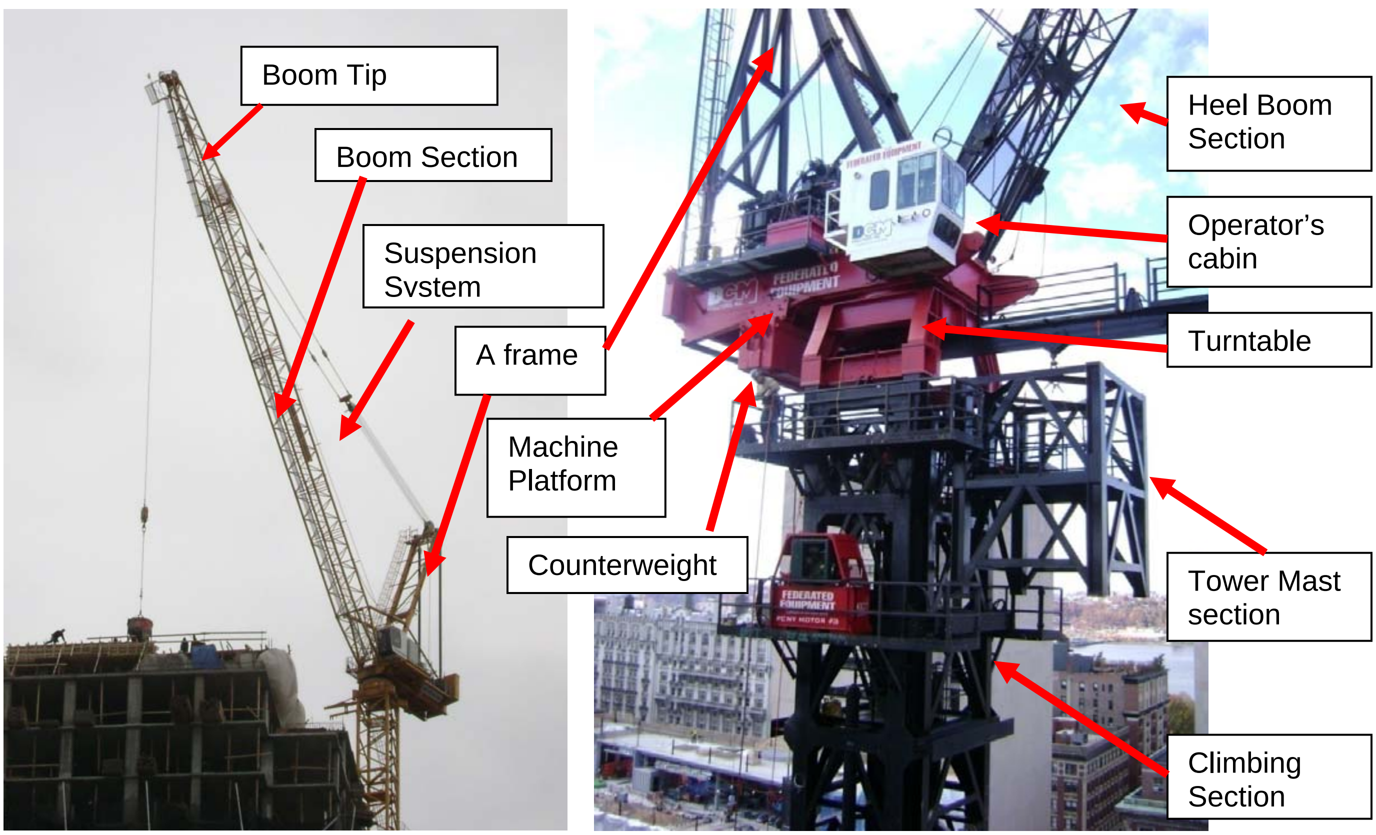


Figure C.10.13. Key components to a climbing tower crane

C.10.3.2 Recommendation C-R-20

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions*:*

- DOB should identify a minimum list of components that require a unique ID and marked as noted below.
- Each major load bearing component or subassembly of a crane must carry a unique component identification number (ID)
- The ID must be attached to the component in a permanent and durable fashion. The ID must be easily readable when the component is stored unassembled on the ground. In addition, it must be possible to read the number while the machine is erected (i.e., an inspector can read it while climbing on the machine).
- The Owner should submit a list of the components mentioned above together with their CD application
- Like boom and mast sections, the structural components that are listed in this recommendation should require annual or pre-assembly NDT.

DOB should identify a minimum list of components that require a unique ID and marked as noted above*.*

Major components/assemblies generally have the following qualities:

- Component / assembly can easily be removed (pinned or bolted connection, hoses carry quick-disconnects, electrical wiring has plug connections)
- Weight of component on crane (not derrick) or assembly generally exceeds 600 lbs
- Is a load bearing component

Normally removed during transport to a jobsite

The HRCO proposes the following preliminary lists based in part on input from industry outreach meetings. However, DOB should evaluate this list and continue to consult with industry representatives before finalizing the lists.

Tower cranes:

- The machine deck / counter jib carrying hoist drums, diesel engine etc.
- Other counter jib sections
- The operator's cabin when detached from the machine platform for transport
- Tower mast sections
- Tower top sections
- Jib sections
- Boom sections including heel and tip
- The A-Frame, if the A-frame is disassembled during transport, than the subcomponents receive individual numbers
- The turntable and the structures to mount it to the tower and to the crane top, if these are detachable.
- The climbing frame / climbing mechanism

- Crane parts of the Foundation like tower bases or base frames for inner climbers

Mobile cranes:

- The basic crane
- Lattice boom sections including heel and tip
- Detachable or folding jib sections and their segments
- Boom extensions, jib extensions and their segments
- The A-frame

Derricks:

- Mast sections, poles and other uprights
- Boom sections including heel and tip
- Boom extensions,
- Major components of the A-frame, all stiff legs,
- Junctions, seats and base plates exceeding 600 lbs.

If a crane has an irregular design that includes additional load bearing components or subassemblies, DOB should decide the components to be tracked for that individual crane prototype.

Each major load bearing component or subassembly of a crane must carry a unique component identification number (ID).

DOB should consider using a format of “xxxxx-yyyyyyyyyyyyyyy” The first 5 digits [“x”] is the CD (Certificate of Operation) number of the crane. If the CD has less than 5 digits, preceding digits are “0” (example CD 3456 will be “03456”). The following 15 positions (“y”) can be chosen by the crane owner to represent the component of that crane as long as that part of the ID is unique within the crane.

This should allow the owner to keep an already existing internal numbering system in place by inserting the CD number in front of the already numbered component. For example, an owner uses the number ABC-TT-1 (for company ABC, turntable and 1 as the number) on a crane with the CD number 2345. The new ID would become 02345-ABC-TT-1, and hence preserve their current system. The recommendation does not solely rely on existing systems for the following reasons:

- The CD number assures that the number is unique within NYC.
- The CD number allows all of the individually tracked parts to initially be associated as a single crane. While some tower and jib sections are interchanged more often, the main components typically stay with the same machine. The inclusion of the CD number allows inspectors to more easily identify parts, which were not part of the original CD.

DOB requires identification numbers on crane’s boom, jib and tower sections (DOB Issuance #536), but the numbers only have to be unique to the crane equipment owner. Crane owners use individual numbering systems to track their components, and there appears to be no consistent system within the industry.

Most manufacturers today use a manufacturer specific and unique worldwide numbering system for their crane components. However, there could be older pieces of equipment or machines and components without such markings.

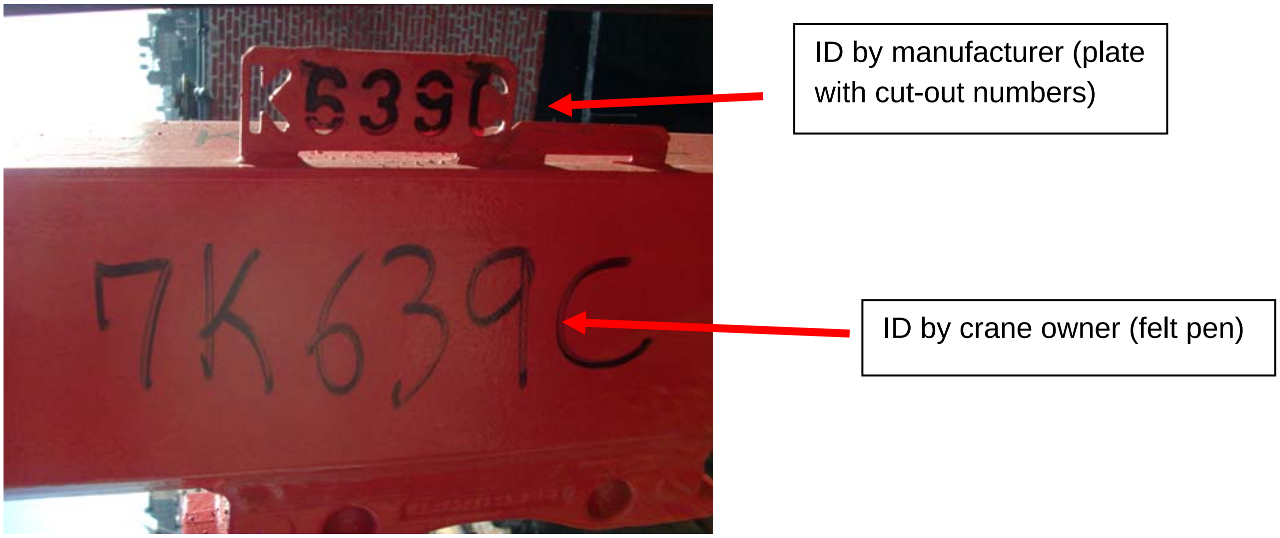


Figure C.10.14. **Site C-109 – 1/29/09**

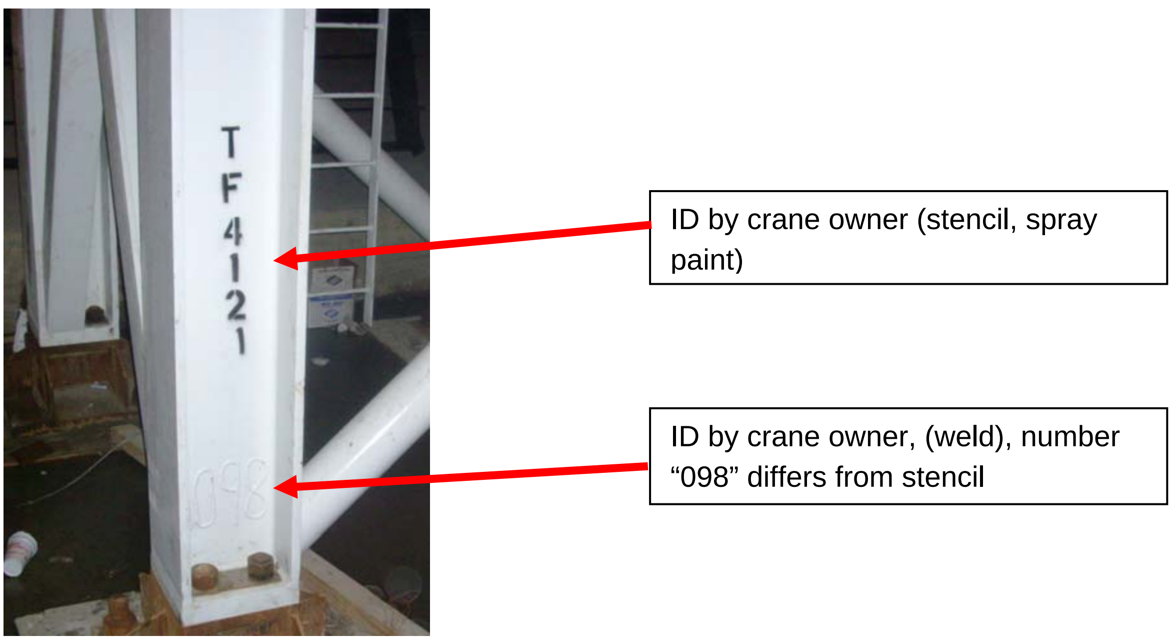


Figure C.10.15. Site C-89 – 1/21/09

The ID must be attached to the component in a permanent and durable fashion. The ID must be easily readable when the component is stored unassembled on the ground. In addition, it must be possible to read the number while the machine is erected (i.e., an inspector can read it while climbing on the machine).

Additional details for the ID’s could include that for painted numbers the ID has to be non fading and in a contrasting color and at least 3” high. For a type plate, the number must be at least 2" high, if engraved and 3" high if printed, and the color of the type plate must be of contrasting to the surrounding area (figures 10.14 and 10.15).

In some cases, e.g. on a turntable of a tower crane, the number must be attached twice at different locations to allow reading while the turntable is stored on the ground and while an inspector climbs through it.

DOB issuance # 536 provides rules regarding the numbering. In this rule the "durability" of the ID number is of major concern. For reasons of structural integrity, the HRCO prefers painted numbers when the numbers are not installed by an OEM or its representative.

Sophisticated tagging systems e. g. RFID tags or bar-codes are available and have been used in the construction industry. One crane manufacturer is considering using RFID tags for part serial numbers. These types of tags are machine readable with a handheld device. The main advantages are reading speed and the exclusion of human error in the data input.

The team encountered tags and type plates that were hard to read. Some of the IDs are painted on conforming to issuance #536 (see figures C.10.16 and C.10.17).

Figure C.10.16 Site C-73 – 1/19/09

Figure C.10.17 Site C-35 – 11/19/09

The Owner should submit a list of the components mentioned above together with their CD application. The list should include the following for each component:

- The manufacturer
- OEM part serial number, if available,
- Type of component
- Year of manufacture
- Previous owner including owner's address if the application is the first one for the owner.
- Applicants' chosen DOB ID numbers.

For each machine and each additional component that enters the City for the first time the owner should submit a declaration explaining where he purchased / received it, and an affidavit declaring the previous known history of the equipment or the component. Similarly, if a component associated with the crane on its last CD cannot be presented at the next annual inspection, the owner must provide an explanation about the whereabouts of that component. In addition the owner must supply a written description regarding all structural repairs to these components. (See the HRCO Recommendation C-R-06: Maintenance and Repair).

DOB started to collect data on towers and boom sections. The owner currently includes an I.D. for the components which were subjected to NDT (boom, masts jib) on the application for the Certificate of Operations (CD). This provides a method during the preassembly inspection for DOB to audit those components subjected to NDT. There is currently no tracking of parts as to where they were used over time, where they originated or at which point they entered the city.

There are multiple internet-based sources for after-market tower sections and other components. The sources investigated do not have clear documentation of the design and manufacturing standards that apply to the components sold (see figures C.10.18, C.10.19 and C.10.20). Two manufacturers (Terex and Liebherr) have reported finding replications of entire cranes (including falsified serial numbers) from companies that were not authorized to manufacturer their equipment and thus did not have design and manufacturing information that would be critical to reproducing a crane that not only "looked" like the original but would also perform like it.

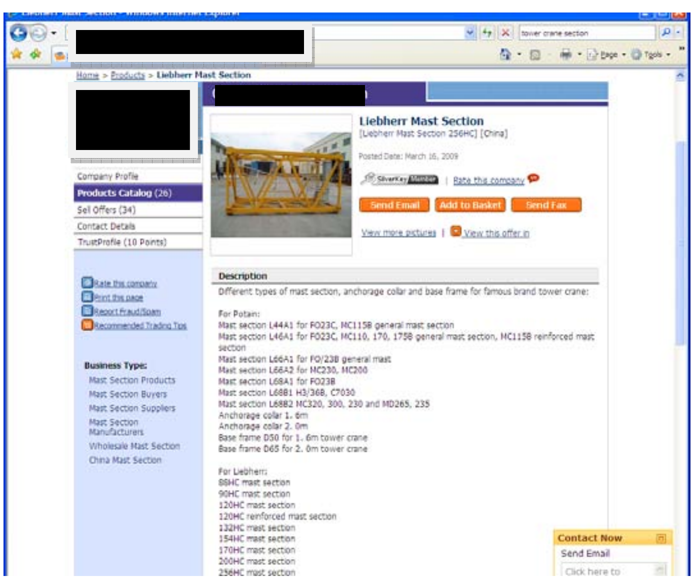


Figure C.10.18: Internet site offering "Different types of mast section, anchorage, collar and base frames for brand name tower crane", parts for Potain and Liebherr are offered.

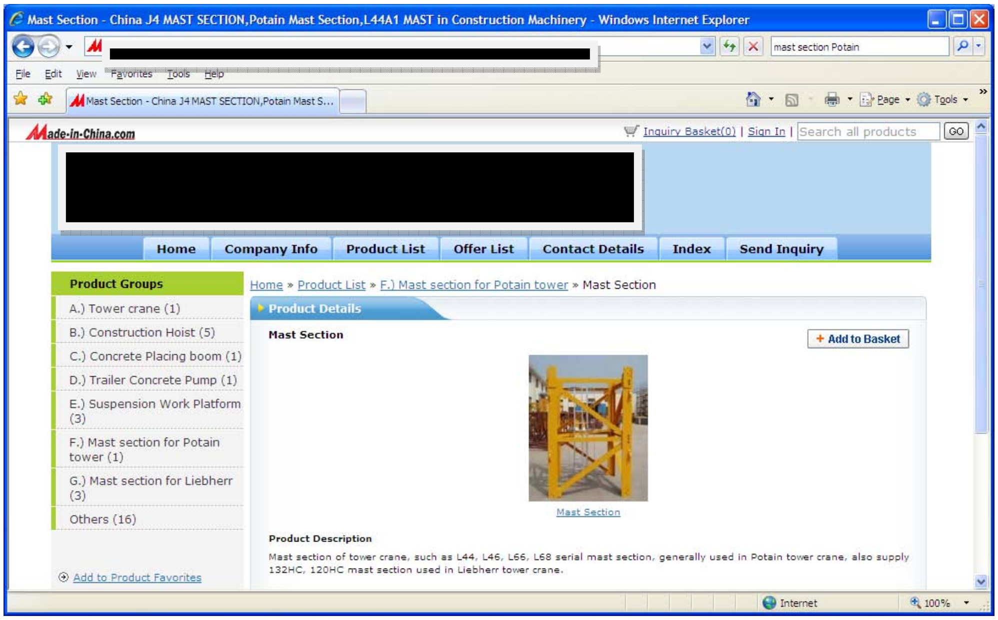


Figure C.10.19: Website offering tower mast sections "generally used in Potain tower crane" and "mast section used in Liebherr tower crane".

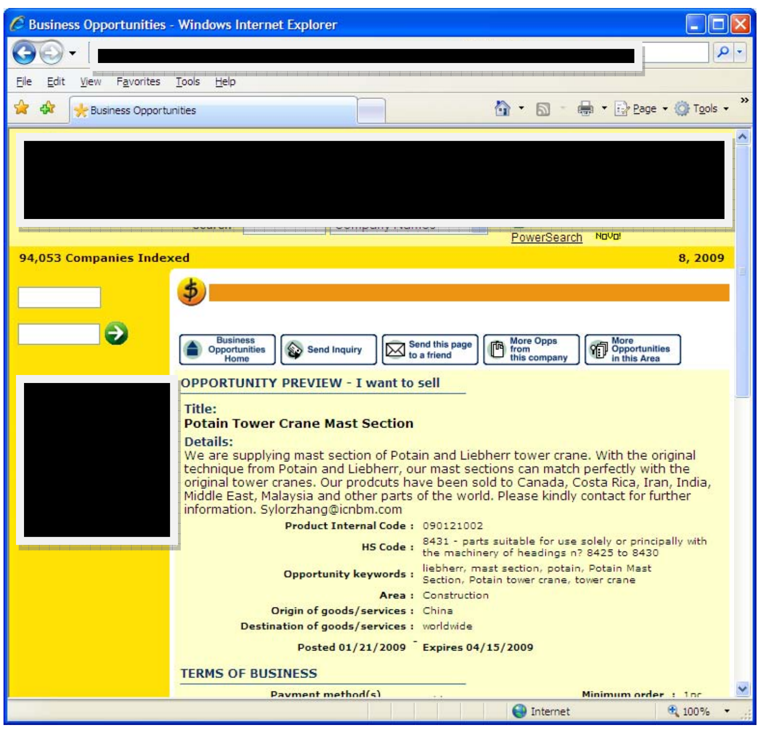


Figure C.10.20: Website offering mast section that "With the original technique from Potain and Liebherr… can match perfectly with the original tower cranes".

On 7/29/07 boom section # B7-1953 of a lattice boom mobile crane was severely damaged in an accident. The crane CD was revoked. Several weeks later the crane was put back into operation with a renewed CD. This time boom section #B7-1953 was missing on the NDT report and CD. In 2008, the crane received a CD including a boom section numbered B7-1953. From the CD file, it is not clear that this boom section was damaged in an accident and probably exchanged or repaired. Neither CD nor the materials in DOB accident file provide information regarding the origin of B7-1953. This provides an example of the value of component tracking, but that it must also be used in conjunction with clearly communicated inspection (C-R-6) and accident reports (C-R-18).

Like boom and mast sections, the structural components that are listed in this recommendation should require annual or pre-assembly NDT*.*

The NDT testing will be performed by approved testing agencies, specializing in that field. These agencies should visually check the complete assembly and not only the welds. During annual inspections and pre assembly inspections, inspectors review the NDT results and note the IDs of all components that will later be checked against DOB database.

DOB inspectors currently verify that the same tower, boom and jib sections that were subjected to NDT are used during a machine assembly. In addition, NDT results of these parts are reviewed at annual inspections.

The HRCO team conducted a detailed review of NDT reports of three tower cranes. One such review indicated that 2 out of 8 base plates on one tower section failed the NDT test. DOB requested additional information on this section prior to allowing the owner to use it (site C-95, NDT testing 8/20/08). This is an example where being able to track components helped ensure the section was acceptable prior to it being used.

C.10.3.3 Additional HRCO Data

The HRCO team did not find any US municipalities that require a unique ID system for crane components, and there is no mandated crane or construction equipment registration in the United States.

The National Equipment Register (NER) offers a database for the registration of construction heavy equipment. The data is used as a tool to identify and recover stolen equipment. The participation in the database is voluntary, and privacy agreements allow NER to only provide information whether a piece of equipment is stolen. The NER cooperates with and is supported by the insurance industry. A similar system "CESAR" is used in Britain.

Hong Kong recommends the identification of tower crane parts, in its publication "Code of Practice for Safe Use of Tower Cranes" of in the Hong Kong Occupational Safety and Health Branch of the Labour Department:

"7.1 Identification

7.1.1 The crane should have a permanent durable plate bearing the manufacturer's name, machine model, serial number, year of manufacture and weight of the unit for identification purpose.

7.1.2 Every major structural, electrical and mechanical component of the machine should have a permanent durable plate bearing the manufacturers' name, machine model number, serial number, year of original sale by the manufacturer and weight of the unit. Besides, identification numbers should be clearly marked on all basic removable components and attachments of the machine (such as counterweights etc.) to show that they belong to that machine. It is important that these components should be used only on that machine or identical models or equipment for which they were specifically intended by the manufacturer."

Singapore has the following requirements regarding the identification and numbering of tower crane parts explained in "Procedures for the Type Approval of Tower Crane" Rev. 1-04 published by the Ministry of Manpower. For each individual tower crane the owner must supply the following:

***"LIST OF COMPONENTS**:*

1. *This list may be used by an inspector to verify the components installed on the tower crane and the configuration(s) in which the tower crane may be installed.*
2. *The list shall include the identification / part / serial number of all components used for the crane for all possible combination of tower masts, jibs and all other components that are or will be used in Singapore. The components shall include but not limited to the following:*
   - *a. Undercarriage (including fixing angles)*
   - *b. Tower Mast Section*
   - *c. Climbing Equipment*
   - *d. Slewing Platform or Turntable*
   - *e. Tower Head (Cathead)*
   - *f. Counterjib (including stay rods)*
   - *g. Main Jib (including stay rods)*
   - *h. Winches / Motor*
   - *i. Braking Mechanism*
   - *j. Rope / Trolley Pulleys*
   - *k. Specifications of Wire*
   - *l. Accessories that affect the structural and integrity of the crane during operation*
3. *The component list shall also include drawings corresponding to the components listed above.*
4. *Applicant shall submit the component list in write-once media "*

New Zealand requires tower crane components to be marked, which is verified during inspections:

"Part 10: Tower cranes

10.2 Additional requirements

In addition to the requirements in part 10.1 and part 3: Operational requirements for controllers, the following are also required: (6) Inspection of new and existing tower cranes is to be in four distinct parts as follows:

Part 1: An inspection by an equipment inspector prior to erection together with inspection of any repairs found necessary. Inspections will cover (but are not limited to):

(d) All parts to ensure they are marked for identification purposes. "

C.10.4 Recommendation C-22: Data Recorder - "Black Box" (Further Study)

Based upon further study, DOB should consider the use of data recording devices that will provide critical information regarding the operation of cranes within the jurisdiction.

C.10.4.1 Description

A data recorder or "black box" collects data from sensors (e. g. load indicator, limit switches, position of operator controls etc.) and stores them together with a time and date stamp. The stored data can then be read-out and analyzed outside of the crane (e.g., on a Personal Computer). The data is normally used for maintenance purposes, collect statistical data about machine performance, accident investigation / prevention and monitoring crane operations.

For cranes, the use of data recorders outside of the field of crane maintenance is relatively new. However, the technology has evolved to a point that the potential for general purpose data recorders (as are commonly used on other types of machines) are a practical reality.

The primary uses for construction cranes that warrant further study are:

- Collect and store operational data to establish the number of "stress cycles" a crane accumulates. This information would typically be used to determine the remaining fatigue life of critical load bearing components.
- Collect and store crane overload or shock load events. This information could be used to trigger a special inspection of the crane.
- Collect and store operational data that allows the reconstruction of the crane movements and loads that precede an accident. This reconstruction can be based on two groups of technologies: data recorders ("black box") and video taken by cameras positioned on the crane.

C.10.4.2 Recommendation Approach

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions:

- Require a device to be installed that counts and records stress cycles.
- Require the installation of devices that record events, where the crane was overloaded (load moment or line pull) and records such events together with the date and time of the event. If a crane is overloaded, it should be inspected before operation recommences.
- Installing data recorders that record crane movements, operator inputs and video taping crane operations are also possible additions to such a system.

Require a device to be installed that counts and records stress cycles for all tower and large mobile cranes.

Fatigue is a primary design criterion for cranes. Typical fatigue designs provide for decades of service. However, there are currently a number of cranes operating in NYC that are over 30 years of age, and which may be approaching the fatigue limits of their design. For these cranes, regular inspections are the default defense against fatigue failures, since there is no reliable way in which to "back calculate" how many stress cycles the cranes have been exposed to (see C-14, Older Equipment).

For new cranes a data recorder that maintains a running tally of stress cycles would eliminate much of this guess work. This data would need to be incorporated into the component tracking system.

Most modern large cranes are controlled by a PLC (programmable logic controller) that reads inputs from sensors and operator inputs, evaluates these inputs and then actuates drives and other outputs accordingly. Some crane PLCs already include data recorders for maintenance purposes or include a modular PLC system that is designed to be used with a data recording device.

The Building code RS19-2 requires a load indicator for some mobile cranes, so these cranes normally have a load cell already installed. For all tower cranes a maximum load indicator is required, which is often realized by the installation of a load cell.

Load indicators and recording devices supplied by manufacturers vary significantly and most may require modification to serve the purpose of tracking stress cycles. Provision of suitable data recording equipment could be made a part of the Approved Manufacturer process. Aftermarket data recorders are also available as an alternative to manufacturer installed systems.

Require the installation of devices that record events, where the crane was overloaded (load moment or line pull) and records such events together with the date and time of the event. If a crane is overloaded, it should be inspected before operation recommences.

When a crane is overloaded, load bearing components of its structure (e.g. boom, tower, and jib) or of the hoisting apparatus (e.g. wire ropes, shafts of hoisting winches) can be overstressed. These components can become deformed, bent, or cracked. In addition the structure can become misaligned putting additional stresses on the surrounding parts.

In an extreme case, the deformed / cracked part fails catastrophically when it is overstressed. In other cases, the damage caused by the overstressing is not that apparent but components are weakened and can possibly fail at a later time. Therefore, a thorough inspection of the crane is needed after such an event.

A crane can be overloaded for several reasons. While load limiting device help protect the crane, there are instances that they have limited affect, such as:

- The operator tries intentionally or unintentionally to lift a load, that is too heavy for the crane. This situation is in most cases covered by a load limiting device on modern cranes. These devices in most cases act quickly enough and shut down the hoists before any structural damage happens.
- The crane is shock loaded for example by pulling loads out of upper stories of buildings, or on demolition jobs where a container is filled with debris. Load limiters do not protect a crane from the acceleration forces or overloading the crane in these situations.
- The load gets caught or entangles in a collision with another object during hoisting. While a load limiter can give some protection in this situation, the load could already have been accelerated to a speed that causes damage to the crane even so the hoist shuts off.

The occurrence of an overload or shock load situation should be noted in the crane maintenance and inspection log. Further, the results of the special inspection should remain with the crane in its maintenance file.

DOB requires tower and mobile cranes with combined booms exceeding 150’ have at least a load indicator installed. Many of these indicators or PLCs have output connections for warning lights and/or acoustical devices that could be used to trigger a recording device. Most modern cranes are PLC controlled and include a load moment indicator. These could be programmed to either record overloading events or switch an output in case of an overload, that then can trigger a recording device.

If the overload recorder is tamper-proof, it could be used during an accident investigation to indicate if the crane was overloaded at the time of the accident.

Installing data recorders that record crane movements, operator inputs and videotaping crane operations are also possible additions to such a system.

The data recorder would monitor crane movements and operator input. In some PLC controlled cranes, most inputs needed for such a recording are already available in the crane PLC as inputs. The PLC program would have to be adapted to write this data to a recording device.

This use of data recording technology is closest in concept to the “black box” used in aviation. It provides operational data that could be used to identify actions preceding an accident.

A review of DOB cranes and derricks accident files identified two particular accidents for which witnesses show little cooperation or have difficulties recalling the string of events that led to an accident. The data recording system (and potentially augmented with video recording) would provide a more reliable accounting of events.

C.10.4.3 Additional HRCO Data

The HRCO team did not find any jurisdictions that require the use of data recording devices on cranes. However, several require load limiting devices and if paired with a data recording device, a jurisdiction would know if an overload situation occurred.

The C-DAC document (proposed new OSHA regulation) for construction cranes requires load measuring devices for newer cranes in §1926.1416

"§ 1926.1416 Operational aids.

(4) Load weighing and similar devices. Equipment (other than derricks) manufactured after March 29, 2003 with a rated capacity over 6,000 pounds shall have at least one of the following: load weighing device, load moment (or rated capacity) indicator, or load moment (or rated capacity) limiter."

British Columbia, Canada requires an inspection of a crane aftershock loading:

"14.16.1 Certification following misadventure

(1) In this section, "misadventure" means
- (a) A contact with a high voltage electrical source,
- (b) A shock load,
- (c) A loss of a load,
- (d) A brake failure,
- (e) A collision or upset, or
- (f) Any other circumstance that may impair the safe operation of the crane or hoist.

(2) If a crane or hoist has been subject to a misadventure, it must be removed from service until a professional engineer has:
- (a) Supervised an inspection of, and supervised any necessary repairs to, the equipment, and
- (b) Certified the equipment as safe for use at the manufacturer's rated capacity for the equipment or as provided by section 14.16 if the manufacturer's rated capacity is not available.

[Enacted by B.C. Reg. 320/2007, effective February 1, 2008]"

Internationally, data recorders are required for large commercial aircraft ("black box"), and passenger vessels and non-passenger vessels of more than 3000 gross-tons built after 2002. A Voyage Data Recorder (VDR) collects data including GPS position, hull stresses, bridge audio, weather measurements and others in the maritime industry.

Europe requires all larger commercial trucks crossing borders carry a data recorder that collects speed measurements and driving times for the last 24 hours per driver.

C.10.5 Hoist Recommendation H-6: Off-site Controls (Further Study)

Introduce and implement an Off-site Hoist Equipment Control Program to check that the equipment is adequate for the intended use.

C.10.5.1 Description

There is no has no current requirement, or standardized practice in NYC for contractors to assure that the physical equipment being installed, whether it be for personnel, material, or personnel and material hoist structures, is in a serviceable condition and does not have damage, deterioration and or wear that would unacceptably compromise its load carrying capacity.

Tracking of off-site controls varies among suppliers. Controls vary from visual inspection of equipment and assembled mechanical components to UT testing with labeling and visual inspection of disassembled mechanical components. Control systems are currently self regulated and maintained by the individual suppliers.

The HRCO visited storage sites of seven hoist equipment suppliers. Observations from these visits are summarized below.

Supplier 1

Supplier1 carries two hoist makes. At the time of inspection they only had 2 single hoists in the yard, all other equipment was out on rental.

They do not have a formal in-place quality control process for either mast sections or cars, all equipment is fairly new. Mast sections are fabricated by a local supplier. Their maintenance facility does not appear to be equipped to perform major car or mast repair work.

Supplier's equipment inspection consists of visually inspecting mast sections and car framing prior to shipping. They do not have the ability to perform mock installation of the car and drop testing it.

By visual inspection it appeared that all the mast sections were either new or nearly new. Of all the mast sections measured (UT) there were no observable section loss.

Supplier 2

Supplier 2 operates mostly two makes of hoists with a limited amount of equipment from two other manufacturers. They own approximately 50% more equipment then the next largest supplier visited and appear to be well organized. Their maintenance facility regularly performs QC work; when equipment is returned the masts are inspected for damage and stacked. Cars are disassembled and inspected internally. All gearboxes and motors are internally inspected and reworked as required.

When a job is ordered mast sections are removed from storage and inspected for section loss (via UT), oblong tube sections, weld cracking, and squareness. Sections exhibiting more then 25% section loss are rejected. Rejected sections are marked and removed. Cars are mock installed and tested for function and drop tested.

Before any cars of one specific manufacturer are sent to service the floor plates are replaced with heavier gage diamond plate, they're completely rewired electrically (OEM wiring not UL Rated), and all the gears are replaced with German made products.

They have built some cars from scratch, designed by a professional engineer. They perform all their own controller design and do all their own wiring in shop.

Mast inventory age range from 10 to 20 year, all UT measurements fell within their 25% criteria except for a few mast sections that were already marked and stacked in the un-serviceable stock.

Supplier 3

Supplier 3 operates hoists from mostly one manufacturer. They have no formal QA plan. When equipment returns from rental a visual inspection is performed for damaged product. That equipment is then repaired. All sections are then painted. The yard lacks suitable facilities to perform car maintenance. Outgoing equipment receives no performance tests, there is no yard mast to perform mock installation for performance testing or drop tests.

By inspection it is estimated the mast inventory is in the 20 – 30 year age range and much of it exhibited appreciable section loss due to external tube wear and internal corrosion. All equipment is stored outside and unsheltered.

Supplier 4

Supplier 4 operates mostly hoists from mostly one manufacturer with a limited number from a second manufacturer. Equipment returning from the field is inspected visually for damage. Items requiring repair are segregated into a repair stock pile. The cars are brought in to the maintenance facility and repaired as required. Car modifications are performed in shop, as well as mast section repairs.

Mast sections not pulled for repair are UT tested and painted. Units that exhibit wall thickness values that exceed 25% section-loss fail the UT test are marked and then added to the repair stock. In the shop the mast sections that failed for thin tube walls are repaired by cutting the tubes in half longitudinally and then welding in a square tube with 1/4" wall. They claim this is an engineered repair and that they have a sealed repair plan from their engineer. However, from observation, this repair does not address the remaining half of the tube which is also the portion of tube where all of the web members terminate. Shop personnel knew little about weld qualifications or about the material designations they were welding together, no pre-heat or post-heat treatments were performed.

When an order goes out the equipment is assembled and visually inspected and is then painted. Currently no mock installation is done so functional tests and shop drop tests are not performed. However, they have just recently constructed a yard tower for this purpose and will start mock installations as soon as it's completed.

Supplier 5

Supplier 5 predominantly owns and operates hoists from one manufacturer, with a small number of hoists from a second manufacturer. They have a very large inventory, which consists of wide range of ages, from 3-30 years old. Much of the older equipment is unserviceable and is marked and stacked in a rejected pile. They operate a formal Quality Control program.

Equipment returning from the field is visually inspected. All damaged items are removed for repair or sent to the unserviceable stockpile. Cars are brought into the shop and inspected with repairs made as required.

Car gears and motors are disassembled for inspection. Pinion gears and brakes will be replaced as necessary but gearboxes are not reworked. Bad gearboxes will be replaced. Limit switches and wiring is done in-shop.

When a job is being assembled for shipping, mast sections are UT inspected for wall thickness in accordance with manufacturer criteria. Passing sections are tagged with an inventory number and then painted (if not galvanized). The facility is equipped with a yard tower where all outgoing cars are mock installed, performance tested and drop tested.

By measurement (via UT) none of their serviceable mast stock exceeded the manufacturer limits. Other sections measured in the un-serviceable stock exhibited considerable section loss.

Supplier 6

Supplier 6 solely operates hoists from one manufacturer. They maintain a large amount of equipment and are well organized. Their facility is equipped to perform any necessary operation. They build all of their own cars and towers in-house.

Their in-shop manufacturing is tightly controlled. They use qualified welds by certified welders, material certifications are required for all bought materials; formal procedures are in place for essentially every process performed. Manufactured equipment is given a serial number and is tracked through its life.

For returning equipment from the field, the equipment is visually inspected for damage. Damaged equipment is removed from service and the remainder is checked for square-ness, measured for section loss (via UT) and for rack wear. Data is recorded in the parts file. Cars are taken into the maintenance department where they are inspected and repaired as required. Motors as well as the gearboxes are inspected by a motor contractor.

Out-going orders are assembled and inspected visually as well as UT tested, then painted and tagged with a part No. if not numbered already. A mock installation is performed on all cars for performance and drop tests.

None of their serviceable mast stock is more then 5 years old and as such all UT measurements performed fell within acceptable criteria, as established by their own standards. They are remanufacturing masts from a manufacturer that has long been out of business.

Supplier 7

Supplier 7 is operates primarily three type of hoists. They don't have many units and what they have is fairly new. Although they are reasonably organized they do not have a formal QC program that they follow. For the most part their QA program consists of visual inspections with regular maintenance.

All tube wall-thickness measurements were within acceptable range as established by their mast supplier. Their complete mast stock is for the most part 2-3 years old and galvanized.

HRCO UT Data

The HRCO conducted ultrasonic testing (UT) at each of the above sites. The purpose of the UT testing was to measure the wall thickness of hoist tower sections. These measurements were correlated with equipment age, based on owner records. Figure C.10.21 shows the section loss as a function of the age of the section. The individual data points show the average percentage section loss for mast sections that were approximately 2, 3, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 and 35 years of age. Figure C.10.22 shows the same data as figure one, but includes the individual measurements that yield the averages. For the 10-year old masts, there were some sections that were actually thicker than the nominal specified thickness (thus the "negative" loss). What is important in Figure 2 is the variability of the individual measurements; even 10-year old masts have the potential for significant section loss.

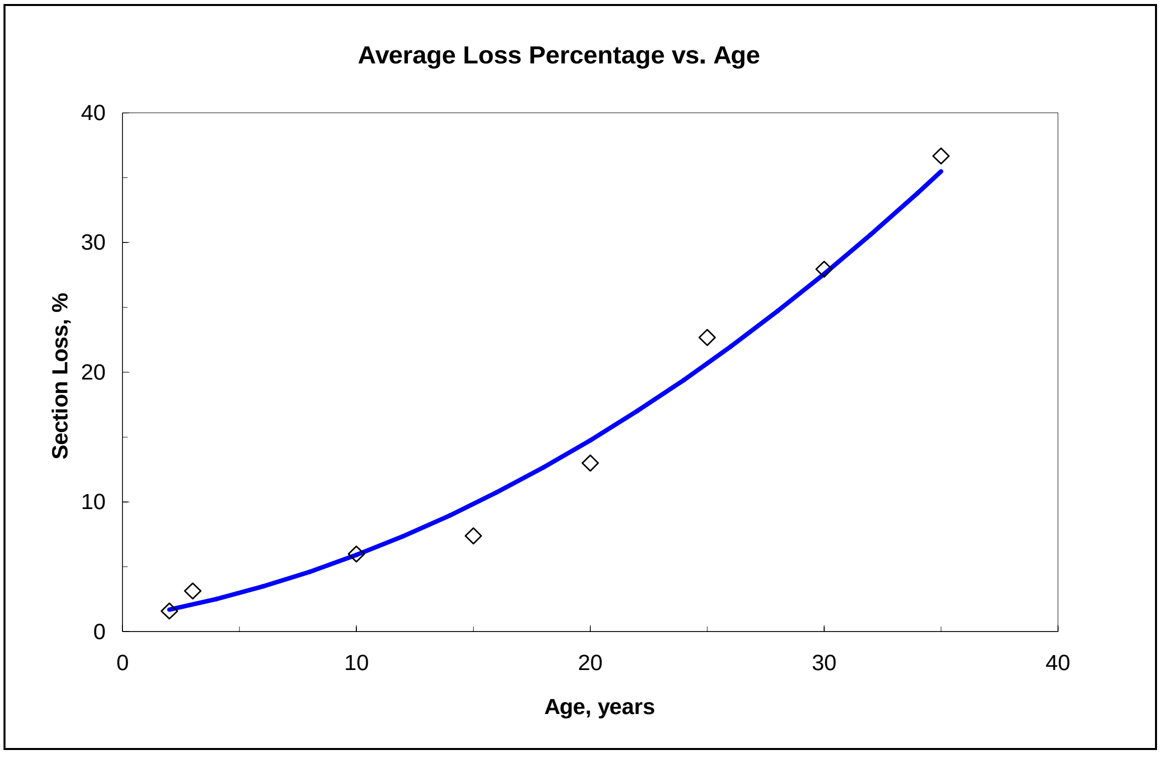


Figure D.10.21: Average Section Loss

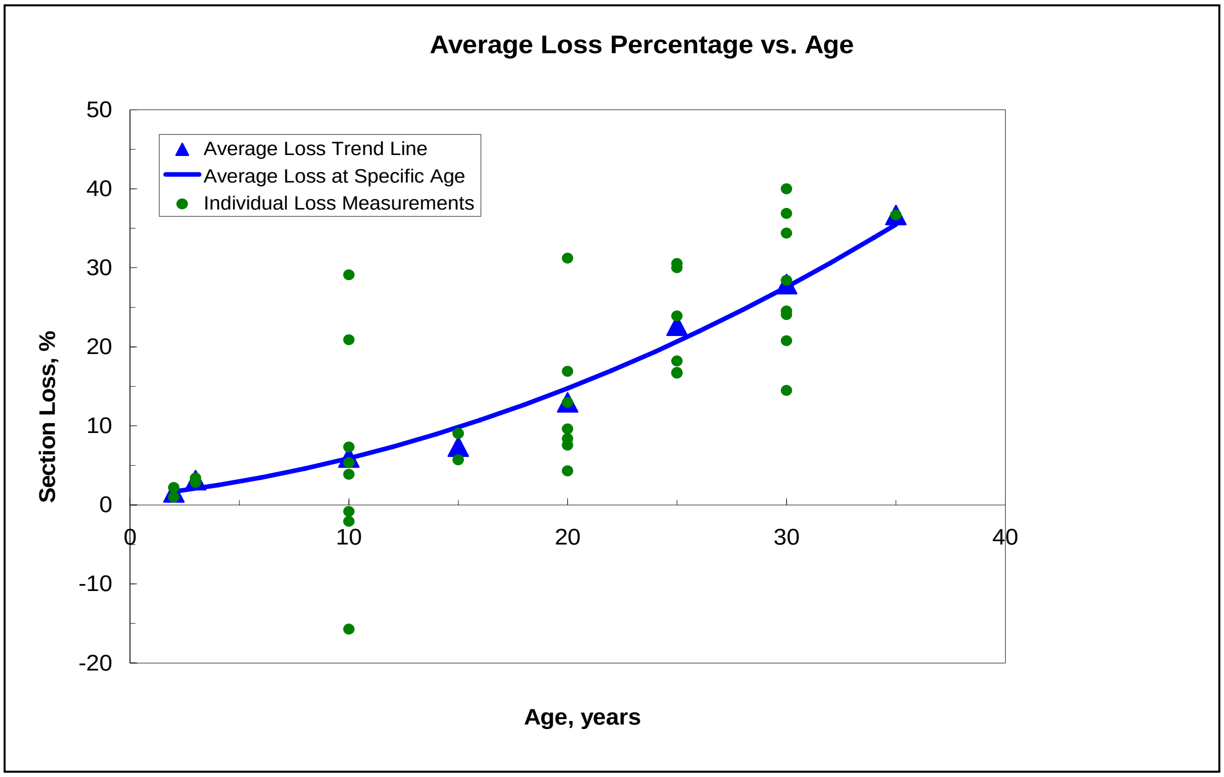


Figure C.10.22: Average and Actual Section Loss

C.10.5.2 Recommendation Approach

Require contractors supplying hoist equipment to test and certify the mast sections, car chassis, drive train, car enclosures, building-tie systems, and control systems meet or exceed all applicable requirements prior to delivery.

Pass/Fail criteria for material degradation and damaged equipment should be established either by the manufacturer or by an engineer experienced in personnel hoists. Requirements for the "Testing and Certification of Equipment (TCE)" should be established by DOB. Results of the performed tests and any awarded certifications should be kept in the On-site Logbook for DOB examination at each respective site for each peace of equipment.

Certification of components should be based on areas defined by the manufacturer. At a minimum, potential areas of certification would include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Mast wall thickness (mast sections should be individually identified).
- Mast tower square-ness
- Rack wear and attachment to tower section.

- Deformation control of mast frame, spigots and counterweight guides.
- Car frame deterioration and deformation potentially critical to the structure
- Pinion wear
- Car cage deterioration and deformation
- Tie wall thickness
- Tie connection condition (i.e. hole elongation, pin wear)

C.10.5.3 Additional HRCO Observations

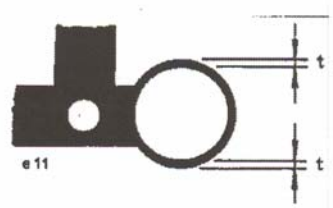
Most manufacturers provide limiting mast section wall thickness thresholds for use (typically about 25% of the original material) and provide limitations for varying states of deterioration as reflected in the manufacturer excerpt below.

Wearing of mast tubes

Mast tubes

Checking of wear and corrosion on mast sections is carried out by means of Alimak testing equipment for ultrasonic sounding, Part No. 3001 991-301. The bottom mast section is thoroughly checked.

New mast tubes t mm (inches)	Max. worn out mast tubes t mm (inches)
4.2 (.165 in.)	3.1 (.122 in.)
6.3 (.248 in.)	4.7 (.185 in.)
8.0 (.315 in.)	6.0 (.236 in.)
	approx. 25% reduction of wall thickness



Note that wear/corrosion on the mast sections have an effect on max. overhang (free top) and max. allowed mast height as follows:

Reduction of original wall thickness in %	Reduction of overhang of the hoist mast in %	Reduction of mast height in %
10%	15%	20%
15%	20%	30%
20%	20%	40%
25%	25%	50%
more than 25%	Mast section should be scrapped	

Figure D.10.23: Manufacturer Guidance on Mast Section Thickness.

ANSI also provides some guidance regarding safe maintenance of equipment:

ANSI A10.4-2007 Personnel Hoists

27. **Maintenance** Hoists, hoistways, enclosures and power supplies shall be maintained by the user in accordance with manufacturer recommendations and this standard.

27.1 **Lubrication**. All parts of the machinery and equipment that require lubrication shall be lubricated by the user at regular intervals as recommended by manufacturer. A log shall be maintained at the installation site of the dates lubrication is performed and have it available for inspection.

27.2 **Making Safety Devices Inoperative**. No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protection device inoperative except when necessary during tests, inspections and maintenance.

27.3 **Replacements**. Where a listed/certified device or component is replaced, it shall be subject to the applicable engineering or type test as specified in the requirements of CAN/CSA B44.1 ANSI/ASME A17.5. The device or replacement component shall be labeled by the certifying organization. For a replacement device or component to be used it must be included in the original manufacturer’s directions or specifications listed as an acceptable replacement part or equivalent.

ANSI A10.5-2007 Material Only Hoists

15.1 **Capacity**. Hoisting machines shall be designed, installed and maintained to raise and lower vertically the rated load plus the weight of equipment and ropes. Load ratings provided by the hoist manufacture are to be clearly posted on the hoist machine.

C.10.6 Hoist Recommendation H-7: On-Site Log Book

Require that all site locations maintain an On-Site Hoist Equipment Log to standardize record keeping of all pertinent data.

C.10.6.1 Description

Only 18% of sites visited maintained any kind of maintenance or inspection record. Of these 16, 13 of them were from three General Contractors that require their Site-Safety Coordinators to maintain logs. The remaining 82% of sites visited have no on-site history of maintenance efforts, repair work, or inspection results.

In most cases the general contractors reported that they were completely unaware of regulatory requirements for hoisting equipment or when and how often the hoist contractors performed maintenance or made repairs. The only proof or record of inspection is the actual operation certificate posted in the cars.

Maintenance records in the form of work tickets are typically the only record of maintenance available and are usually maintained off-site by the hoist contractor. Inspection results, which are typically nothing more then Drop Test verification, are forwarded to DOB.

Currently NYC DOB does not have or enforce specific requirements for maintaining an On-Site Hoist Equipment Log Book.

OSHA requires that for inspection and test reports; “The employer shall prepare a certification record which includes the date the inspection and test of all functions and safety devices was performed; the signature of the person who performed the inspection and test; and a serial number, or other identifier, for the hoist that was inspected and tested. The most recent certification record shall be maintained on file.” However the location of the file, as well as the responsible party, is not specified.

OSHA does not give specific requirements for a “Log Book”.

ANSI A10.4 for Personnel Hoist equipment does give specific requirements for an inspection and maintenance activity log, reference A10.4, 26.8, Hoist Operation Log: “An inspection and maintenance activity log shall be maintained by the hoist operator or designated competent person. The log shall document acceptance, daily, and periodic inspections in accordance with the manufacturer’s specifications. It shall also contain a record of all maintenance activities, a list of component replacements and associated test results. The log shall be available to hoist personnel and authority having jurisdiction.”

- Log Shall include at a minimum, records concerning the following activities;

1. All records shall include the date, and work or test done the name of the person who performed the inspection, test, and /or work, the serial number or other identifier of the hoist.

2. Description of erection and jumping activities.

3. Description of maintenance tasks performed.

4. Description of examinations, test, adjustments, repairs, and replacements.

5. Description of all trouble calls or incidences that are reported to hoist personnel by any means, including correction action taken.

- No elevator shall be in operation without a current log on site. The log shall be available for inspection by the governing authority.

Definitions

1. 3.37 – Log – A record for each day of operation or maintenance on an installation in which the user records anything notable that has or could effect the safe operation of the equipment. The log should include a checklist for operation, maintenance, lubrication and inspection from the equipment manufacturer of form others authorized to make such a list. A record of any testing by authorities, and the results, shall also be recorded in this log. This log shall be available to the governing authorities for the duration of the installation and it shall be given to the owner of the equipment at the completion of the installation.

2. 3.39 – Maintenance – This is the normal lubrication, adjusting, tightening, cleaning, protection and inspecting of the hoist, hoist-ways, appendices and their power supplies. It is not repair, replacement or restoration or worn, damaged, or broken parts, components, or accessories (repair is not maintenance)

3. 3.49 – Repair –The replacement or restoration of worn, damaged or broken parts, components or accessories. (repair is not maintenance or alterations)

ANSI A10.5, Material-Only Hoist does not give specific log book requirements but does provide specific guide lines for Maintenance and Installation records; refer to following section

- A10.5, 23, Maintenance and Installation records

- 23.1 - Maintenance of Records. Maintenance records shall document compliance with this code. The owner of the equipment shall maintain records on the following articles and activities:
  - Description of maintenance tasks performed and date
  - Description of dates of examinations, test, inspections, adjustments, repairs, and replacements.
- 23.2 – Installation records. Installation records shall document:
  - Data of initial operation of the hoists
  - The qualified personnel responsible for installation required in section 6.10
  - 6.10 – Supervision of Erection and Dismantling. Hoist towers shall be erected and dismantled only by qualified personnel under the direct supervision of a competent person.
  - The records of the car arresting device test as required by Section 10.9.5
  - 10.9.5 – Car arresting devices shall be tested in accordance with manufacture's guidelines.
  - A certification by a Professional Engineer for compliance with this standard.
- 23.3 – Records Availability. All records shall be available to authorized personnel on site.
- 23.4 – Qualified Personnel. Qualified personnel shall perform all maintenance, repairs, and replacements.

C.10.6.2 Recommendation Approach

NYC DOB to require that all site locations shall maintain an "On-Site Hoist Equipment Log Book" for all hoisting equipment, which shall include information pertaining to their specific supporting structures, and common platform/back-structures.

The log book should be maintained by the General Contractor in an on-site location, but the information should be supplied and furnished by the hoisting contractor. Each equipment Log Book should contain at a minimum:

1. All Items specified in ANSI 10.4,
2. Copy of permitted erection drawings showing all approval stamps (e.g. Hoist Engineer, Building Engineer, DOB)

3. Accurate and Current Record of all Maintenance and repairs made.

4. Electrical schematic drawings

5. Manufacturers Maintenance requirements

6. Quality Certifications for all fracture critical equipment installed (e.g., mast sections, building ties, car chassis, drive and brake pinion gears, etc).

C.11 DEPARTMENT OF BUILDINGS OPERATIONS

C.11.1 Description

The HRCO crane team reviewed the Cranes and Derricks Unit (C&D) for its internal policies and procedures. This section provides various means that DOB may use to strengthen the unit and, in turn, increase its effectiveness and efficiency. DOB has already taken proactive steps to train their inspectors and examiners. To build on this the HRCO crane team proposes that DOB hire inspectors that possess a minimum level of experience and send them to manufacturers for crane make and model specific training. This will increase the experience base of the unit and will increase its effectiveness as a Unit.

The Crane and Derricks Unit investigates all incidents and accidents that involve a crane. The Accident Investigation recommendation serves to augment the procedures already in place to improve investigation documentation. This, in turn, will provide better data from which to analyze regulatory effectiveness and accident trends.

An organization should have a process in place whereby it monitors itself and adjusts to accommodate changes in demands. The C&D Unit is no exception. Therefore, the HRCO crane team proposes a procedure for evaluation that can also include participation from industry groups.

A hoist recommendation is provided to formalize the regulatory framework for hoist equipment.

C.11.2 Recommendation C-11: Inspector and Examiner Training

Assess the various skill sets of the inspectors and plan examiners of the Department of Buildings and provide them the necessary training and tools to complete their tasks effectively and efficiently.

C.11.2.1 Description

The Crane and Derrick (C&D) Division must have properly trained and experienced inspectors and plan examiners. In addition, the C&D Division must have the necessary tools to perform their regulatory duties efficiently.

The inspection team should have the abilities to inspect numerous makes and models of cranes that range from the boom truck to the large mobile cranes as well as tower and crawler cranes. This is a very diverse group of machines with varying complexities and capacities.

Plan examiners must have basic understanding of mechanical, structural and civil engineering practices, addressing submittals for both tower and mobile cranes.

C.11.2.2 Recommendation Approach

The HRCO team interviewed all of the inspectors as of 2/28/09 (various topics for each) and plan examiners regarding their experience levels and their individual approach to the assigned tasks. Some of the inspectors and plan examiners require additional training; both classroom and specific crane make and model. Presently, DOB retained a national crane training company to provide classroom instruction. The inspectors provided mixed opinions regarding the value of these courses.

Hire inspectors with experience similar to the levels noted in the Qualified Inspector recommendation (C-R-03).

The minimum experience requirements for a Crane and Derrick inspector should include:

- At least 3 years experience in the repair and inspection of the particular type of crane as a mechanic responsible for individual repair jobs (excludes mechanics-helper, oiler, etc.) within the last 5 years, OR
- At least 10 years (5,000 hours) experience as a crane operator, OR
- A mechanical engineering degree with at least 2 years experience in the design, repair or inspection of cranes.

If the current inspectors do not have the requisite experience, the HRCO team recommends that DOB continue to seek candidates that have such experience and when a new inspector is hired transfer the less experienced inspector to another division that does not have such requirements.

The DOB Crane & Derrick Unit (C&D) presently relies on previous experience of inspectors augmented by classroom instruction from an outside vendor. C&D also pairs new inspectors with experienced ones for on the job training. They require the pairing for 170 inspections before an inspector is assigned to work independently.

The HRCO went to numerous sites with the C&D inspectors. The experience and knowledge ranged widely.

Once hired, DOB should develop a training program to continually train the inspectors (see C-R-19 self auditing).

This program should include both class room, on the job and specific crane training courses. DOB should use two to three training firms for the classroom instruction as this will provide the inspectors with different perspectives regarding the theoretical basis of cranes as well as the current standards. There are numerous companies that offer this type of training.

The on-the-job training or practical training can be accomplished by having the supervisors work with the newer and less experienced inspectors with the goal to transfer the knowledge to the entire staff. Such training sessions should be scheduled for several times each month. This will transfer the knowledge as well as the supervisor can maintain their activities in the field.

The third prong to the effective training of the inspectors should include crane model specific courses. During the Manufacturers' meeting, many of them offer make and model specific training for their distributors and service teams. They indicated that they would extend these courses to DOB inspectors. The HRCO crane team believes this type of training is essential for the inspectors to effectively perform their duties.

Presently, there are seven (7) manufacturers that account for approximately 75% of the cranes (mobile and tower) with current certificates of operations (see C-R-07 approved manufacturer). These should be ones that DOB attends first.

Structure the plan examiner staff to include senior and junior examiners.

The senior examiners should be Professional Engineers with at least five years experience in the design of structures that includes crane layout and design. The junior examiner could be a direct hire from a local engineering program, and it would be incumbent upon the senior examiner to train and supervise their work.

Both the senior and junior examiners should spend at least their first three months inspecting cranes with a DOB inspection team. This experience will provide the examiners a field view of the installation issues and crane types operating in the jurisdiction. In addition, the examiners should be required to visit each crane site that will have a tower or large mobile crane on site for a period longer than four (4) months.

DOB should ensure that the inspectors and examiners have the proper tools.

Inspectors should have a basic set of inspection tools to perform their assigned tasks. The proposed tools are: a safety harness that would be used for in service boom inspections and tie-in installation and dismantling inspections (typically the safety barriers have been removed); wind anemometer (check wind speed); hammer (check for loose bolts); small wire brush (remove rust to inspect potential corrosion issues); calipers; sheave gauges and binoculars

The plan examiners should have analysis programs such as RISA to evaluate design calculations.

The Crane and Derrick Division should have certain publications as reference sources for the inspectors and examiners.

The HRCO recommends that DOB invest in the following publications and start a library that the inspectors and examiners have access. This could be a physical location or a separate directory on DOB servers (this may be more costly due to licensing issues).

American Society of Mechanical Engineers (the primary ones are the following)

B30.3 – 2004 – Construction Tower Cranes
B30.4 – 2003 – Portal, Tower, and Pedestal Cranes
B30.5 – 2007 – Mobile and Locomotive Cranes
B30.6 – 2003 – Derricks
B30.9 – 2006 – Slings
B30.10 – 2005 – Hooks
B30.20 – 2006 – Below-the-Hook Lifting Devices
B30.22 – 2005 – Articulating Boom Cranes
B30.26 – 2004 – Rigging Hardware

International Organization for Standardization (below is a sample of the available publications)

ISO 8686-2:2004 - Design principles for loads and load combinations -- Part 2: Mobile cranes
ISO 23815-1:2007 - Maintenance -- Part 1: General
ISO 14518:2005 - Requirements for test loads
ISO 9927-3:2005 - Inspections -- Part 3: Tower cranes
ISO/TR 27245:2007 - Tower cranes -- International Standards for design, manufacture, use and maintenance requirements and recommendations.
ISO/TR 12480-3:2005 - Safe use -- Part 3: Tower cranes
ISO/TR 19961:2005 - Safety code on mobile cranes
ISO 9927-1:2009 - Inspections -- Part 1: General
ISO 12478-1:1997 - Maintenance manual -- Part 1: General
ISO 12480-1:1997 - Safe use -- Part 1: General
ISO 20332:2008 – Proof of competency of Steel Structures

American Concrete Institute publication 318-08 (to assist examiners with foundation and tie-in design)

American Welding Society publications

D1.1/D1.1M:2010, Structural Welding Code -- Steel
D1.3M/D1.3:200X, Structural Welding Code – Sheet Steel
D1.6/D1.6M:2007-AMD 1, Structural Welding Code – Stainless Steel
D10.12M/D10.12:200X, Guide for Welding Mild Steel Pipe

DOB should also consider procuring the EN, DIN, FEM and AS standards as a guide to the methods used to design and manufacture cranes.

DOB should monitor the staff size and adjust to the market conditions. In addition, the chief and supervisors should continually assess the paperwork produced and determine if it accomplishes the goals set by the Commissioner and Executive Director.

Based upon the information contained in Table C.11.1 and assuming that DOB implements the recommendations espoused in C-R-17 (Tracking Mobile Cranes) then the current staffing of inspectors is adequate for the current number of inspections. Should DOB wish to increase its presence in the field by increasing the patrols, then the number of inspectors would need to be increased.

The number of plan examiners appears to be adequate for the current volume of examinations. However, the current examiners require more intensive training to be able to perform there functions effectively. Presently, DOB retained the services of an outside professional engineer to complement its staff reviewing various applications for certificate of on-site inspection. The goal should be to eliminate the need for outside assistance and rely solely upon internal examiners.

The reports generated by the inspectors appear to be excessive and the intent of some not accomplishing the DOB mission. For example, the inspection report presently has numerous OSHA items. DOB should determine whether OSHA observations are an appropriate use of the crane inspector’s time.

Quantity	Inspection Type	Estimated time to Complete (hours)*	Inspector Hours Required	Annualized
676	Complaint (complaints etc.)	5	3,380	4,507
12	Incident (incidents, accidents etc.)	8	96	128
328	Audit (safety meetings etc.)	3	984	1,312
572	annual (annuals)	5	2,860	3,813
124	Unassembled (unassembled etc.)	7	868	1,157
169	Assembled (assembled including visuals, load test, on-site, etc.)	8	1,352	1,803
112	Climbing (up, down, and dismantle)	8	896	1,195
213	Re-inspection (annual defect re-inspections, SWO lifts, etc...)	4	852	1,136
46	MR (master rigger)	4	184	245
543	Sweep (sweep, patrols, etc.)	2	1,086	1,448
	Estimated hours required		12,558	16,744
	Estimated number of inspectors (excluding supervisors)			8
* provided by DOB personnel				

Table C.11.1: Summary of DOB Inspections.

The team also met with the inspectors as a group to discuss the department and their respective duties. The primary items observed were: each inspector showed a true willingness to do the best job they can and wants to make NYC safer; the primary experience base rests in three of the ten inspectors; friction existed between the more experienced inspectors and the ones transferred from other divisions (improved since November); their belief that the department requires too much paper work and forms (they believe the department should combine the present requirements into one or two forms and questioned if they have the authority to write citations for OSHA infractions); and, the training courses attended to date had limited value.

C.11.2.3 Additional HRCO Data

The International Organization for Standardization issued a standard in 2009 covering the requirements for inspectors (ISO 23814). Principally, the standard requires each inspector to update his knowledge and skills as required by the crane manufacturer's introduction of new technology. This would require DOB to continually invest in training the inspectors on the newer make and models.

Initiatives recently put in place by DOB include:

INSPECTOR TRAINING:

1. Inspector training courses from Crane Institute:
    - Mobile crane inspector
    - Mobile crane operator
    - Tower crane inspector
    - Managing crane safety
    - Rigging & Hoisting
2. Buildings University developing a standard training curriculum for all C&D inspectors including scheduling for refresher courses
3. Hands-on field training on a mobile crane with plans for additional training on other types of cranes.
4. Development of Inspector training and SOP manual (currently in draft status).

PLAN EXAMINER TRAINING:

1. Extension of the contract for the plan review consultant to provide tower crane review training
2. Finite element analysis software purchase and training provided to senior examiners
3. Plans examiners have started to accompany inspectors into the field to witness activities, for example load tests on tower cranes
4. Examiners now attending inspector training courses offered by the crane institute, see item #1 above for course listing.
5. Examiners also attending the hands-on field training with the inspectors, see item #3 above for details.

C.11.3 Recommendation C-18: Accident Investigation

The Crane and Derrick Division should augment and audit its incident/accident reporting procedure to confirm each file contains the required information and the inspectors' investigation is organized and thorough.

C.11.3.1 Description

The Crane and Derrick division focuses on accident prevention (e. g. inspections, checking designs, licensing of operators etc.). However, they are called upon to respond to and investigate crane related construction incidents and accidents. This recommendation covers the initial response (first hours), minimizing damage and collecting evidence and witness statements.

The HRCO reviewed 10 accident/incident files for content and completeness. In summary, the review identified a lack of consistency, organization and detail in the files.

C.11.3.2 Recommendation Approach

Implementation of this recommendation should include the following actions:

- Require the lead inspector be on site to provide a narration of events including possible causes of the incident and fully complete the "Accident Description" section of the appropriate form.
- The inspector's supervisor would sign the original investigation form and provide an update to the file at the completion of the investigation or, at a minimum, three (3) months after the date of the accident.
- Equipment and/or other items should not be moved after an incident happens except when needed to rescue people, avert further damage or avert a possible imminent danger.
- At least one photograph or a series of overlapping photographs of an accident scene must show the accident scene and its surroundings. There must be a photograph or series of photographs showing the vehicles/cranes involved in the accident including their position.
- DOB inspectors should receive incident/accident training.

According to interviews with the inspectors and the chief of the Unit, under current operations the inspector should typically perform the following when investigating an accident:

- Review the situation and report to his supervisor to decide, if additional personnel is needed.

- Stop operation on the accident site and bring equipment in a secure position to avoid further damages, risks, and the removal or alteration of equipment involved in the incident/accident.
- Inspect and photograph the site and equipment.
- Collect witness statements.
- Write an initial report and/or take notes.
- Issue violations, if warranted.

After returning from the accident site, the inspector discusses his findings with his/her supervisor. An incident/accident file is started to contain copies of forms, reports, witness statements and pictures. The forms used may include:

- "Cranes and Derricks Division Accident Investigation Form" (CD-15)
- "Construction Related Incident" OP-87A or "Non-Construction Related Incident" (OP-87B)

The supervisor and/or the executive director then decides on further steps to be taken, including requirements that the crane owner / user must fulfill prior to resumption of crane activity.

DOB should require the lead inspector on site to provide a narration of events including possible causes of the incident and fully complete the "Accident Description" section of the appropriate form.

It can be difficult to give an account of the accident by just listing damage and the location of items as found. Therefore, inspectors must make assumptions based on their experience in order to provide such a narrative. As such, this section should have a disclaimer explaining that the statement is based on the inspector observations and witness interviews, but could include items that are partially based on the inspector's previous experience and on the probability of events. Additionally, inspectors seldom provide a final summary or complete the "accident description" section.

The inspector's supervisor would sign the original investigation form and provide an update to the file at the completion of the investigation or, at a minimum, three (3) months after the date of the accident.

This update would include brief description of accident, the accident cause and any further steps to be taken (e. g. supervise repair of equipment). If the investigation is on-going, the statement would include a note about the current status (e. g. investigation pending and taken over by [person and department]). For an ongoing investigation, the inspector's supervisor repeats this step every three (3) months until the investigation is closed.

Presently, there is no formal process to close an investigation. Of the ten (10) files reviewed, six (6) did not have a SWO rescind form or, in case of damage to a crane, information concerning its repair. When reviewing accident files, it was difficult to determine whether an investigation was ongoing or closed.

The supervisor rarely (1 out of 10) signed the accident form and did not comment on the inspectors report.

Equipment and/or other items should not be moved after an incident happens except when needed to rescue people, avert further damage or avert a possible imminent danger.

The current regulation only prohibits the removal of damaged hoisting equipment *"from the area of the job site".* In interviews, the inspectors voiced the experience that some personnel on a construction site remove items or alter the scene of an accident before they receive permission to do so by DOB. This has two negative aspects:

- It can destroy or alter evidence, making investigation work difficult (Figure C.11.1). The cause of why the head ache ball hit the operator's cabin could not be definitely determined. The operator continued to lower the boom after the accident. When interviewed, the operator and witnesses could not express to the inspectors what caused the incident.
- Hasty recovery action without proper planning can endanger recovery workers and equipment. In figure C.11.2, there is a worker that is attempting to right the crane by attaching a cable onto an outrigger from a front end loader. This is NOT the proper means to bring the crane back to level ground. It could have caused more damage to the crane and surrounding area.

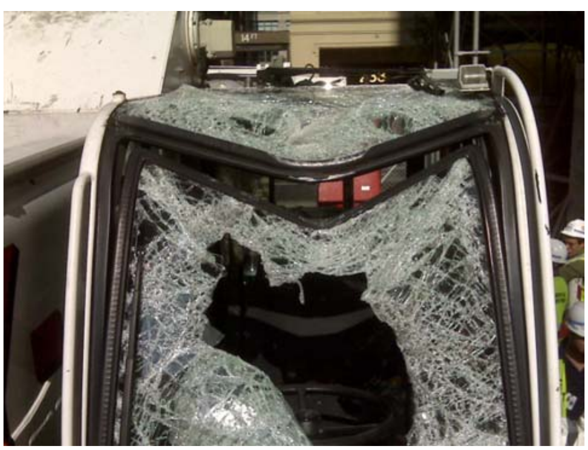


Figure C.11.1: Headache ball into cab

Figure C.11.2: Incorrect action

DOB should provide a witness form that is easier to fill out and helps the witness to organize their thoughts for his/her statement.

The form could be similar to witness forms used in automobile accidents by insurance companies.

All of the witness statements in accident files were written on various types of paper. The DOB form that is part of CD-15 is narrowly spaced so it is hard to fill out by hand.

At least one photograph or a series of overlapping photographs of an accident scene must show the accident scene and its surroundings. There must be a photograph or series of photographs showing the vehicles/cranes involved in the accident including their position.

Some of the photographs contained in accident files show only detailed views of crane parts, failed rigging material etc. This makes it difficult to understand positions of items and their relation to each other for a person that did not visit the accident site.

DOB inspectors should receive incident/accident training.

Understanding the critical aspects of investigating an accident is crucial to developing an adequate file. One should be aware of the proper technique to secure the site and question potential witnesses and the order in which to approach the process. One idea is to use NYC detectives provide such training as well as consultants that have been through the process of forensics and legal processes.

C.11.3.3 Additional HRCO Observations

There are related C&D initiatives in development which parallel procedures in this recommendation. For example, the following general inspection procedures have recently been developed:

1. A Unit specific route sheet was created and is in use to better track C&D inspections.
2. Creation of inspection checklists – currently paper versions being used in the field, electronic versions on handheld computers are in development.
3. Scanning of inspection documentation including:
   - Inspection checklists
   - Inspection reports
   - Violations
   - Stop Work Orders
4. Inspection results tabulated and tracked on a monthly report and in a spreadsheet with links to scanned documents
5. Instituted the use of Borough construction incident forms

C.11.4 Recommendation C-19: DOB Self Auditing

Develop and install a change process whereby the Cranes and Derricks Division of the Department of Buildings monitors itself and makes adjustments as necessary.

C.11.4.1 Description

Organizations should have a process in place whereby they consistently evaluate and monitor themselves. This internal (and sometimes external) process helps each organization to remain relevant and effective on a continual basis. The Cranes and Derricks Unit (C&D) underwent a major restructuring in the past year and must now critically assess its accomplishments and areas that require improvement. This process should be one of continual monitoring and making changes as deemed appropriate.

The department is still in the re-building phase. DOB transferred four (4) inspectors to the C&D in the aftermath of the crane collapses. In addition, DOB transferred the present Executive Director from a special division within DOB.

The department has since hired three new inspectors and one returned to his former unit. As mentioned in the Training Recommendation (C-R-11), a few of the present inspectors require more experience and training to become more effective and efficient in their assigned duties. Incorporating a self monitoring process would help the department determine overall training needs and provide a map of what has been and needs to be provided.

C.11.4.2 Recommendation Approach

To create and implement this process the HRCO proposes the following initial steps:

- Clarify Mission.
- Include lessons learned in the weekly Inspector meetings in a more structured manner.
- Create an internal C&D group with a charter to continually review and adjust department policies and procedures.
- Establish external groups that include engineers, crane owners, users and manufacturers.
- Tie these groups into a continual feedback and communication loops.

Clarify Mission

The Crane and Derricks division should carefully evaluate operations relative to its mission. This would include: identifying the types of equipment that it regulates; differentiating inspections that it conducts as the primary inspector from those that it spot-checks as a policing agent; and, clarifying its role in evaluating equipment and site-specific designs, among a variety of other tasks that they perform.

Include lessons learned in the weekly Inspector meetings in a more structured manner

The inspectors have weekly meeting to discuss a variety of topics mostly concerned with and administrative issues such paper work and scheduling as well as broader DOB issues. The discussions also include sites of interest that the inspectors visited during the week.

These weekly meetings should include a more structured segment regarding lessons learned. Each inspector should be required to share at least one situation that he found interesting and any lessons learned or help required. The Unit Chief would keep track of these items and provide a report to the Executive Director. This will afford the Unit's management an opportunity to notice any trends or unusual occurrences.

In addition to the lessons learned, the inspectors should be encouraged to talk about training areas that they believe would be beneficial to either themselves or the group as a whole. These would also be recorded and reported to the Executive Director.

Should an incident or accident occur during the week, the inspectors should discuss the events and be encouraged to brain storm and discuss possible reasons for this occurrence. The intent for this exercise is to transfer knowledge from the senior inspectors to the junior ones (see C-R-11, DOB training).

The weekly meeting should also be a place to discuss the paperwork demands and a make a genuine effort to monitor and adjust the reporting as deemed necessary by the team. This should probably be done monthly.

Create an internal C&D group with the charter to continually review and adjust department policies and procedures

This group should consist of the division's key management, the executive director, technical director, Chief, the lead supervisor and a different inspector or examiner each meeting.

This group would meet monthly with the intent to discuss the Chief's weekly reports to see if there is a trend and discuss possible ways to avoid them in the future. They should also be the catalyst for change. The group should address the issues that the inspectors bring up in the weekly meetings and provide the

Chief feedback that he can share with the inspectors. This provides a communication loop back to the inspectors.

The Executive Director should assign a person to take the minutes of meeting so there is a record of the items discussed. These minutes of meeting, depending upon their applicability, should be shared with the quarterly industry meeting.

Attendance at these meetings is mandatory for all invitees. The C&D personnel have busy days and assigned multiple responsibilities, but these meetings are a must to effect continual improvements in the department. The meetings should not last longer than two (2) hours.

Establish an external group that includes key industry representatives

Ideally, this group would be fairly small and focused on one or two primary topics per meeting. C&D would provide an agenda prior to the meeting. The industry participants would also have the ability to include items by emailing their request to the Executive Director who would then set the final agenda. He would also notify the requestor as to why or why not the topic is on the agenda.

This committee would be made up of an outside professional engineer, two crane owners, two users, two manufacturers and the internal group mentioned above. The primary function of this group would be to address and try to resolve issues that are affecting the crane industry as they relate to safety of the workers and the public at large. Its function would not be to address operating issues inside the C&D division.

In addition to the quarterly meetings, DOB should have biennial open forums where the industry, in general, is invited to listen to the pending decisions on regulations or topics of interest. During this meeting, the external group would present their previous discussions and seek further input from the broader group. The RS19-2 would be discussed in this meeting.

The C&D division has included the industry in its rulemaking via the crane council. There have been no meetings since the two tower crane failures due to various reasons. However, there have been three industry meetings whereby the HRCO presented their proposed recommendation, with the intent to capture ideas and preferences of the industry.

Tie these groups into a continual communication loop

It would be incumbent upon the internal group to provide feedback to the inspectors from the above meetings. The key to the above is communication between all the stake holders in the C&D division and industry and in turn making New York City safer for its workers and the public.

C.11.5 Recommendation C-16: RS 19-2 Revisions

DOB should revise of RS 19-2 and seek industry comments.

C.11.5.1 Description

DOB uses Reference Standard 19-2 to provide specific requirement where the Code uses general wording. The currently published version is dated September 14, 2006. DOB and the industry were working on a revision when the first tower crane accident. The release of the newer version was not released as DOB decided to re-visit the version and wait for the HRCO team's recommendations.

DOB has been revising the newer version as issues have arisen.

C.11.5.2 Recommendation

The version submitted to the industry should include the HRCO team's recommendations that DOB believes appropriate.

As part of the revision, DOB should reference current ASME standards. The current RS 19-2 does not include the ASME standard written for tower cranes (B30.3) or articulating boom cranes (B22).

C.11.6 Hoist Recommendation H-8: Hoist Regulation (Further Study)

Hoist equipment (Personnel and Material Hoists and Back-Structures) should be subjected to engineering review, permitting and site inspection by a dedicated DOB department.

C.11.6.1 Description

Various types of hoist operate within the NYC jurisdiction. These include personnel and material hoists, material only hoists, and mast climbers. These machines have similarities in that they typically use a rack and pinion drive, have mast sections, are electrically driven, they are modular, require being affixed to the building, have similar safety systems and are temporary structures.

The DOB Crane & Derrick Unit (C&D) currently provides oversight of mast climbers, the Elevator Division provides oversight of personnel hoists and neither division presently provides oversight for material hoists or back structures. The Elevator Division allows, through the permitting procedure, the owner or construction firms to self-certify material hoists.

Material-Only Hoist and Back-Structure permitting only requires submission of an application. The permitting process is conducted by the Borough Office.

The Borough Offices are not equipped with personnel and resources to perform qualified engineering reviews and inspections. Currently, inspections are performed either by an elevator inspector or BEST squad inspector who typically are visiting the site on other business. In this scenario, hoist equipment does not undergo a specific inspection but is inspected on a cursory (walk-by) level. Also, the inspector is not specifically trained on hoist equipment. Lack of inspections, or inspections being performed by unqualified inspectors, may result in serious conditions being overlooked (see, for example, the Qualified Inspections recommendation, H-5).

This recommendation centralizes all hoist oversight with the C&D Division, and expands oversight to include material hoist and back structures. Oversight would include adoption of typical regulatory activities, such as outlined in the other hoist recommendations.

The primary reason for this recommendation is that C&D division has been charged with crane safety and visits construction sites as part of their overall charter. Cranes and hoists employ similar technology for their operations and therefore the inspectors should be able to look at this equipment without an inordinate amount of extra training. Additionally, cranes and hoists are typically both located at a construction site, facilitating inspections (as opposed to elevators, which are not installed in buildings until long after the hoist has been put into operation).

D. EXCAVATIONS

D.1 INTRODUCTION

The purposes of this chapter of the report are to discuss the general excavation study findings and present recommendations for improving safety via assessments of the design, construction, and regulation of excavations, earth retention, and underpinning in New York City. This chapter is organized into several major sections comprising the methods and a summary findings of the HRCO excavation study, existing reference regulation, presentation of the recommendations and supporting data and a general summary of the state of the practice and available technology. AECOM principally authored this chapter.

The discussion of state of the practice is intended to provide context for the recommendations. As with the other HRCO operational areas, some of the risk associated with NYC excavation operations is associated with using methods that are in many ways outdated. This is particularly true of underpinning. While there are many considerations that must be addressed for widespread adoption of some of the technologies and methods outlined in this section, doing so would probably have a significant impact on the safety concerns addressed in the recommendations.

The major tasks undertaken by the HRCO excavation team included a review of the regulatory framework of the NYC DOB and a field study of contractor operations within the various construction disciplines. Following a kickoff meeting in early July 2008, the HRCO excavation team met with NYC DOB officials and performed several preliminary site visits with the NYC DOB Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations. The existing NYC DOB inspection forms and procedures were reviewed, and based on the experience gained from the initial visits, survey tools and other data gathering techniques were created for use by the HRCO. Field teams for data gathering were deployed in August 2008. The results of the review and the field observations provide the basis for recommended changes in regulations, policies, procedures, and operations to improve construction worker and public safety.

D.2 SITE OBSERVATIONS

D.2.1 Team Organization

The excavation site observations were conducted by 2-man teams consisting of a geotechnical and a structural engineer. The geotechnical engineers had expertise in subsurface investigation, groundwater control, slope stability, and foundation design. The structural engineers had experience in building condition surveys, structural analysis, and monitoring. Individually, the engineers had 3 to 10 years of experience in the design, analysis, and construction of excavations, earth retention, and underpinning systems. Several individuals within the teams also had extensive forensic engineering and investigation experience.

D.2.2 Site Selection

The New York City Department of Buildings (NYC DOB) reported a monthly average of just under 6,000 permit applications for 2008. Approximately two-thirds of the total applications were the New Building and Alteration Type II classes under which excavations, earth retention, and underpinning operations are primarily permitted.

HRCO field inspection project sites were selected from lists of New Building and Alteration permits compiled by the New York City Department of Buildings Special Enforcement Unit (SEU) for Excavations. The lists included permit filings for all five New York Boroughs extending back from the poll date by 1 to 3 months. Filings were sorted by various means (Borough, Rule 52 notification, key words in the application description, etc.) to create a sublist of sites where excavation, shoring, and/or underpinning activities were anticipated.

The sites selected from the sublist were cross-checked by address on the NYC Department of Buildings Building Information System (BIS). Filings and actions were reviewed to determine project status and to potentially identify sites where subgrade work was potentially in progress.

A total of 174 typically unannounced site visits were performed between August and December 2008. Each day's site visits were grouped into geographic areas for expediency, and public transportation was used for travel wherever possible. Initial visits were confined to Manhattan. Over time, the visits were extended to encompass all five Boroughs.

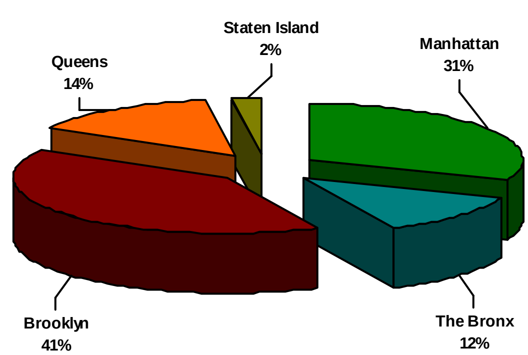


Figure D.2.1: *Site visit (174 total) distribution by Borough*

The main site lists were regenerated on a monthly basis. As each month progressed, the majority of sites on the sublist were visited. To avoid bias, randomly selections were also made from the main list using a number generator and the index value site listings. The random process often selected sites where the work duration was expired, or where the indicated activities were of limited or no interest (e.g., shallow excavations with no earth retention or underpinning, interior renovation work, or demolition) to the excavation study. In the few cases where the selection process identified sites that also appeared on the manually sorted sublist, the sites had either already been visited, or were slated for a future visit.

Individual firms were not targeted for site selection. Due to the limited time frame available for the field survey, and the relatively brief duration of excavation, earth retention, and underpinning operations as a portion of the project construction, the site selections were directed toward producing as broad a sampling as possible.

D.2.3 Observation Protocol

Upon arrival at a job site, the HRCO teams introduced themselves to the site superintendent, foreman, site safety officer, or other responsible individual for the project construction. The team leader provided a brief explanation of the HRCO effort, explained the purpose of the visit, and requested permission to access the site and conduct an observational survey. The superintendent was informed that the HRCO was conducting an information survey as a consultant to the NYC Department of Buildings. It was made clear that although the HRCO did not have enforcement powers and the purpose of the visit was not the issuance of violations, site observations and construction safety related issues would be reported to the NYC DOB.

Following an initial site assessment and discussion to obtain an overview of the current construction activity, the on-site design drawings related to excavation, earth retention, and underpinning were reviewed in the presence of the site superintendent. The design drawings were compared to the associated architectural and structural drawings where these drawings were also available.

A visual inspection of the site and the exterior of the surrounding structures facing the site was then performed. Completed construction was evaluated for conformance to permitted plans, general workmanship, suitability to the site conditions, and performance. Identified instances of substandard or non-conforming work were brought to the attention of the superintendent. The surrounding buildings were examined for readily visible signs of damage or distress which could be related to recent or on-going construction activities. Upon completion of the project site observations, the adjacent structures were visually surveyed individually. When permission was obtained, the adjacent properties were entered and examined for signs of damage not visible from the exterior, and to assess the extent of damage propagation through the structure. Upon completion of the adjacent property surveys, the HRCO team returned to the project site and discussed the general findings with the superintendent.

In instances where site activities were determined to be immediately endangering workers, the general public, or the stability of adjacent structures, the superintendent was notified of the issue and a report was filed with the Emergency Operations Center and the NYC DOB was alerted. Where the construction activities were determined to be proceeding improperly, but the risk to individuals or adjacent structures was not imminent, the Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations was notified and the superintendent was advised that a follow-up site visit by DOB Inspectors should be expected.

D.2.4 Data Collection

The field observations were recorded on standardized Location Reports that included sections for general site information, project information, general results, and a series of review categories related to design and construction. The Location Reports were created by the HRCO, in collaboration with the NYC DOB, as a checklist to accumulate raw site data. Existing NYC DOB inspection forms were used as the model for the checklist which was stored electronically. A Location Report was completed for every site visit, to the extent of the available information, regardless of whether or not the contractor was on-site. Access was gained at 76 of the sites visited, which is slightly less than half of the 174 total. The percentage distribution of visits was essentially the same as the total distribution.

Digital photographs were taken of the project site, design drawings, and the adjacent structures. Construction activities related to excavation, earth retention, and underpinning were photographed to document the work being performed. Substandard and superior work was photographed as it was encountered. Readily visible signs of damage or distress observed in adjacent structures was photographed with reference scales (e.g., rulers, crack gauges, pencils, team members) wherever possible.

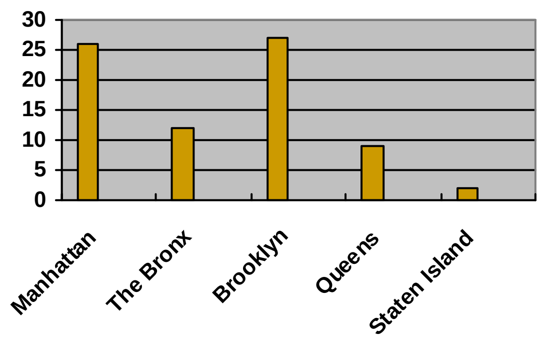


Figure D.2.2: *Accessed site (76 of 174) distribution by Borough*

Notes of observations and conversational interviews with the superintendent, workers, or the site safety officer were recorded in a field book. A general sketch of the project site was made for comparison to site drawings. The relevant observations, sketches, and photographs were compiled into Special Reports which included narrative sections for general site information, site observations, and a summary of the design and construction issues encountered during the information survey.

D.3 INVESTIGATION RESULTS

To the extent observed by the HRCO, New York City follows the basic US (and majority European) pattern for development wherein several contracted consultants provide designs and analyses that are combined by the project manager to create construction documents. In most cases, the manager will be the project architect or structural engineer, and the consultants will largely work independently within their areas of expertise. On exceptionally significant buildings, or large infrastructure projects it is not uncommon for the major consultants to work as a team, but they are generally provide services under separate contracts. An interesting alternative to the basic design and construction concept is the Australian alliance system in which a consortium of consultants and contractors bid for a project as a single entity. Conceptually similar to the practice of design-build, the alliance system differs in that the design is not fully realized at the time of the bid, and the bid is for the project rather than a specific subcomponent of the construction. Often the alliance is responsible for finalizing the design (including site investigations, structural design, permitting, etc.) and managing the construction.

In New York City, excavations, earth retention, and underpinning systems are designed by a subgrade consultant. The State of New York places no practice area restrictions on professional licenses, and the design may be performed and the drawings stamped by any registered engineer or architect in good standing. The NYC DOB permitting process is fundamentally self-enforcing; submittals are reviewed only for fire, egress, and zoning - none of which apply to excavations, earth retention, or underpinning. The Professional Certification program enables designers to avoid even this cursory review, if their firm has been pre-qualified. The declared subgrade consultant (be it either the geotechnical designer or the engineer or architect signing the TR-1) is responsible for verifying that the contractor is installing the system in accordance with the specifications and requirements of the design, and that the system is performing as intended. The required inspections may be performed personally or by an authorized representative of the designer, or, alternatively, the inspections may be performed by an independent testing firm contracted through the owner or developer.

D.3.1 Design

A subgrade consultant was identified at 76 of the inspection sites either directly from design documents or through discussion with the superintendent. The list includes 59 different firms, none of which was encountered on more than 4 separate sites. The diversity of the sample would tend to indicate that the observations were representative of the general state of the local practice rather than an isolated group. Less than 30% of the subgrade consultants had additional involvement with the project beyond the design of excavation, earth retention, and underpinning. The subgrade consultant was the project geotechnical engineer at 9 sites, the structural engineer at 9 sites, and the architect at 3 sites. What this amounts to is that there is a often a separation, and potentially lack of communication, between subgrade consultant doing the design and the geotechnical firm that then provides inspection and testing services during construction.

However, the relatively low cross-over rate of geotechnical engineers is likely somewhat misleading. Although some firms intentionally limit their practices to site investigation and evaluation, the design and analysis of excavations, earth retention, and underpinning are traditionally geotechnical fields. With a few exceptions, geotechnical reports were not available on-site, and in most cases boring logs or other test data which could help identify the project geotechnical engineer was not included in the either the structural or architectural drawings. Unlike architects, structural engineers, and contractors, geotechnical firms are not routinely listed on project drawing title blocks. Thus, there may actually be a greater percentage of geotechnical firms that are also conducting design work, than implied by this study.

Somewhat surprisingly, general contractors were often at a loss when asked to provide the name of the firm which performed the subsurface investigation. Although the geotechnical work would in most cases be completed in advance of the engagement of the general contractor, it is expected that the information and recommendations contained in the report would be distributed as part of the project documents. As a minimum, subgrade contractors typically maintain a copy of the boring logs as a reference for indications of potential driving obstructions, unusual or significant variations in soil conditions, and groundwater fluctuations, but this does not appear to be a standard practice in New York City.

The submission of calculations and analyses is not a standard requirement for permitting excavations, earth retention, or underpinning in New York City. Consequently, the basis of design could only be inferred from the content of approved permit drawings encountered in the field. In general, the designs appeared to be conventional and tailored to the planned depth of cut rather than site conditions. The near surface soils of New York City can geologically be classified as glacial drift, morainal piles, alluvial beaches and dunes, and in most areas the natural deposits are topped by layer of urban fill. The majority of the soils encountered in typical excavations of less than about 15 feet would be expected to be predominantly granular, although clay beds may be encountered in near coastal areas. The relative uniformity of the soil conditions contributes to the homogeneity of design across the five Boroughs.

A 1:1 (horizontal to vertical) cut slope is used for excavations almost by default in New York City. Little, if any, consideration appears to be given to the stability of the cut slope regardless of the excavation depth or subsurface soil conditions. On Staten Island, uniform cut slopes were replaced by benched excavations at two of the sites visited by the HRCO. However, in both cases the overall slope of the excavation was not flatter than 1:1.

Soldier pile and lagging is the most widespread earth retention system currently in use in New York City. Driven or pushed steel sheet pile designs and/or components were not encountered at any of the sites visited by the HRCO. Internal bracing to a deadman is utilized (presumably) to reduce the embedment and required section modulus of the soldier piles without regard to the complexities the system creates for installation. Even for relatively small cuts of less than 8 feet, braced systems are more prevalent than cantilever systems. Of the earth retention systems rated inadequate during the HRCO survey, nearly 50% had design embedment to unbraced height of cut ratios that were considered too small for the indicated pile spacing (assuming general soil properties and a nominal factor of safety). At a site in the Bronx, a soldier pile length of 15 feet was specified on the design drawings for an excavation of 15 feet. Insufficient embedment is often an indication that the retention system was designed for lateral forces only (as shoring would be) rather than bending of the soldier piles. No integrated systems that combine earth retention and permanent foundation or perimeter wall support were encountered in the site inspections.

Underpinning almost exclusively consists of conventional hand-dug pits. Only a single case of an alternative system (micropile support of the building foundation combined with shotcrete and soil nails for earth retention) was encountered during the site inspections. Lower-risk, modern underpinning systems are generally dismissed as too expensive or, more likely, not considered at all out of habit or a lack of familiarity with their application. Because embedment of the underpinning does not generally extend more than a few inches below the level of the proposed excavation, it can reasonably be surmised that the terminal depth of the underpinning is almost certainly based on the desired depth of cut, and not on the suitability of the bearing soil to support the foundation loads. In principle, underpinning in New York City appears to be viewed more as a means of earth retention rather than as supplemental or replacement foundation support.

Consisting as it does of islands and coastal plains, the design of excavations and earth retention systems in New York City would be expected to be dominated by groundwater considerations. Improper design for groundwater is generally acknowledged as the leading cause of excavation instability and the failure of earth retention systems. However, the bedrock spine of Manhattan and the accumulation of the drift and outwash soils have resulted in a topography that enables excavations for buildings with single level basements to be performed above the groundwater table. Localized areas of higher groundwater do occur in low-lying kettles, the natural lowland valleys of northern Manhattan and the Bronx, and in near shore areas subject to tidal fluctuations, but for the most part excavations are performed in the dry. An active groundwater extraction system was observed at only one site during the survey.

D.3.2 Methods of Construction

Ninety seven general contractors and 49 different subgrade contractors were identified at the sites visited by the HRCO. The general contractor was also identified as the subgrade contractor at only 6 sites.

The quality of workmanship related to the advancement of excavations, and the construction of earth retention and underpinning systems in New York City is fair to average. Some exceptional formwork and welding was observed at several sites, but at least an equal number of occasions of substandard work was also noted during the site visits. Of the sites where readily visible deficiencies were identified, issues with soldier pile layout accounted for 35% of the retention systems inadequacies. Violation of the design sequencing was noted twice as often (44% of identified deficiencies) as any other underpinning inadequacy. Construction variations from permitted drawings and undocumented field changes were observed at 25 to 30% of the sites where earth retention and underpinning was either in progress or complete at the time of the HRCO visit. At a site in Brooklyn where the design drawings indicated the need for 3 feet of underpinning, the contractor was installing pins beneath the building to a depth of 8 feet.

According to the site superintendents, more field changes result from unanticipated high bedrock than any other site condition. The local level at which bedrock is located can drastically affect excavations and the construction of earth retention systems, yet it is often poorly defined in site investigations. Gratacap (1909) and Schuberth (1968) have extensively documented the geology of New York and it surroundings. In gross general terms, the bedrock in Manhattan is located about 40 feet below grade at the southern tip of the island, outcrops in the center, and dips dramatically in the north to more than a hundred feet below grade. The mica schist of the Manhattan formation which is the youngest rock of the New York City group has a southwest plunge, and it falls off from the island fairly dramatically. It resurfaces in outcrops at Governors Island but is well below the surface under Staten Island, Queens, and Kings counties. Up-thrusting Fordham gneiss is exposed in the western part of Bronx County and a few outcrops occur in Long Island City.

Subsurface investigations are performed to define geotechnical engineering parameters and develop recommendations for the design and construction of foundations and earthwork for the proposed structure. For reasons of cost the scope is primarily limited to defining the most prevalent subsurface soil, rock, and groundwater conditions that can reasonably be expected to be encountered within the footprint of the planned structure. Access limitations due to existing structures within and adjacent to the site, and practical considerations on the quantity of soil borings, can result in larger separation distances between the boring locations on the site perimeter than those on the interior. As the distance between borings increases the validity of straight-line interpretation of the subsurface conditions inevitably decreases.

The bedrock surface is by no means uniform across Manhattan, and even within relatively small lateral distances the variations can be significant. Folds, intrusions, eroded zones, pinnacles, all contribute to an erratic profile that belies the oversimplification of a general east to west dip of the bedrock formations. At a Midtown site visited by the HRCO, where significant rock excavation was anticipated across the entire footprint of the planned structure, the bedrock surface exposed during excavation was found to vary by at least 20 feet from west to east, and the slope was even more significant in the north to south direction. In the southeast portion of the site, the surface was found to have fallen off so sharply that the bedrock actually dropped well below the maximum planned excavation depth, and an existing multistory building with a basement assumed to be on, or within a few feet of bedrock, had to be underpinned by 10 to 15 feet along its entire length.

Even when well below the planned maximum depth of excavation, the variations in the bedrock surface can still have a considerable effect on site operations. The passive resistance of soldier piles is developed below the bottom of the cut, and properly designed earth retention systems have a specified minimum length of embedment. If the required embedment is not provided in construction, and no other corrective measures are taken, the wall will not have the factor of safety in service it was designed for.

Soldier piles in New York are almost universally installed by driving with vibratory hammers. No impact hammers were observed at any of the HRCO site visits. Where obstructions are encountered, piles are over-driven well beyond the point of damage. Rather than drilling, piles that cannot reach design depth because of shallow rock are supplemented with toe pins installed when the excavation reaches the rock interface. Alternatively at several sites, soldier piles were replaced entirely by cast-in-place concrete piers constructed using shored box pits to avoid drilling into rock.

At a site in Manhattan, soldier piles were driven through an abandoned concrete box sewer, and over-driven at the top of rock so significantly that an estimated 60 to 70% were buckled, twisted, out of alignment, or had major flange damage that prohibited the standard installation of lagging. The initial geotechnical investigation reportedly had indicated that sufficient depth of soil was available for the soldier pile embedment. The bedrock surface exposed in the excavation was highly variable, particularly at the perimeter of the site, and it is unlikely that a limited investigation could have identified the undulations on a spacing equivalent to that of the soldier piles. It is surprising, however, that despite the difficulties encountered, the contractor continued to attempt to drive the piles to the design tip elevation. Once it was determined that shallow rock was present, the designer should have developed an alternative solution, preferably in concert with the contractor, to deal with the revised site condition. While the demarcation between soil and rock is not as observationally distinct when piles are driven with a vibratory rather than an impact hammer, the lack of penetration and the butt end damage should have been readily visible when the piles reached refusal. The inspector or the crew foreman should have stopped driving as soon as possible after refusal to reduce damage to the piles and, more importantly from the contractor’s perspective, to the hammer. The extent of the piles damaged during installation is indicative of insufficient oversight, poor communication, and inexperience on the part of the field personnel and the inspector.

In addition to the bedrock variation, contractors indicated that the subsurface soils in the underpinning excavations were often found to contain a significantly greater proportion of cobbles and boulders than would be indicated by the borings. To some extent this should hardly be surprising as most of the sites had been previously developed. The borings performed for the new structure would almost certainly have been located in disturbed regions that would not necessarily be representative of the (presumably) natural soils at an equivalent elevation beneath the shallow footings of adjacent structures.

Hand-dug underpinning work in New York City is typically done by small general excavation contractors, although a few specialized firms do exist. Contractors prefer to insert pre-assembled boxes for shoring underpinning rather than installing individual boards as the excavation proceeds (as would be done for a soldier pile and timber lagging wall), and a 3 to 4.5-foot deep, block excavation with vertical sidewalls is common. Arching, stand-time, and “hard” soil – along with anecdotal experience – are usually claimed as the rationale for the practice.

Although not entirely correct, the contractors’ argument is not without merit. While still predominantly granular, many of the soils exposed in the underpinning excavations at the sites visited by the HRCO appeared to contain an appreciable amount of silt and clay which would help to retain moisture. At the face of an excavation there will be some dilation and a localized reduction in the pore water pressure. In unsaturated soils the pore water pressure can actually become negative which increases the soil strength, and allows even sands to stand vertically for a short period of time. The effect, however, is temporary, and as the soils dry, this “apparent cohesion” disappears and the excavation sidewalls will begin to spall. In this way, much of the New York City subsoils can be said to be fairly well-suited to small short-term excavations, and it is likely a contributing factor to the dominance of hand-dug underpinning.

Incomplete definition of foundations for surrounding structures is a significant issue for underpinning, and too often contractors must rely on their own judgment to estimate the bearing level. While most experienced contractors can easily make an estimate within at least a few feet of the bearing level - based on structure size, evidence of a basement, or their local knowledge about the type and age of construction - their judgment should not be expected to compensate for an inadequate preconstruction survey.

D.3.3. Performance

The short-term stability of the soils in New York City, while beneficial to underpinning, has likely contributed to a sense of over-confidence in the performance of excavations, earth retention, and underpinning. Designers may become complacent and may not fully evaluate the suitability of the proposed system to the local conditions. Contractors can often wrongly correlate success at one site to expertise, and then apply those construction methods universally in their operations without giving regard to project variables.

Unfortunately for adjacent property owners, there is a tendency for those involved in design and construction to concentrate on the project site without paying commensurate attention to surrounding structures. This is a well known issue in most major US cities, and there is no indication that architects, engineers, or contractors practicing in New York City are any more prone to defining their responsibilities by the project property lines than their counterparts elsewhere. The incidence of disassociation was not tracked by the HRCO, and it is questionable, given the subjective interpretation required, whether any such data would be meaningful. It is perhaps sufficient to be aware that most projects are not conceived with the best interests of the adjacent owners as a primary concern.

What is notable in New York City is the degree to which damage to structures beyond the project limits appears to be tolerated. At the sites visited by the HRCO, 21% of the sites had adjacent structures with readily discernable damage that could be attributed to excavation and/or underpinning operations. The damage included widespread cracking, differential settlement, and visible lateral displacements. At a site in lower Manhattan, cracking of the below grade walls was so significant that a conventional crack gauge was virtually unable to span the gap. Cracks indicative of a rotational stability failure were also plainly visible in the basement floor. At sites in Brooklyn, floor to ceiling cracks were observed in interior walls, and displacements of rubble foundations walls were noted in basements. Similar observations were made in the Bronx and Queens along with cracked slabs-on-grade, and rotation and translation of exterior entrance stairs and sidewalks.

An occurrence of damage to surrounding structures at 1 of every 5 project sites prompted the HRCO excavation team to question contractors as to how they address this. Contractors indicated that the owner or developer typically covers the costs of repairs, and that restoration of the damaged property was part of the project.

BUILDING SHORINGS MUST BE APPROVED

Underpinning in Past Was Allowed to Go On Without Building Bureau Inspection.

BOROUGH PRESIDENT'S PLAN

Miller Says Nine-Story Buildings, Filled With Tenants, Have Been Propped Up Without Supervision.

Alterations to existing buildings in Manhattan will be made hereafter under closer supervision of Building Department Inspectors and engineers, according to Borough President Julius Miller, who made public yesterday the contents of new orders that have just gone out to the Inspectors. Contractors and builders will be required to get approval from the Building Bureau before making alterations that necessitate shoring and underpinning.

In the past it has been their practice to file with the Building Department their application to make changes in existing structures and then go ahead with the work without waiting for the inspection and approval by the proper authorities. Often sections of wall have been knocked out of a building as high as nine stories, and underpinning or shoring put in to bear the weight of all the upper floors filled with tenants whose safety was entirely dependent upon the judgment and efficiency of the contractor.

In many such cases the shoring was completed before the permits were issued. The new order relative to shoring and underpinning, just issued by Charles Brady, Superintendent of Buildings, reads:

"No shoring or underpinning will hereafter be permitted until the proposed work is approved by the Superintendent of Buildings or his representative. In ordinary cases the District Inspector may, after examination, verbally approve of the proposed work, but must immediately make a written report of his action, stating when and to whom such approval has been given.

"When the proposed work cannot be regarded as an ordinary operation, or in case the Inspector is not qualified to pass upon it, he will so report to the Chief Inspector. Further investigation will then be made, whether personally by the Chief Inspector or by a specially qualified Inspector, either of whom may require the filing of plans for the approval of the bureau before the commencement of the work."

The necessity for this change in procedure is explained by Superintendent of Buildings Brady in the following memorandum furnished to Borough President Miller at the latter's request:

"While the Building Bureau in the past has endeavored to carefully supervise construction work on new buildings and alterations to existing structures, it appears that the very important work of shoring and underpinning of existing structures has been permitted to go on without approval and very often without the supervision of any official of the Bureau of Buildings.

"I find instances where eengineers have been engaged to design temporary shoring on large operations, and the work designed by the said engineers carried out without first submitting the design to this bureau or even procuring the approval of the District Inspector.

"The District Inspector in cases out of the ordinary is very seldom qualified to pass on this class of work. I am of the firm opinion that the present procedure is entirely wrong and should be corrected. Therefore, I have issued an order, a copy of which is attached hereto, and also served notice upon applicants for permits on construction work of the nature of the order to which the notice is attached."

The New York Times
Published: May 14, 1922

Figure D.3.1: *Underpinning as a continuing problem in New York City*

Given the rate of damage, a heightened sensitivity to construction monitoring would be expected. Within the confines of Manhattan only approximately 65% of the sites visited by the HRCO either had a system in place for monitoring the surrounding structures, or planned to install one in advance of the start of excavation or underpinning. In the remaining four Boroughs less than 18% of the sites visited had monitoring programs in place or planned to install one. Of the few sites in the outer Boroughs that did have monitoring, nearly one-half of them were adjacent to a MTA structure and the program was instituted at their direction.

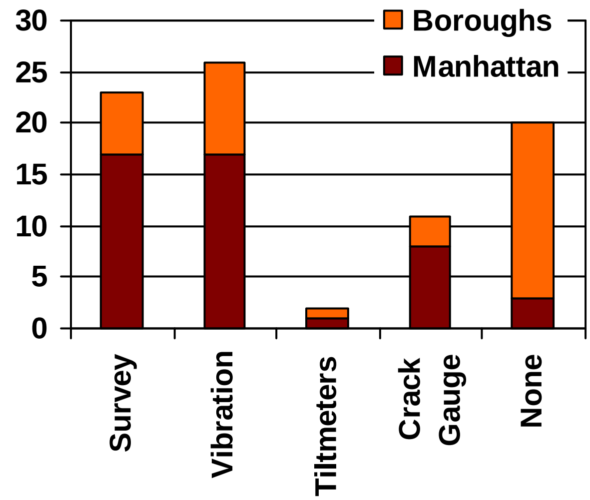


Figure D.3.2: *Observed monitoring systems in New York City*

Contractors in the Boroughs most commonly reported performing vibration monitoring during soldier pile driving. Vertical and lateral survey monitoring was reported second most often. Surprisingly, the number of contractors that reported that no monitoring had been, or would be, performed was twice as large as the number that reported it had been performed.

Whether because owners will not pay for the services, designers are not diligent, or contractors fail to notify, inspection of earth retention and underpinning construction was rated by the HRCO as poor throughout New York City. Cost and contractual issues aside, poor coordination and communication among designers, designated inspectors, and contractors appears to be the major contributing factor. When asked, 35% of the contractors could not identify the special inspector at the sites visited by the HRCO. Based on the field observations, the qualifications and experience of special inspectors was rated fair to poor. Construction deficiencies which should have been readily discernable (and for the most part correctible) to an inspector with average training and construction experience were observed at 36% of the sites with earth retention systems, and at 26% of the sites with underpinning. Omitted welds, inappropriate connections, substitution of materials, improper excavation and stockpiling, inadequate shoring of approach pit sidewalls, to name just a few of the most common observations, were widespread throughout New York City.

Perhaps no observed omission was as critical, and fundamental, as the lack of construction staging in design and construction. Less than 10% of the permitted earth retention system designs at the sites visited by the HRCO defined staging (including excavation limits, order of assembly, prestressing requirements, installation of deadman, connection of rakers, etc.) for the construction. Virtually none of the drawing sets, including those which had been formally reviewed by the MTA, included cross sections for intermediate stages of construction. In almost all cases, only the final condition was shown, regardless of the number of levels of bracing or the depth of excavation. Earth retention systems must be analyzed for all construction stages to verify the components are adequately sized, and to verify that the ground movements will be within the desired tolerances. Essentially every braced system will have an initial cantilever stage. Tieback and bracing loads will vary as the excavation is advanced, and the design must consider each stage to define the range of performance and the maximum capacity required.

With no clear instructions, the inexperience of some contractors inevitably creates construction hazards as they attempt to define their own “means and methods”. At a site in Brooklyn a contractor attempted to install a cast-in-place concrete deadman for a braced earth retention system by advancing an unshored excavation 15 to 18 feet from existing site grade. The sidewalls were nearly vertical, and excavated material was stockpiled adjacent to the excavation. A worker was lowered into the excavation on the bucket of a backhoe to set a pre-assembled concrete form in the presence of the HRCO. A simple staging outline, that provided an intermediate excavation depth to attach a waler, nominal dimensions for an unexcavated perimeter berm, an interior excavation to install deadmen, and a bracing connection followed by final berm excavation should have provided (and each stage should have been checked) to prevent just such an occurrence.

Individually the design flaws, incidences of damage, and lax oversight are certainly causes for concern. When considered as a whole, they point to the somewhat inescapable conclusion that there are design professionals and contractors in New York City practicing outside their areas of expertise. The percentage is by no means a majority, and most of the professionals and contractors are conscientious and diligent in their work. However, unfamiliarity with proper pre-design site investigation requirements, inexperience with analysis methods, a lack of understanding of construction operations, and a general un-preparedness for readily foreseeable construction difficulties was all too often evident at the sites visited by the HRCO.

Excavations, earth retention, and underpinning are highly specialized practices. The design of these systems requires expertise in geotechnical and structural engineering. Construction of many of the systems involves the use of specialized equipment with dedicated and trained crews. Knowledge about the effect of the construction on the surroundings is critical for both design and construction. In some states regulators have attempted to restrain operations by requiring what is conceived as a “higher degree” of certification. In Illinois an engineer must be licensed as a structural engineer, as opposed to a professional engineer, to stamp drawings that involve earth retention or underpinning. In addition to professional engineers, California offers licenses for geotechnical, and structural engineers each with differing requirements and limitations on their application. Several states utilize some form of licensing or certification to define suitable subgrade contractors for DOT or other government funded contracts. The enactment of any similar changes for New York would require legislation at the state level.

D.4 DOB PROCESS REVIEW

The HRCO excavation team reviewed DOB operations as a part of this study, focusing on operations of the Special Enforcement Unit (SEU). The review included mapping of the SEU operation, accumulation of field guidance documents and checklists used by inspectors and engineers, as well as observation of the inspectors and engineers during the performance of their duties. The SEU audit process was audited itself, through review of archive job files by HRCO engineers.

The HRCO visited 25 sites in conjunction with DOB inspectors. Observations were made in the areas of technical expertise, interaction with contractors, knowledge of construction site operations, and the standard methods employed in the performance of the duties of the inspectors.

The HRCO also reviewed 35 SEU audit files. The reviews assessed the effectiveness and completeness of the audits.

These DOB process reviews are reflected in the recommendations in this report, such as the need for differentiation in underpinning permitting, advance notification of underpinning operations and proactive plan review. The process reviews also resulted identification of initiatives that the DOB could consider to improve performance in site inspections and file audits.

D.5 EXISTING REFERENCE REGULATION

Because of the dense packing of structures in New York City, virtually all construction projects will have an affect on, or be influenced by, buildings and facilities beyond the project property lines. New York is not the first city to grapple with balancing the rights of owners against the protection of adjacent properties.

By the start of the 19th Century, London had a population slightly in excess of a million souls. By 1851, nearly 2.4 million people occupied a space of 90 square miles. For better or worse, London was the first post-industrial revolution experiment in social management, civic infrastructure, and community planning. The lessons learned from the local London Building Acts inspired the British Party Wall Act which was enacted in 1996 for application throughout England and Wales.

On the Continent, the Deutsches Institut für Normung e. V., or DIN, has published national construction standards for application throughout Germany since 1947. DIN participates directly in European standardization. It is fundamentally involved in the process of drafting new European standards (designated as DIN EN), and devotes much of its time and resources to continually updating and reviewing existing national construction standards. Originally published in 1972, DIN 4123 which specifies provisions for excavation and foundation work adjacent to existing buildings, was revised in 2000, and a 2008 draft is currently in review.

Separately, these two documents are excellent examples of thoughtful, practical regulation. Combined, they form the basis of basis upon which an organized approach to managing excavations, earth retention and underpinning can be modeled in New York City.

D.5.1 British Party Wall Act

The clearest example of the shared interest of neighboring properties is the common party wall. In its simplest definition a party wall is any wall that is located on a property line between parcels of land belonging to at least two different owners. A party wall can be an exclusive part of one building, separate two or more buildings, or it could act as a separation fence. A masonry garden wall which is supported on a foundation could be a party wall depending upon its height, but wooden privacy fences are not typically considered party walls. A wall located within a single property can also be a party wall if it is used by two or more owners to separate their buildings. Such a situation can occur when a new structure is located immediately adjacent to an existing building wall and the new building did not construct their own wall.

When flats, rowhomes, and similar buildings share an integral structural component such as a wall or floor partition that also acts a separation between buildings or parts of buildings, a broader term of party structure is typically applied. In a looser interpretation, the term party structure can also be applied to situations where the stability of separate buildings is reliant upon the structural integrity of the adjacent structure. An excellent example of this type of construction are the surviving late 19th Century-era mercantile buildings that are sprinkled across Lower Manhattan. When examined individually, many of these structures do not have sufficient lateral resistance capacity to be inherently stable (in terms of modern methods of design and analysis) for their constructed heights. Rather than acting as free-standing structures, the buildings naturally “lean” into each other, and the mass of the pair works together to provide lateral stability.

The impact of construction is not limited to immediately adjacent or adjoining structures. Structures that are set back from the property line can be affected if some portion of their foundation support is derived from the soils within the active zone of an excavation. In geomechanics the active zone of a soil mass is expressed using the Mohr-Coulomb failure envelope which is defined by the shear strength. Because shear strength varies with soil type, the active zone is conservatively generalized to encompass the block of soil above a 45 degree line projected from the base of the excavation. Conventionally, the region which represents the area of soil which may move as a result of the excavation is termed the zone of influence.

The shared interest of party walls, party structures, and the zone of influence imposes an obligation on any owner that wishes to make improvements to, or substantially alter, his property to protect adjacent structures from damage that may result as a consequence of the construction. While an owner has the right to make improvements within the limits of zoning for his own property, the developer’s rights do not supersede those of surrounding property owners or in any way entitle the owner to access or perform work on an adjacent, or influenced, structure without the consent of the respective owners.

In an effort to provide a mechanism to prevent and resolve the inevitable conflicts and disputes that result between adjacent owners, the British Parliament enacted the Party Wall etc. Act in July 1996. Under the Act, anyone intending to carry out work that involves a shared interest (e.g., direct work on a party wall, new construction at a property line, or excavations within a defined distance of an existing building) must give the affected owners notice of their intentions. Adjoining owners can agree with the developer’s proposals or negotiate changes in the timing and/or manner which the construction operations will be carried out. The developer is required to provide temporary protection for adjacent buildings and property where necessary. In the event that an adjacent property is damaged by the construction, the developer is responsible for making good through repairs or direct compensation.

With consent the adjoining owner agrees to provide access for the developer’s engineer or architect, workers, etc., to carry out any necessary inspections, evaluations, and eventually the planned construction. If an agreement cannot be reached, or the adjoining owner has not responded after a period of 14 days from the service of the notice, the construction is classified as being in dispute. The Act requires that an independent peer engineer or architect be engaged to arbitrate the dispute. The peer is required to prepare a "party wall award" which:

- describes the scope of work that will be carried out,

- provides apportionment of costs for the work (if the benefits are shared, or if the work includes repairs associated with inadequate maintenance by the affected owner),
- defines the operational time limits within which work may be performed,
- specifies any additional work required (including supplemental condition surveys, baseline establishment for monitoring, and the design and construction of systems to prevent or mitigate potential damage), and
- allows access for engineers from both sides to inspect active construction.

The determination of the peer is expected to be impartial, and it is binding unless altered by legal action.

The British Party Wall Act was intended to be a framework for resolution of disputes. The general principle of the Act is accommodation through advance notification and fair and honest negotiation. There are no enforcement procedures for failure to serve a notice. However, if work is initiated without proper notice, adjoining owners may seek to stop construction through a court injunction or seek other legal redress. Adjoining owners cannot stop a property owner from exercising the right to develop or perform improvements, but under the Act they may be able to influence how and at what times the work is done.

It is important to note that reaching agreement with the adjoining owners under the Act does not relieve the developer from an obligation to comply with building regulations procedures. It should also be recognized that the corollary situation of compliance with building regulations and the issuance of an approved permit does not release the developer from the need to comply with the Act.

More recently in 2008, the District of Columbia adopted Section 3307A for the protection of adjoining property as a supplement to their building code. Fundamentally similar to the British Party Wall Act, the D.C. supplement requires written notification to be provided to the affected property of the need for protective work in association with the planned construction. The affected owner has the option to grant permission for access, perform the necessary protective work themselves (for which they are granted access as required to the construction site) in an expeditious manner that will not impede construction, or affirmatively deny permission. The denial must be accompanied by a justification to the code official indicating the reason for the refusal.

Where the D.C. provision diverges from the British Party Wall Act is in the case of existing adjoining or party walls which require underpinning. Rather than advocating an arbitration, Section 3307A requires the person causing the work to provide proper underpinning for the structure whether or not written permission to enter the adjoining lot is granted. Although the underpinning for this specific exception can be performed without the permission of adjacent property owner, it does not relieve the developer of the obligation to provide proper notification.

D.5.2 DIN 4123

The German standard is limited to simple cases of vertically loaded strip and wall foundations. It is intended to address buildings under 5 stories with foundation loads less than about 17 kip/ft that are underpinned using classical methods.

In a short and succinct document, DIN 4123 defines the requirements for documentation, site management, planning, site investigations, and stability analyses which must be completed in advance of construction. The standard defines excavation limits and general foundation provisions for the new structure, and it describes the acceptable methods and limitations of underpinning construction.

Throughout the document the need for monitoring of the structure being underpinned is stressed. The stated purpose of the standard is to describe the procedures which will be allowed, and the checks and analyses which must be made, so as minimize the risk to the stability and serviceability of the existing building.

D.6 SUMMARY OF RECOMMENDATIONS

The nine recommendations individually address specific topics which, based on HRCO field observations and the industry outreach, would be expected to have the most immediate effect on improving safety through design, construction, inspection, and regulatory oversight. Each recommendation consists of a summary statement of the recommendation, a description of the issue and primary supporting information, considerations for implementing the recommendation and, in some cases, additional observations associated with the recommendation. Additional benchmarking observations are summarized in the *Benchmarking* chapter of this report, that were not available for this chapter, due to timing of preparation of this report.

The recommendations are summarized below:

Excavations at Footings (E-1)

Excavations which must extend below the bearing level of an existing footing or foundation should be restricted to ensure adequate measures are taken regarding stability of the structure.

Permitting of Underpinning (E-2)

DOB should implement a procedural method for permitting underpinning that is differentiated as shallow or deep to better screen these operations for associated safety issues.

Preconstruction Surveys (E-3)

DOB should provide minimum requirements for a preconstruction survey that defines the baseline condition of adjacent and influenced structures on, and surrounding, a project site. A professional engineer should be responsible for submitting the survey.

Monitoring During Excavations (E-4)

The excavation, earth retention system, or underpinning designer should identify all influenced structures, and should establish a monitoring program for the construction operation, meeting minimum requirements established by DOB.

Minimum Drawing Standards (E-5)

Design submittals for excavation, earth retention, or underpinning permits should include sufficient plan, section, and detail drawings as necessary to convey the full intent and scope of the construction. DOB should establish minimum requirements for submittals.

Limited Technical Review (E-6)

Require pre-permit technical review of excavation, earth retention system, and underpinning permit designs.

Underpinning Notification (E-7)

The contractor should notify the Department of Buildings a minimum of 24 hours, but no more than 72 hours (3 working days) in advance of the start of underpinning construction. The notification should be written, and it should include a brief narrative description of the activity including the length and location of underpinning to be installed, height of typical pit or pier, and the estimated duration of construction. The contractor should also be required to provide the same notification to the underpinning designer and to the responsible agent for special inspections if different from the designer.

TR1 and Inspection Log (E-8)

Critical inspection information, including the TR1 form and a log of special and progress inspections should be maintained on site for the benefit of the construction parties and DOB.

On-Site Meeting (E-9)

The contractor should schedule an on-site meeting with the designer and special inspector (as applicable) to walk through the planned operation in advance of the start of construction. The contractor should the notify the Department of Buildings of the time and place of the meeting, and attendance by the NYC DOB should be at their discretion.

The HRCO excavation recommendations are best considered as a whole. For example, *TR1 and Inspection Log* provides mechanisms to document, amongst other things, special and progress inspections. The *On-Site Meeting* recommendation is tied to this in that it provides for an opportunity for the designer to address the issue of how many inspections are appropriate. *On-Site Meeting* also provides an opportunity for review of sensitive surrounding structures which is relevant to *Limitations on Underpinning*, *Preconstruction Surveys* and *Monitoring During Excavations*. *Minimum Drawing Standards* is clearly essential to *Limited Technical Review*, but is also associated with *Permitting of Underpinning* and *Excavation at Footings*. *Permitting of Underpinning*, in turn, particularly as it applies to shallow underpinning, identifies the need for proper *Preconstruction Surveys*, *On-site Meetings* and construction inspections (as documented by an *Inspection Log*) to prevent accidents. Finally, *Preconstruction Surve*ys, *Monitoring During Excavations* and *On-site Meetings* work together to address the issue of the large number of older, historic or potentially fragile structures that often immediately border excavation operations. Special care must be taken to identify, assess and protect these structures from being compromised by neighboring excavations.

While they were conceived independently, the HRCO recommendations parallel many of the provisions of the German standard DIN 4123. The major design and construction issues related to excavations, earth retention, and underpinning are not exclusive to New York City, and it is not surprising that the gaps identified by the HRCO were encountered in other practices. Several of the HRCO recommendations can be seen to be interrelated, and when considered as a whole, the fundamentals of a standard similar to DIN 4123 can readily be seen.

D.7 RECOMMENDATION E-1: EXCAVATIONS AT FOOTINGS

Excavations which must extend below the bearing level of an existing footing or foundation should be restricted to ensure adequate measures are taken regarding stability of the structure.

Description

An offset of excavations which must extend below the bearing level of an existing footing foundation is standard geotechnical engineering practice. Excavations are typically offset laterally from the edge of the footing a nominal distance of 2 to 5 feet. If the offset cannot be provided, the footing is underpinned, shored, or tied back to restrain lateral movement.

The 1968 and the new 2008 NYC Building Codes do not provide clear requirements for temporary excavations at footings. It is recommended that language be added to restrict the excavations to a defined geometry unless stability is ensured by other means.

The recommendation is specifically intended to improve geotechnical stability for short-term construction operations. The evaluation of the structural integrity of the existing structure is beyond the scope of this recommendation. The recommendation is not intended to relieve the person responsible for making the excavation of the obligation (as required by code) to verify that the condition of the structure is sound enough that the work can safely be performed. Although the excavation is expected to be advanced wholly within the property line limits of the project development, the construction can have an effect on the surrounding structures. The safeguarding of the surrounding structures and facilities is the responsibility of the designer and the person making the excavation.

Examples of situations where this situation may be encountered:

1. Elevator, sump, or mechanical pits located near property lines,
2. New shallow foundations installed close to a vintage structure where the foundations do not extend to the current frost-depth requirement,
3. New double-depth basement close to, but not immediately adjacent to, an existing single-level basement.

Currently in New York, an excavation at a bearing wall on the property line can extend vertically to the base of the wall (bearing elevation) and then immediately slope downwards at a 1:1 (45 degree) angle. The bearing soils can be left exposed to the elements and are subject to washout, spalling, raveling, wind erosion, etc. There is a risk of sudden rotational failure of foundations left in this condition for an extended period of time.

The typical construction in New York City, particularly in Manhattan, extends from property line to property line. Perimeter walls and foundations are often constructed immediately adjacent to existing structures to maximize building floor plans. In cases where the existing structures are located on the property line, and the new building includes a deeper basement, underpinning is commonly utilized if the permission of the adjacent owner can be obtained. In cases where the existing structure is set slightly back from the property line, or where the new building does not extend to the property line – such as rear yards, open cut (i.e., angle of repose) excavations are preferred for cost reasons.

The injury to report ratio for excavations in the 2004 to 2008 NYC DOB incident database provided to the HRCO was approximately 15%. No fatalities were directly identified as excavation related although at least one death was attributed to trenching.

In the March 2007 Regulatory Review of 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P: Excavations, OSHA reported that the annual number of trenching and excavation fatalities declined from an estimated 90 fatalities per year prior to 1989 (nationally), to about 70 per year since 1990. For the eleven year period from 1990 through 2000, the actual number of fatalities each year varied within the range of 59-81. The 22% reduction in fatalities occurred during a 20% real increase in construction activity over the same period. The fatality data was drawn from OSHA's Integrated Management Information System (IMIS) database which tracks data on a national level and by individual industries and causes.

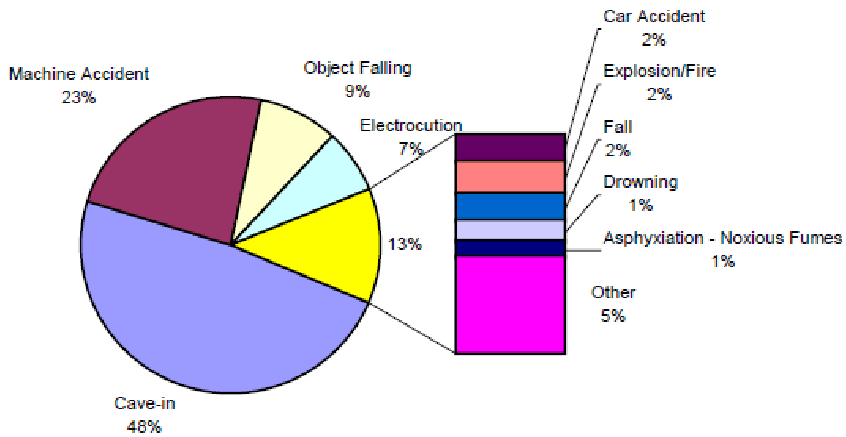


Figure D.7.1: *Distribution of fatalities by cause of death (reproduced from OSHA Regulatory Review of 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P: Excavations)*

An open cut excavation at a footing was encountered by the HRCO at on site in Manhattan, and the project was still in demolition at the time.

Design drawings depicting the practice were encountered in field reviews, and audit checks of NYC DOB Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations (SEU) job files. In two of the SEU audit checks where the depicted cut slope was specified as 45 degrees or as a 1:1 slope, the SEU engineer failed to identify that the actual excavation slope based on the provided dimensions was steeper.

In the majority of cases reviewed, the small open cut excavations necessary for construction were not designed. The means and methods were left to the discretion of the excavation contractor.

Recommendation Approach

Unless stability and adequate bearing capacity is demonstrated through calculation by a professional engineer, excavations should not extend deeper than the bearing level of an existing footing or foundation within a lateral distance equal to the intended depth of the excavation below the footing or foundation. The provided lateral distance should be measured from the outermost projection of the existing footing or foundation into the area of excavation. The slope of excavation (face of the provided berm) beyond the lateral distance should be no steeper than 1:1 (horizontal: vertical) regardless of soil type. The top of the berm should be at least 18 inches above the bearing level of the footing.

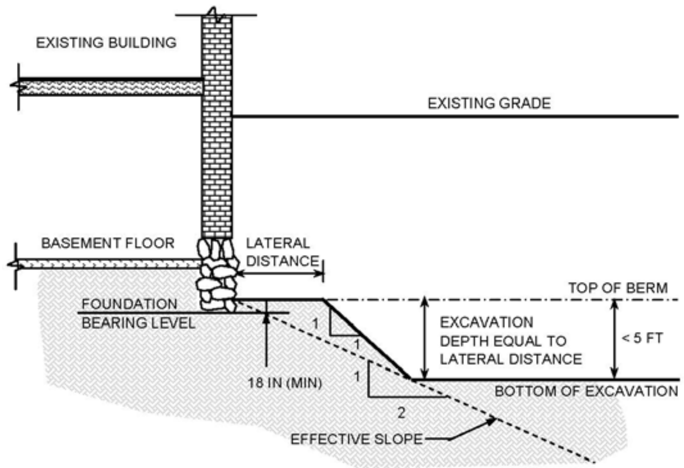


Figure D.7.2: *Limits for excavations less than 5 feet*

Exception: The stability of any excavation which extends more than 5 feet below the top of the berm (3.5 feet below footing bearing level), or below the normal static groundwater table as determined by on-site measurement, must be demonstrated through calculation by a professional engineer.

If the lateral distance cannot be provided, the footing or foundation should be underpinned, or the excavation should be supported by an earth retention system capable of protecting the foundation against settlement and lateral translation. The underpinning or earth retention system should be designed by a professional engineer.

Ideally, all excavations should be designed by a professional engineer. This recommendation approach is intended to provide an absolute minimum, as a guide to DOB plan reviewers. The excavation designer, if specifying anything less restrictive than this, would need to provide engineering justification for the design. As with any excavation, the design considerations should include, but not be limited to:

1. The depth of the excavation,
2. The effect of the removal of the soil overburden on the allowable bearing capacity of the foundation soil,
3. The unbalanced soil load on the foundation,
4. The groundwater level and effect of any localized pumping or dewatering,
5. The structural integrity and stability of the existing foundation,
6. The foundation loading (eccentricity, surcharge, temporary loads imposed by construction, etc.).

Additional Data

The Organizational Health and Safety Administration (OSHA) defines nominal cut slopes for depths of excavation greater than 5 feet. The slopes are based on soil type, but do not consider the effects of surcharges or groundwater. The requirements for sloping and benching are defined in 29 CFR, 1926 Subpart P: Excavations, which was revised in 1989. The shallowest slope allowed in granular materials such as gravel, sand, and loamy sand is 1.5:1 (or 34 degrees). The maximum height of cut for a simple slope excavation is 20 feet.

OSHA states that the person causing the excavation must evaluate the site conditions and provide any support systems, such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning, as may be necessary to ensure the stability of adjacent structures during the time the excavation will remain open. Excavation below the level of a base or footing of any foundation or retaining wall is prohibited unless a support system, such as underpinning, is provided; the excavation is in stable rock; or a registered engineer determines that the structure is sufficiently removed from the excavation and the excavation will not pose a hazard to employees. The standard prohibits excavations under sidewalks unless an appropriately designed support system is provided.

OSHA tracked excavation fatalities resulting from a variety of accident types. For the period from 1990 to 2000 approximately one-half of the fatalities (approximately 48%) resulted from cave-ins.

OSHA reported that approximately 73% of excavation fatalities occur in firms with fewer than 50 employees.

1. Approximately 33% occur in the firms with 10 or fewer employees,

2. Approximately 40% occur in firms with between 11 and 49 employees.

When the average number of fatalities in each size category were divided by the number of employees (estimated) in the category, OSHA found that the smaller firms, in fact, have higher fatality rates than larger firms.

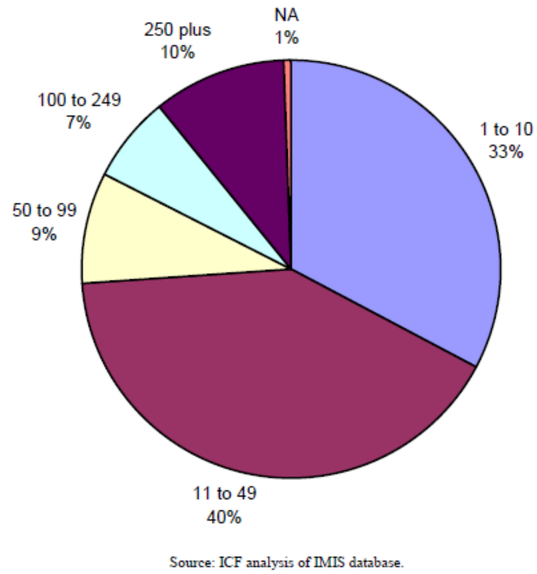


Figure D.7.3: *Distribution of fatalities by size of firm (reproduced from OSHA Regulatory Review of 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P: Excavations)*

Approximately 66% of fatalities occur at work sites with 10 or fewer employees. Although easily attributed to the fact that smaller jobs account for the majority of excavation and trenching, OSHA theorized that oversight and compliance also reduces as firm size declines.

Additional HRCO Observations

Although no jurisdictions included in the HRCO benchmarking survey were found to have codified the requirement of an offset of excavations, some form of the recommendation is commonly included in geotechnical reports as a standard paragraph. Where excavation plans are technically reviewed in advance of permitting, building officials have the opportunity to “enforce” the standard practice, or demand substantiating analyses that demonstrate it is unnecessary. Unless plans will be technically reviewed, a provision should be developed to prevent the default use of 1:1 excavation slopes at foundations that is currently allowed under the NYC Building Code.

The practice of lot line to lot line construction will dictate that perimeter buildings bearing at a higher level than the proposed structure will need to be underpinned. However, even in Manhattan, construction staging may result in the interior excavation being advanced to install foundations before the perimeter underpinning is installed. It is not uncommon for construction to begin at the building core and spread outward, particularly when elevator shafts are centrally located. The maintenance of a berm at the perimeter would, in this situation, provide a more stable condition geotechnically while the interior work is being performed.

The provisions of the recommendation would be expected to be more typically applied to mid-size and small projects such as may be encountered in the outer Boroughs where some separation between buildings exists, and the mass excavation does not extend significantly below the adjacent structures. The injury data reported by OSHA demonstrate that the majority of injuries occur at smaller jobs where oversight is lax. Based on the limited monitoring, and the design and construction deficiencies observed during the HRCO site visits, this generalization can also be loosely applied to construction projects in the outer Boroughs.

D.8 RECOMMENDATION E-2: PERMITTING OF UNDERPINNING

DOB should implement a procedural method for permitting underpinning that is differentiated as shallow or deep to better screen these operations for associated safety issues.

Description

Hand-dug underpinning pits commonly extend from 4 to as much as 10 feet below the bearing level of the foundation elements (spread footings and bearing walls) they support. In cases where the new building includes multiple basement levels, underpinning can extend 20 feet or more. In order to achieve the necessary depth, multiple levels of underpinning are typically stacked. All underpinning operations in New York are high risk. However, the type of risk can be conceptually segregated as primarily design-related for deep underpinning and primarily construction-related for shallow underpinning.

Underpinning in New York City is often designed using industry "rules of thumb" and standard templates that may not consider local geotechnical or site conditions. Dowels between lifts are sometimes shown on details, but they are generally insufficient to prevent a hinge condition from developing at the midspan of the stacked underpinning. Because a hinge exists at the footing connection, the stack of underpinning is not structurally stable for lateral loads. Lateral restraint must be provided by tiebacks or external bracing.

Most underpinning is installed as plain structural concrete. Reinforcement is shown in some cases, but it is difficult to install cages in the confined excavation. Lapping and tying bars in the completed excavation is time consuming, and, in some cases, insufficient space is available to develop the reinforcement.

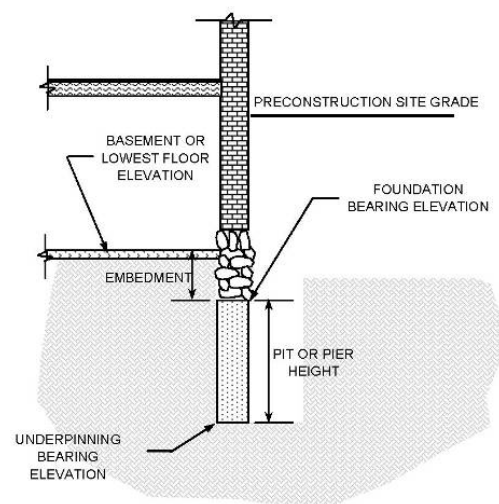


Figure D.8.1: *Typical underpinning section*

Contractors prefer to insert pre-assembled boxes for shoring underpinning rather than installing individual boards as the excavation proceeds (as would be done for a soldier pile and timber lagging wall). The means and methods of the work sequence are rarely described on the design drawings, and a 3 to 4.5-foot deep, block excavation with vertical sidewalls is common. Arching, stand-time, and “hard” soil – along with anecdotal experience – are usually claimed as the rationale for the practice.

The subsurface conditions encountered in underpinning pits do not necessarily coincide with geotechnical borings. Unanticipated boulders and variations in rock elevation frequently result in design changes during construction. The underpinning details are often based on unproven assumptions about the site conditions and adjacent structures.

Continuous, concrete pit underpinning is the most prevalent system currently in use in NYC. Isolated piers with needle beams transferring intermediate loads was the preferred method of underpinning at the early part of the 20th Century, but it has largely been abandoned. Other, more modern systems such as micropiles, push piles, or jet grouting are used sparingly. Most contractors cite cost as the primary factor in decision making, and claim pit underpinning is the cheapest available system. The alternative systems are typically installed by specialty contractors, and it is more likely that general contractors are unfamiliar with their applications.

Curtin et al., (2006) published cost indices for various foundation types in the United Kingdom. When normalized by the per meter length of footing being underpinned, conventional mass concrete underpinning less than 1 meter deep rated an index of 3. When the depth increased to 2 meters, the index rating increased to 5. Underpinning with small diameter piles at regular close centers rated a 4 when the existing footing could be used, and a 7 when a new reinforced concrete grade beam was required.

Figure D.8.2*: Underpinning using an open approach pit*

Although conventional mass concrete underpinning is cheaper for minimal depths, the modern system is cost competitive for most depths. Curtin notes that the data for conventional mass concrete underpinning was included for completeness only. For the safety of the workers, and the protection of the existing structures, the practice of hand-dug underpinning has largely been phased out from consideration in the UK.

From a safety viewpoint, underpinning is probably the most dangerous subgrade activity that is currently tracked by the NYC DOB. Of the 27 injuries reported in the 2004 to 2008 snapshot of the incident database that was provided to HRCO, approximately 33% could be related to underpinning based on description. Two fatalities associated with underpinning were reported in 2006 when material fell onto workers. The number of underpinning injuries was roughly twice that of sheeting, shoring, and bracing operations, and about equal to the combined number of trenching and general excavation injuries. Injuries also appear to be disproportionate to the number of incidents. More than 35% of the underpinning incidents involve injury. The injury to incident ratio for sheeting, shoring, and bracing is between about 20 and 25% depending upon how incidents are categorized (e.g., an incident that occurs during excavation work could fall into either category if it is associated with a failure to provide shoring). For excavations alone the ratio is about 15%. However, if trenching is added to the general excavation descriptions, the injury to incident ratio reaches the same 20% level seen in sheeting, shoring, and bracing.

2004-2008 Incident Database (NYC DOB)

	Sheeting Shoring Bracing	*Underpinning*	*Trenching*	*Excavation*	*Miscellaneous*	*Total*
Reports	23	24	7	42	20	116
Fatality	2	2	1	-	1	6
Injury	5	9	4	6	3	27

Figure D.8.3: *Incident reports for the period from 2004 to 2008*

Permitted on-site drawings were found to be out-of-date, in that they did not reflect field changes made by the designer or depicted details which were not used. The underpinning details were based on unproven preconstruction assumptions for the site conditions and adjacent structures. In some cases, permit drawings were submitted with generic designs apparently as “insurance” should conditions be encountered that would require underpinning.

Contractors reported that test pits were performed on a few of the sites to verify design assumptions in advance of construction, but records and documentation were not available for review. The permit drawings were rarely amended to reflect changes resulting from the additional information obtained. Although verbal approval of the designer was commonly quoted, most contractors could not provide any supporting documentation (letters, field sketches, drawing mark-ups, etc.) for construction variations from permit drawings.

Figure D.8.4: *17-ft Underpinning installed at a rear yard as a retaining wall*

Of the sites where underpinning was indicated on the permitted design drawings, less than 20% (10 sites) were described as 2 lift construction. The majority of underpinning encountered was single lift construction with heights less than 8 or 9 feet.

Acording to Winterkorn and Fang (1975),

> If the difference in elevation between the existing floor and new subgrade is less than 7 or 8 feet, the earth pressure on a three-foot-thick underpinning wall can be ignored. When this depth is greater, the earth pressure behind the underpinning could be sufficient to displace the underpinning laterally, making it necessary to provide horizontal…support. Lateral movement of the underpinning will cause serious cracking of the building and a failure of the bracing can cause a collapse…

The FHWA (Report No. FHWA-RD-75-130; Lateral Support Systems and Underpinning) provides some guidance on the selection, design, and installation of underpinning. Most of the available data upon which the report was based is described as “qualitative.” The authors remark that the published accounts rarely report on performance, instead choosing to concentrate on “…the ‘art’ of the technique rather than the engineering fundamentals.”

The FHWA states that temporary shoring will be required if the structural integrity of the structure being underpinned will be adversely affected during the underpinning operation. The design of a temporary support system is identified as a geotechnical and structural problem. Shoring must consider the condition of the existing footing and walls and the potential need to reinforce or rebuild these elements as necessary prior to underpinning. The moment and shear capacity of the existing walls must also be considered.

Underpinning is currently permitted by submission of a design drawing package which may be part of a new building (NB) or an alteration-type (most commonly an Alt-2) application. The drawings must be prepared and sealed by a Professional Engineer or Architect. Special inspections are mandatory, and a TR1 form must be filed identifying the responsible party.

Currently, underpinning submittals are not technically reviewed by DOB during permitting. Voluntary design drawing audits are offered by the Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations (SEU).

According to the responses received to date from the HRCO benchmarking survey nearly 88% of jurisdictions stated that a detailed or partial technical review was performed on permit applications for permanent systems. A self-certification program for permanent systems was in place in only 25% of the jurisdictions. The survey did not differentiate between underpinning and permanent basement walls.

Recommendation Approach

The depth of required underpinning should be determined by the designer, and it should be categorized as follows:

> Shallow – the total depth of underpinning is less than or equal to 8 feet.
>
> Deep – the total depth of underpinning is greater than 8 feet.

The depth of underpinning should be taken as the difference between the design bearing elevation of the completed pit or pier, and the elevation of the soil or the lowermost floor level behind the footing or foundation being underpinned. In the absence of on-site measurement, where a basement is known to exist, the depth of retained soil behind the existing foundation should not be assumed to be less than 2 feet.

Permitting of shallow underpinning should include submission of design drawings prepared and sealed by a professional engineer, and the completion of forms and applications as required by the Department of Buildings.

The submittal requirements for permitting deep underpinning should include design drawings, site documentation (geotechnical and precondition survey reports), and supporting design calculations prepared and sealed by a professional engineer. An installation procedure would also be required from the contractor selected to do the work. The deep underpinning submittal will be technically reviewed by the Department of Buildings in advance of construction.

The designer should be responsible for verifying the stability of the existing structure regardless of the depth of underpinning. The underpinning design should consider the unbraced length and eccentricity of the existing wall assuming it has been underpinned and fully excavated to the design level. Unless sufficient connectivity can be documented through historic design drawings or on-site investigation, the basement or first floor slab should not be assumed to be a point of lateral restraint against wall movement into the excavation. Temporary soil berms, and/or raker shores designed by a professional engineer should be provided as required for stability.

Additional HRCO Observations

The HRCO understands that the SEU is reportedly considering the creation of a new work and permit type for underpinning. They report that in their experience, severe damage to structures and personal injuries/fatalities are most likely to involve simple concrete underpinning of 1 to 4-story properties with height of pins from 4-8 feet.

This illustrates the distinction in safety issues associated with shallow underpinning. These issues are most often associated with site conditions and construction methods and are best addressed by pre-construction meetings and proper inspection.

Improper or unqualified construction notwithstanding, it is likely that the majority of the problems reported can be traced to inadequate shoring of lightly loaded structures. Failure of properly designed underpinning with pin heights less than 4 or 5 feet would be expected to be exceedingly rare. The forces involved in the design of shallow underpinning for typical foundation dimensions are largely insensitive to the assumptions made in the analysis. For a 2 to 3-foot wide pin, a number of grossly significant errors would need to be made to under-design the underpinning element.

The “luck” of compensating errors runs out, however, when pin heights approach 7 or 8 feet. Boiler plate element sizing based on typical footing dimensions, and standard construction sequences which rely on experience, may not be adequate for the greater height of underpinning. Proof of a detailed analysis by a knowledgeable and experienced designer should be mandatory for these situations, to address safety issues principally associated with design.

The geotechnical design of hand-dug underpinning should include checks for sliding, overturning, and most importantly bearing capacity. The analysis procedures are fundamentally similar to those required for a gravity retaining wall, and they should be performed for the fully excavated condition and all relevant intermediate stages of construction (e.g., the cantilever stage prior to installation of any lateral restraint). Push piles and micropiles should be designed using conventional procedures applicable to deep foundation elements. Any eccentricity created by the limitations of underpinning installation should be considered in the analyses. Regardless of the system utilized it should be recognized that the underpinning is a permanent alteration of the building foundation. Predictions of the potential structure settlements and lateral movements should be mandatory.

The problem of structural integrity of the building being underpinned should be addressed in the precondition survey report. The evaluation of the need for, and the design of, a temporary shoring system is a fundamental part of the underpinning designer’s responsibility, and this recommendation does not relieve that responsibility. The maximum length of the existing footing which can be underpinned at any given time is entirely based on the condition of the existing foundation and the load on the footing. It varies from structure to structure.

The recommendation is structured to require designers to submit proof at the permit application stage that the deep underpinning is adequately designed. Unless all underpinning will be reviewed, a sorting mechanism will be necessary for the management of the submittals that may be reviewed by DOB. The recommendation as structured will capture underpinning with pin heights of 6 feet or greater. As discussed above, underpinning can be poorly designed and still function effectively at lesser pin heights. Problems associated with poor construction and contractor inexperience would not be revealed by technical review of the shallow designs, and for the situation where a limited quantity of reviews will be performed, DOB effort would best be directed elsewhere. However, the problems associated with temporary shoring should not be overlooked, and consideration could be given to including the height of the underpinned structure (perhaps as a ratio to pin height) in the sorting process.

D.9 RECOMMENDATION E-3: PRECONSTRUCTION SURVEYS

DOB should provide minimum requirements for a preconstruction survey that defines the baseline condition of adjacent and influenced structures on, and surrounding, a project site. A professional engineer should be responsible for submitting the survey.

Description

Preconstruction surveys provide the baseline for evaluating the affect of construction operations on adjacent structures and facilities. They are the primary means of evaluating the risk and suitability of a construction operation such as underpinning. The construction environment in NYC makes Preconstruction Surveys all the more important. In large part, this is because of the significant percentage of vintage structures subjected to lot-line to lot-line construction. Many of these buildings have unique and not well documented or understood structural systems. Careful review is necessary before undertaking construction that directly impacts the load bearing characteristics of the foundation system of these buildings.

Even in their most basic form, when circumstances or denied access limits the amount of information to that which can be seen or inferred from the project site, preconstruction surveys are necessary for defining the design envelope for excavations, earth retention systems, and underpinning.

However, Information about the dimensions and structural conditions of adjacent building foundations, basements, and superstructure is often omitted from earth retention and underpinning permit drawings. Insufficient or misleading information based on unverified assumptions and sub-standard due diligence practice results in frequent field design changes that are often undocumented.

18% of Contractors (or Site Contacts) could not verify that a preconstruction survey was performed prior to construction. Of those that responded that a survey was done, only one could produce a copy of the assessment report for HRCO review.

The participants in the Excavation Subcommittee cited refused license to enter as a major impediment to the performance of preconstruction surveys. Section 3309.4 of the Building Code addresses this issue, but the counsel for DOB has reported that enforcement of the provision is difficult, and the right of entry has not been tested in the local court.

The Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations (SEU) in conjunction with DOB counsel is researching and drafting a Party-Wall agreement to attempt to address the legal issues associated with obtaining a license to enter an adjoining property. DOB has reported providing assistance with arranging for access upon request to designers. However, there is no legal backing in the form of a statute to force cooperation of reluctant adjacent property owners.

The service provided by DOB in these situations is more akin to that of an arbitrator, than an enforcement agency.

Of the respondents to date for the HRCO benchmark survey, 50% of jurisdictions report that a preconstruction survey of adjacent structures is required. When requirements were available for review they were found to be broad statements that required establishment of the foundation type and depth, evaluation of the condition of affected walls and foundations, determination of utility locations, and an assessment of the existing building stability (or safety).

Figure D.7.8: *Shoring installed after the 16-inch lean of the existing structure was discovered by the contractor*

Recommendation Approach

DOB could provide a guidance document to industry outlining the minimum requirements for preconstruction surveys. For example, as a minimum, the preconstruction report should include as appropriate:

1. Site surveys performed by a licensed land surveyor,
2. Vertical and lateral surveys to establish the elevation and lean of existing structures,
3. Size, number of basements, and type of construction of existing structures,
4. Foundation information (type, bearing elevation, dimensions, and loading),
5. Structural condition assessments documenting readily visible signs of distress, disrepair, or pre-existing damage,
6. An evaluation of the integrity of the structure, and its ability to withstand the loads or changes in support condition which may be imposed by planned construction activity,
7. A recommended maximum vertical and horizontal movement, and peak particle velocity which the structure may be subject to without undue damage or distress,
8. Recommendations for the performance of additional investigations as may be required for the design of temporary or permanent bracing, shoring, structural ties or reinforcement if this work is anticipated but is outside the scope of the engineer preparing the report.

The report should include a narrative and all supporting photographs, digital video, historic design drawings, amended record drawings, test pit logs, field measurements, calculations, and reference standards as deemed necessary by the professional engineer. The report should be submitted to the Department of Buildings as part of the permit application.

The list provided above is intended to identify the major categories of a typical examination and investigation survey. Depending upon the age, condition, landmark status, value, and proximity of the structure to the planned construction, some categories may be omitted, or additional detail may be required in any one or all of the categories mentioned. It is expected that the responsible engineer will make use of various investigative tools (supplemental borings, test pits, structural cores, probes, etc.) and research historic records as necessary to determine the information required for design.

Additional HRCO Observations

Although often found lacking on permit drawings, information describing the adjacent structures (e.g., site surveys, geotechnical reports, original design drawings, and in some cases actual preconstruction surveys) can be produced when requested by the Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations as a part of a Stop Work Order engineering audit. In some cases it appears that the documents may not have been made available to all members of the design team.

The recommendation is intended to help clarify the design and construction due diligence requirements that are unique to the dense, built-out urban environment of New York City. The recommendation is directed toward improving compliance with existing requirements.

D.10 RECOMMENDATION E-4: MONITORING DURING EXCAVATIONS

The excavation, earth retention system, or underpinning designer should identify all influenced structures, and should establish a monitoring program for the construction operation, meeting minimum requirements established by DOB.

Description

Most monitoring programs (exclusive of those associated with Landmark structures) are instituted at the discretion of the General Contractor. When questioned contractors stated that they rely upon visual identification of damage or distress (cracking, distortion, owner complaint, etc.) in surrounding buildings before initiating any monitoring program. A significant degree of damage may have occurred prior to becoming noticeable to the visual observation.

Where lateral building movements are monitored, it is generally done using optical instruments by a subcontract surveyor. The use of inclinometers to measure ground movements behind an earth retention system is not widespread, although tiltmeters are used occasionally to evaluate building movements.

Of the active sites visited by the HRCO, roughly 30% did not have a monitoring program in place during excavation operations.

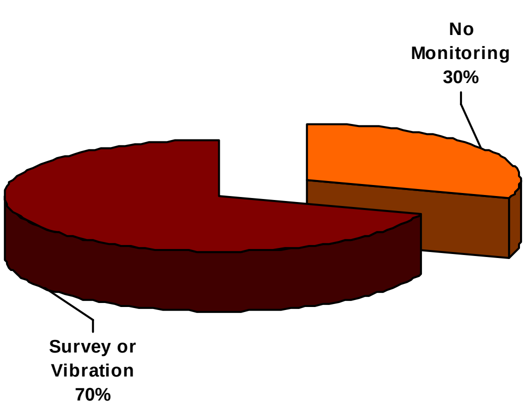


Figure D.10.1: *Monitoring of adjacent structures*

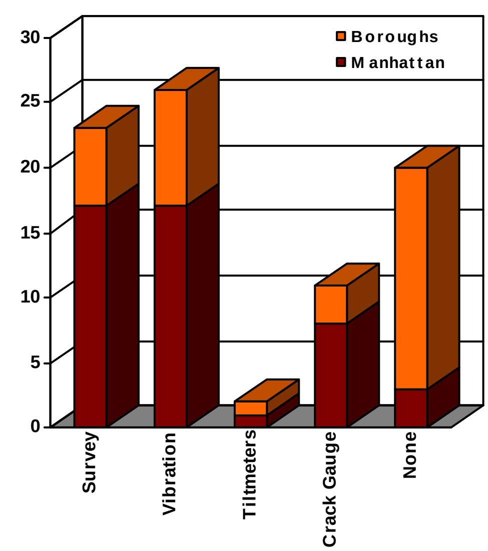


Figure D.10.2: *Number of sites with monitoring (by category)*

About 21% of the sites had damage to adjacent structures (settlement or visibly discernable distress) which could be attributed to earth retention and/or underpinning operations.

Figure D.10.3: *Extensive structural cracking of upper stories with superficial repair*

Figure D.10.4: *Cracking and lateral displacement of below grade wall during underpinning*

Soil or pavement settlement behind installed earth retention systems was observed at 17% of the sites.

Figure D.10.5: *Sidewalk cracking and subsidence extending to the curbline*

Figure D.10.6: *Localized soil loss and structural collapse of unsupported sidewalk*

Of those jurisdictions that have responded to the HRCO benchmarking survey, 60% reported that monitoring of adjacent structures is required during construction. Surveying to evaluate vertical and lateral movements and vibration monitoring are the most common requirements.

The 1968 NYC Building Code does not contain any provisions for monitoring. A Technical Policy and Procedure Notice was issued in 1988 for Landmark structures.

TPPN 10/88 - Procedures for the Avoidance of Damage to Historic Structures Resulting from Adjacent Construction When Subject to Controlled Inspection by Section 27-724 and for Any Existing Structure Designated by the Commissioner.

The architect or engineer designated for Controlled Inspection of Construction Required for or Affecting the Support of Adjacent Properties or Buildings required by Section 27-724 (C26-lll2.6l shall institute a monitoring program for adjacent historic structures and for any existing structure designated by the Commissioner.

The program includes:

Establishment of a peak particle velocity design criteria during the driving of sheeting or blasting operations. The maximum permissible peak particle velocity shall be 0.5 in/sec (13mm/sec) with no distance criterion, and the maximum permissible peak velocity shall be reduced if movements or cracking is detected.

Establishment of criteria for any temporary retaining wall structure. The maximum permissible horizontal and vertical movement of the temporary retaining wall system shall be designed in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice.

Establishment of movement criteria for the historic building. The maximum permissible movement shall be 0.25 in (6mm).

Establishment of criteria for ground water. The lowest water level shall be determined by periodic ground water monitoring at observation wells, seasonably adjusted and designated as the "low datum" prior to the start of the excavation operations. Limitation on water drawdown shall be considered in the criteria for the retaining system.

The 2008 Building Code includes a broad requirement for monitoring under Chapter 18:

1814.3 Monitoring of influenced structures. A land surveyor or engineer shall monitor the behavior of influenced structures during construction and for as long as necessary after construction concludes, as determined by the commissioner.

The HRCO has not identified any conflict between the existing code language and the proposed recommendation. It should be noted that the landmark building displacement and vibration criteria is likely to be too restrictive for general construction.

Recommendation Approach

DOB could provide a guidance document to Industry outlining the minimum requirements for monitoring of influenced structures.

Influenced structures should be identified by the engineer, based on the type of operations being conducted. Considerations for defining influenced structures could include (but should not be limited to):

1. Shares a common wall, footing or foundation, or other structural element with the construction site, or
2. Is sited immediately adjacent to the property line nearest the construction activity, or
3. Is sited within the effective radius of construction related vibrations, or

In the case of excavations or below ground work

4. Is sited such that any footing or foundation bearing elements are located within the area that projects upward from the base of the cut on a 45 degree angle, or
5. Is sited such that grade-supported elements, or portions thereof, are located within the area that projects upward from the base of the cut on a 45 degree angle, or
6. Is sited such that the invert of an existing utility is located within the area that projects upward from the base of the cut on a 45 degree angle.

The zone of influence should be measured from the nearest point of the construction activity to the structure being evaluated.

The above definition of zone of influence serves as a default based on common practice. The designer must make the judgement as to whether the surrounding structure qualify as influenced.

The details of the monitoring program should be included in the design drawings submitted to the Department of Buildings for permit. As a minimum, the details should include the type of instrumentation, installation requirements and locations where applicable, schedule of readings and reporting, threshold and maximum limit criteria for vertical and horizontal movement, threshold and maximum limit criteria for permissible peak particle velocities associated with vibrations, contact information for the designer and the Department of Buildings, notification and construction procedures should the threshold criteria be exceeded.

Additional HRCO Data

Studies (Clough and O'Rourke, 1990; Son and Cording, 2005) indicate that 2 to 3 inches of settlement can occur before visual evidence of distress is apparent. Most underpinning design documents, texts, and publications state that vertical movements of 0.25 to 0.5 inches should be expected with typical concrete underpinning.

Most vibration monitoring programs are based on, or make reference to, the U.S. Bureau of Mines Report of Investigation 8507 (Siskind et al., 1980b). The study focused on homes located adjacent to mining facilities with active blasting. Velocity time histories were obtained outside those structures that sustained threshold sized cracks. No blasts with dominant frequencies below 5 Hz or above 40 Hz (construction level) were monitored during the observation period.

The limit shown by the solid line was developed only as an initial proposal for frequency control. It was not intended to be used as regulatory tool.

According to Cording

> In most states, allowable construction induced ground motions range from 0.5 to 1.0 inches per second (in/sec) and under certain conditions up to 2.0 in/sec. However, ground motion as low as 0.02 in/sec can be perceived, and repeated motions throughout the day as low as 0.1 in/sec can cause annoyance… Cosmetic cracking from construction vibrations has not been observed below peak particle velocities of 0.8 in/sec.

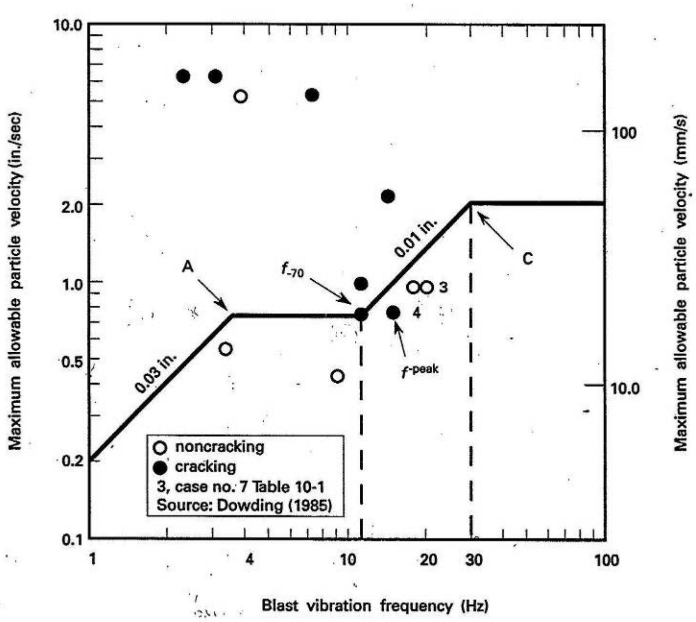


Figure D.10.7: *Frequency-based velocity criteria (US Office of Surface Mining)*

The City of Toronto has recently enacted By-Law No. 514-2008, "To amend City of Toronto Municipal Code Chapter 363, Building Construction and Demolition, with respect to regulation of vibrations from construction activity." It includes provisions for maximum permissible vibrations, a vibration control form, and requirements for preconstruction inspection and monitoring. The maximum permissible vibrations are actually slightly more restrictive than the standard U.S. Bureau of Mines chart.

A broader reinterpretation of vibration monitoring was developed for the Boston Central Artery project. The requirements included consideration of the source of vibration and the type (and condition) of the structure being affected. The project specifications included a provision that required the design engineer to establish thresholds for acceptable vibrations for the relevant section of the awarded work. The thresholds were required to be below the maximum values defined by the Massachusetts Highway Department.

CITY OF TORNTO BY-LAW NO. 514-2008

Table 1.0: Prohibited Construction Vibrations

Frequency of Vibrations	*Vibration Peak Particle Velocity*	
(hertz)	*(mm/sec)*	*(in/sec)*
Less than 4	8	0.3
4 to 10	15	0.5
More than 10	25	1

Figure D.10.8: *Vibration criteria for Toronto*

Massachusetts Highway Department – Central Artery Tunnel
Design Policy Memorandum No. 1 (Rev 4)

Table 1: Vibration Acceptance Criteria

Structural Category	*Source M*		*Source S*	
	f (Hz)	V_{max} (in/sec)	*F* (Hz)	V_{max} (in/sec)
I	1 - 30	0.5	10 - 60	1.2
	30 - 60	0.5 - 0.7	60 - 90	1.2 - 1.6
II	1 - 30	0.3	10 - 60	0.7
	30 - 60	0.3 - 0.5	60 - 90	0.7 - 1.0
III	1 - 30	0.2	10 - 60	0.5
	30 - 60	0.2 - 0.3	60 - 90	0.5 - 0.7
IV	1 - 30	0.12	10 - 60	0.3
	30 - 60	0.12 - 0.2	60 - 90	0.3 - 0.5
Source M: Continuous or steady state vibration such as vibratory pile drivers, hydromills, large pumps and compressors, bulldozers, trucks, cranes, scrapers, and other large machinery including jackhammers, reciprocating pavement breakers and compactors				
Source S: Transient or impact vibration such as blasting with explosives, drop chisels for rock breaking, buckets, impact pile drivers, wrecking balls and building demolition, gravity drop ground compactors and pavement breakers				

Table 2: Structural Categories

Structural Category	*Definition*	
I	Foundation:	Competent foundations
	Framing:	Reinforced concrete, steel or timber
	Interior Finish:	No plaster
	Examples:	Industrial buildings, bridges, masts, concrete retaining walls, unburied pipelines
II	Foundation:	Concrete or competent masonry
	Framing:	Any framing except as described in III below
	Interior Finish:	No plaster
	Examples:	Engineered concrete and masonry buildings, masonry retaining walls and buried pipelines
III	Foundation:	Less competent masonry
	Framing:	Horizontal timber framing supported on masonry walls
	Interior Finish:	Any finish including plaster
	Examples:	"Non-engineered" buildings
IV	Buildings that are extremely susceptible to damage from vibration	

Figure D.10.9: *Structure and source based velocity criteria for vibrations*

Additional HRCO Observations

Risks to structures, workers, and the public can be mitigated by proactive, rather than reactive monitoring. When monitoring is active, construction practices which are contributing to ground movements can be identified and arrested before surrounding buildings are damaged by the activity.

The visual inspection of surrounding structures should not be relied upon as a useful means of monitoring. While all structures are different, a practical limit on settlement and lateral movement should be developed. Industry should be required to provide thresholds, for their own interests, the safety of others, and to demonstrate that the surrounding structures are adequately being protected by the design. The thresholds serve as alerts to control the excavation. As the enforcement authority, the Department of Buildings should provide (and industry will undoubtedly expect) the non-exceedance, or maximum, limit.

For settlement, a maximum of 0.75 to 1 inch is probably a reasonable limit for most modern steel and reinforced concrete structures. For a majority of modern steel and reinforced concrete structures on continuous or spread-type footings, a vertical foundation settlement in the range of 1 inch is often incorporated into the design. Lateral movements at the foundations should not be more than 1 inch.   The sway of the structure is the main concern, and the height must be considered. Again most structures incorporate some lateral movement in their design. However, regardless of what not-to-exceed limit that might be set by DOB, the designer must set structure-specific thresholds. This is particularly important in NYC given the significant number of older and potentially fragile structures.

For vibrations, the standard nuisance-based 0.5 in/sec criteria is a reasonable limit. Most construction complies with the current requirement. However, given the increase in the size and capacity of construction equipment (and the growing preference for rock excavation in New York City) an increase to 1 in/sec may be prudent.

Obviously, modern structures can resist slightly more movements, fragile structures considerably less. Anything more restrictive than the suggested limits would be difficult to demonstrate in advance given the degree of accuracy of performance prediction in most analyses. The key component is for industry to recognize the need to make the predictions as part of the design, and then to verify the performance during construction.

It should also be recognized that the maximum limits established by the Department of Buildings, will inevitably be too restrictive for some projects. In such cases, a mechanism will be necessary for professional engineers to appeal the maximum limits. The appeal should be justified by sufficient documentation and calculation to demonstrate that the approach being considered is the best available, that the risk is being managed to the best extent possible, and that the oversight will be extensive.

D.11 RECOMMENDATION E-5: MINIMUM DRAWING STANDARDS

Design submittals for excavation, earth retention, or underpinning permits should include sufficient plan, section, and detail drawings as necessary to convey the full intent and scope of the construction. DOB should establish minimum requirements for submittals.

Description

The quality and content of drawings submitted for permit is currently addressed as a “Standard Practice” issue. Designers are expected to provide a level of detail sufficient to enable local contractors familiar with the activity to bid and either directly build, or develop construction drawings from the permit documents.

Largely to facilitate their own review, major metropolitan areas such as Chicago, Los Angeles, and Seattle have published documents, or made them available on building department websites, that detail the minimum requirements (content and supporting documentation) of excavation, earth retention, and underpinning design submittals. The guidelines have the effect of standardizing submittals, enabling reviewers to concentrate on the engineering (suitability and performance) aspects of the design rather than auditing for content.

The quality and content of on-site permit drawings vary extensively from job to job. Site information relating to adjacent structures, utilities, streets, and the public right-of-way is often incomplete or absent from the drawings altogether.

Data provided by the NYC DOB Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations shows:

1. More than 2,520 sites inspected between July 2007 and December 2008
2. Approximately 54% (1,370) were in Support of Excavation (SOE) Phase
3. 56% (764 of 1,370) of inspections resulted in a Stop Work Order (SWO)
4. 66% (503 of 764) of SWO sites were audited by SEU Engineers
5. 84% (424 of 503) failed initial audit

In response to their findings, the SEU is drafting a “Support of Excavation (SOE) Requirements” document. The purpose of the self-described bulletin is to define what constitutes "adequate" construction documents pursuant to 27-157, 27-162 (1968 BC) and 28-104.7.1, BC 106.7, BC 106.8 (2007 NYC Construction Code), and “Berger Memorandum” of 12/05/1986 as related to Support of Excavation (SOE) and related foundation work.

Based on the drawings reviewed by the HRCO, coordination and cooperation between the architect, structural, and subgrade designers do not always seem to be sufficient to provide a suitable, cost-effective design. In some cases “boiler-plate” details are substituted for site-based design to secure a permit. The details are often incomplete and they are not suitable for construction.

When questioned, designers complained that they were unaware of any standard defining the content of design drawings. The excavation, earth retention, and underpinning design is not considered to be an integral part of construction, and it is often overlooked (or ignored) until late in the project timeline. The process of Professional Certification is commonly used to accelerate the permitting process.

Inadequacies (ranging from minor elevation issues to potentially un-constructible details) were identified at approximately 46% of the active construction sites where earth retention system drawings were available for review by the HRCO.

Minimal dimensioning is provided on permit drawings. Most plan drawings do not tie the design into a fixed reference point that could be verified in the field. Elevations (e.g., foundation bearing, wale or anchor, existing grade) are commonly omitted, and in many cases, the lateral and vertical dimensions must be interpreted by scaling. Frequently, the architectural, structural, and earth retention drawings do not reference a common project elevation. Design information for adjacent structures and facilities (foundation bearing elevation, offset from property line, footing dimensions, etc.) is not consistently included in cross-sections.

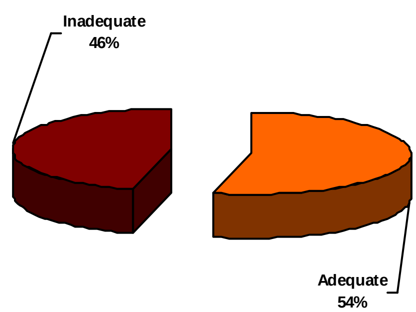


Figure D.11.1: *HRCO Drawing review (in field)*

Permitted earth retention and underpinning design drawings are commonly used as construction documents. Revised drawings are not typically issued to address obstructions or changed conditions that necessitate field changes by the contractor, or to reflect material substitutions. Verbal consent of the designer for the changes is generally related by the contractor.

Recommendation Approach

DOB could provide a guidance document to industry which defines the minimum content requirements for excavation, earth retention, and underpinning design drawings submitted for permit. (Note: monitoring of adjacent and influenced structures is discussed in a separate recommendation).

Content in design drawings should accurately depict the following:

1. Site Plan (Basic Elements)
    a. Adjacent buildings (no. of stories, basements, type of construction, etc.)
    b. Existing known utilities
    c. Property lines

    d. Streets and sidewalks
    e. Excavation limits and slopes
    f. Foundations and/or column lines for proposed construction
    g. Earth retention components (soldier piles, sheet pile, timber shoring, etc.)
    h. Underpinning alignment with sequence
    i. Anchorage components (tiebacks, internal bracing, rakers, etc.)
    j. Dewatering criteria
    k. Section callouts
    l. North arrow

2. Site Plan (Dimensions)
    a. Elevation reference
    b. Setback and encroachment of foundation elements
    c. Retention system offset from property lines and utilities
    d. Center-to-center spacing of soldier piles
    e. Extent of retention system and/or underpinning

3. Cross-Sections (Earth Retention System)
    a. Subsurface soil and groundwater conditions
    b. Existing foundations (type, dimensions, and bearing elevation)
    c. Existing utilities (type, dimensions, and bearing elevation)
    d. Streets and sidewalks
    e. Offset (to foundations and utilities) and encroachment dimensions
    f. Existing grade, intermediate stages, and final excavation elevations
    g. Surcharge assumptions
    h. Temporary earth berm dimensions
    i. Top and tip elevation of sheeting and soldier piles
    j. Anchor and wale elevation
    k. Anchorage dimensions (tieback, bracing, raker, and deadman)
    l. Installation and excavation staging sequence
    m. Groundwater levels assumed for design
    n. At least 1 section at each side of excavation
    o. At least 1 typical section that extends beyond the active zone of the excavation

4. Cross-Sections (Underpinning)
    a. Subsurface conditions (soil/rock type and groundwater)
    b. Existing foundations (type, dimensions, and bearing elevation)
    c. Bearing elevation and allowable bearing pressure
    d. Lift sequence, box pit and pin dimensions
    e. Approach pit dimensions and excavation slopes
    f. Bracing and/or shoring for sideslopes of approach pits
    g. Box pit dimensions and shoring
    h. Anchorage or bracing elevations and dimensions
    i. Installation sequence
    j. Groundwater level assumed for design
    k. Shimming or dry pack requirements and schedule
    l. At least 1 section at each adjacent building
    m. Shoring details for existing superstructure (if applicable)

5. Anchorage (Grouted Tiebacks or Alternate)

   a. Soil or rock type in bond zone
   b. Bonded and unbonded length
   c. Diameter of bond zone
   d. Design capacity and lock-off load
   e. Component sizes (threadbar, hollowbar, tendon)
   f. Inclination angle
   g. Grout strength
   h. Proof and production test requirements and schedule
   i. Raker or bracing component sections and dimensions
   j. Raker or bracing design loads and prestress (if applicable)

6. Connections, Misc. Details, and Specifications
   a. Size/extent of welds
   b. Electrode type
   c. Stiffener plates (spacing and dimensions)
   d. Wale support and/or knee brace dimensions
   e. Bearing plate dimensions
   f. Splice detail

7. Material specifications (steel grade, lagging, concrete strength, etc.)
   a. Reinforcement
   b. Bar and dowel sizes
   c. Spacing
   d. Lengths
   e. Bend requirements

8. Dewatering Plan (*typically by specialty contractor other than excavation, earth retention, or underpinning designer*)
   a. Layout plan (well point, well, sump locations, etc.)
   b. Pump size
   c. Anticipated flow
   d. Anticipated drawdown radius
   e. Discharge point and volume
   f. Groundwater monitoring/testing requirements

The list provided above is intended to address the major components of a typical excavation, earth retention, or underpinning design. Depending upon the complexity, risk, and timeline of the construction some items may not apply, or additional detail may be required in any one or all of the categories mentioned. Unique site conditions (management and control of surface water, temporary impoundment of spoil, and stockpiling of debris, etc.) should be depicted when they can directly affect the construction operation, and may impact the structures, facilities and safety of individuals beyond the property limits.

Additional HRCO Observations

In addition to defining a “Standard Practice” the establishment of nominal content is a pre-requisite for efficient and effective review. It is expected that published guidelines will result in a greater emphasis on due diligence and internal review among designers prior to permit submittal. In addition, contractors will be provided with a more consistent product from which to bid and build.

D.12 RECOMMENDATION E-6: LIMITED TECHNICAL REVIEW

Require pre-permit technical review of excavation, earth retention system, and underpinning permit designs.

Description

The New York City Department of Buildings created the Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations (SEU) in 2007. The unit operates City-wide. The engineering audits performed by this unit act as a de-facto technical review during construction. The audits are triggered by referrals from inspectors in conjunction with issuance of a Stop Work Order.

Projects that are referred for audit must supply documentation (including site plans, design drawings, site investigation reports, etc.) to the assigned SEU engineer. The engineer may also perform a site visit to retrieve on-site design drawings and confirm the findings of the inspector. The engineer reviews the provided drawings and documentation and compiles a list of objections which is provided to the designer.

After the designer has made drawing revisions to the satisfaction of the SEU engineer, the project is recommended for a Stop Work Order rescind. An on-site meeting is scheduled with the inspector that issued the order, and once satisfied with the measures taken to correct the drawings and construction procedures the Stop Work Order is rescinded.

According to SEU statistics, the audit process in times of peak construction can average 28 days or more. The final rescind of the Stop Work Order may lag the engineer's recommendation by several days to a few weeks depending upon the scheduling of the inspector and the state of the construction site at the time of the re-inspection.

NYC Industry Practice

The current Department of Buildings practice of submittal reviews based on fire, egress, and zoning will not capture technical deficiencies or incomplete subgrade site designs. Random audits are performed infrequently and are not standardized.

Other local NYC agencies (e.g., MTA and DEP) already require technical review of submittals which affect their structures and facilities.

The Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations (SEU) has initiated - and through their outreach efforts made industry aware of - a pre-submittal audit service for excavation, earth retention, and underpinning permits. The program is a voluntary consultation service for designers, and it is offered by appointment.

The SEU has indicated a preference to require, initially, a technical review of all sheeting/shoring/bracing and underpinning permits related to new building (NB) permits. For the fiscal year of 2007 (ending July 2007), the SEU reported that 5,600 NB permits were issued. For 2008 the number dropped to about 4,200 permits, and it is projected to be approximately 2,500 to 3,000 at end of 2009. Once the review program has been established for NB permits, the scope would expand to all applications (Alt 1, 2, and 3) involving excavation, earth retention, and underpinning.

In order to identify and improve tracking of Alteration-type permits, the SEU has considered adding two new work and permit types specifically for support of excavation (SOE) and underpinning.

The engineers within the SEU currently audit permit drawings for projects that are referred by their field inspection staff. Between July 2007 and December 2008, the SEU audited roughly 500 of the 2,500 sites inspected. The failure rate of the permitted drawings was reported to be 84%.

The HRCO review of design drawings identified inadequacies including potentially un-constructible details in 46% of those available for review.

According to the responses received to date from the HRCO benchmarking survey, approximately 62% of jurisdictions polled perform a detailed or partial technical review of plans and calculations in advance of permitting for temporary works (essentially excavations and earth retention systems). Self-certification (equivalent of NYC Professional Certification) was reported in 38% of the jurisdictions.

When defined as permanent systems (underpinning or integrated retention/foundation systems such as slurry walls or secant piles) nearly 88% of jurisdictions stated that detailed or partial technical review was performed. A self-certification program for permanent systems was in place in only 25% of the jurisdictions.

Depending upon volume, staff size, and level of expertise required, the reviews may be performed by full-time building department engineers, or they may be subcontracted to local specialty engineering firms.

Recommendation Approach

As a minimum plan submittals for excavations, earth retention systems, and underpinning designs that extend more than 10 or 12 feet below existing grade should be technically reviewed as a pre-requisite to permit approval by the Department of Buildings. Submittals for designs that extend less than defined depth below grade would not be excluded from review, but those reviews would be performed at the discretion of the Department of Buildings. The technical review should include, but not be limited to, code compliance, soundness of the analysis, completeness of the drawing package, and feasibility of the construction. DOB should review the results of the technical review on a regular basis to assess whether review of a greater (or lesser) number of permits is warranted.

The existing grade should be defined relative to the pre-construction site grade, or the average grade of the surrounding properties, streets, and sidewalks. Existing grade should not include mass excavation to lower site grades unless that excavation is performed to lower the permanent site grade to a level equivalent to surrounding properties. For example, the 2009 IBC defines the grade plane as:

> “A reference plane representing the average of finished ground level adjoining the building at *exterior walls*. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the *exterior walls*, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the *lot line* or, where the *lot line* is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building, between the building and a point 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building”

In the case of open cut excavations (i.e., angle of repose) the defined depth could refer to the deepest extent of soil removal below existing grade.

In all other cases, the defined depth could be applied to the penetration below existing grade of the components which support the excavation (e.g., soldier piles, sheet piles, underpinning pit or pier).

The professional engineer responsible for an excavation, earth retention system, or underpinning design subject to review would provide copies of all design drawings, site assessment reports (including but not limited to site surveys, precondition surveys, geotechnical investigation reports), supporting calculations, and relevant reference materials as may be requested by the commissioner.

Additional HRCO Observations

If the volume of permit applications remains at the levels forecast by the SEU, a staff of 5 engineers would need to review about 50 to 60 applications per week. These reviews would only address excavations, earth retention and underpinning associated with NB permits. If the remaining permit types (Alt 1, 2, and 3) are added to the queue the workload would be expected to increase substantially.

According to the data published on the BIS website, for the period from January through August 2008, the Alt 2 filings ranged from about 3,500 to 5,000 per month. Assuming only a small fraction of the submittals involve excavation, earth retention, or underpinning the review workload could potentially double.

We have suggested using a depth criteria of 10 to 12 feet as a screening tool to reduce the volume of submittals for which a review by DOB would be mandatory. If review of all submittals is considered additional staff hires, or subcontracting reviews to local engineering firms would be the most likely means to accommodate the greater work flow.

D.13 RECOMMENDATION E-7: UNDERPINNING NOTIFICATION

The contractor should notify the Department of Buildings a minimum of 24 hours, but no more than 72 hours (3 working days) in advance of the start of underpinning construction. The notification should be written, and it should include a brief narrative description of the activity including the length and location of underpinning to be installed, height of typical pit or pier, and the estimated duration of construction. The contractor should also be required to provide the same notification to the underpinning designer and to the responsible agent for special inspections if different from the designer.

Description

Under the 1968 code underpinning was identified as a construction procedure for which special inspection is mandatory. The same requirement was adopted into the 2008 NYC Building Code.

Title 1 of the Rules of the City of New York was amended by adding a new Chapter 52 which for expediency of reference is reproduced below. Rule (now Chapter) 52 is a one-time notification requirement related to commencement of excavation activity on a particular site. It does not include provisions for defining the nature of the work, or its anticipated duration.

Effective October 25, 2006, all contractors obtaining permits to conduct earthwork were required to notify the Buildings Department within 24 - 48 hours of the start of excavation by calling (212) 227-4416 per 1 RCNY § 52-01. The permit holder must also notify the Department of delays or cancellations of the work by calling no later than the date the originally specified work was scheduled for (but no more than 24 hours prior to).

The Special Enforcement Unit for Excavations cross references Rule 52 notification data with the New Building and Alteration-type permit issuances to prioritize inspections. Because compliance is not 100% throughout all the Boroughs, inspections are also routed to sites with excavation related permits for which notification could not be verified.

A note regarding Rule 52: it was folded into the new 2008 construction codes – part of BC 3304.3.1. Rule 52 has thus been repealed, and in the balance of this report such actions are referred to as excavation notification requirements.

If the permit holder does not provide notification of the intended earthwork, a violation for “failure to notify” may be written. The Commissioner may issue a minimum three-day Stop Work Order if work is found to violate any of the provisions of the Building Code, Zoning Resolution or other applicable laws, rules or regulations at a site where proper notice was not provided as required.

Compliance with excavation notification requirements is almost universal at larger and mid-size projects in Manhattan. Compliance in the outer Boroughs was difficult to verify, but it is believed to be somewhat less consistent than in Manhattan. When questioned, nearly all moderate and large-size contractors in the Boroughs admitted to being aware of the requirement. The smaller contractors, and those few questioned in Staten Island, were either not aware of the requirement, or felt that it was not their responsibility.

HRCO sites were selected from a list of New Building permits compiled by the NYC DOB Special Enforcement Unit (SEU) for Excavations. The list included more than 3,000 permit filings for all 5 New York Boroughs. Sites were sorted by various means (e.g., Borough, cxcavation notification requirements, key words in the application description, etc.) to create a sublist of sites where excavation, shoring, and/or underpinning activities were anticipated.

The sites selected from the sublist were cross-checked by address on the NYC DOB Building Information System (BIS). Filings and actions were reviewed to determine project status and to identify sites where subgrade work was potentially in progress.

This method of identification produced an overall “hit” rate of active sites (defined as a contractor on-site and available access) in the range of 40 to 45%. In the month of August rates for the HRCO were as low as 35% in some cases. Given the limited available data to make the selections, “hit” rates on initial site visits would not be expected to exceed about 45% without pre-notification.

The SEU process of site selection is similar, although it is augmented by referrals and complaints. Even with the additional information, hit rates estimated by the SEU did not exceed 50 to 60%.

In both cases, however, the likelihood of visiting a site during actual underpinning (or earth retention installation) is much less than the numbers would indicate. The duration of underpinning is often less than a few weeks in a multi-month, or even multi-year project. The startup is highly dependent upon the excavation schedule and the contractor’s organizational work plan.

The participants in the Excavation Subcommittee meetings cited a lack of notification for site activity as a major impediment to special inspections. Anecdotal reports included:

1. Requests for inspection after completion of the underpinning,
2. No notification by the contractor, and
3. Demands by owners that the construction be certified despite the lack of inspection opportunity.

Additional HRCO Observations

The NYC DOB issues site-wide underpinning permits associated with the new building address. Although the permit may be approved and issued, the permission of the affected owner is still required before underpinning construction can begin.

Because it is a one-time requirement, the excavation notification requirements (formerly “Rule 52”) are no longer useful as an indicator of underpinning construction activity. The SEU indicated that the current policy is to ask whether or not underpinning will be performed as a follow-up question when notification is performed. Under the present system, underpinning may not occur for weeks or even months after the excavation notification is provided. If the permits were individual (and filed under the address upon which the underpinning was to be performed), the associated notification of start of excavation for each address could reasonably be expected to be a notification of the start of underpinning. Although the tracking of so many potentially divergent but inter-related permits would likely be unmanageable.

“Underpinning Notification” is intended to help make site construction activity more transparent. The underpinning notification will enable the SEU to route their inspection personnel more effectively to a high-risk operation.

Although the activity requires special inspection, there is no penalty to the contractor for failing to provide adequate notice. It is believed that if contractors are required to directly notify the NYC DOB, the notification of the designer and special inspector will also improve by default.

D.14 RECOMMENDATION E-8: TR1 AND INSPECTION LOG

Critical inspection information, including the TR1 form and a log of special and progress inspections should be maintained on site for the benefit of the construction parties and DOB.

Description

Under the 1968 and new 2008 NYC Building Code, a TR1 form must be filed with the permit application. The form is used to define the responsible registered architect or professional engineer for a project, and designate the special inspection architect or engineer. Until recently a single TR1 was filed for the project. Under the current process, separate TR1 forms must be filed for each permit, and additional forms must be submitted for each construction activity (e.g., underpinning or earth retention) with independent designers.

The special inspection engineer or architect determines the number of inspections to be performed for each construction activity and must maintain a log in his/her office of the completed inspections. The code requires that the minimum number of inspections "…shall not be less than two," and at least one inspection must be pre-construction. The log must be provided to the Department of Buildings upon request for review.

The TR1 form is rarely maintained on-site, and if it is, it may not represent the current responsible parties. Contact information must be obtained from separate documents, and it is often difficult to determine which special inspection architect or engineer is responsible for the various construction operations which may be occurring simultaneously.

The TR1 is currently filed electronically and accessible through the BIS website. The copy on file generally represents the document submitted at the time of permit request. It may be submitted by the owner, the designer, the project architect, structural engineer, or an expediter. When filed by an individual other than the designer, it is often submitted as a "ghost-form" wherein the person assuming responsibility for inspection does so with the sole intent of transferring that responsibility after the permit is issued. The withdrawal of the original applicant and designation of a replacement may not be completed at the time of construction.

The TR1 form was available at less than 5% of the active construction sites visited by the HRCO.

The special inspector was on-site at less than 6% of active construction sites.

About 35% of the contractors (or other site contacts) could not identify the special inspector – 3 sites claimed there was none, and several incorrectly identified the QA/QC representative.

Of those that could identify the special inspector, less than 50% could provide the date of the last site visit.

Earth Retention

Inadequate construction or variation from permitted design was identified at approximately 36% of sites with earth retention systems.

Field variations from permitted design (e.g., changes in member sizes, omitted bracing, substitution of lagging) comprised the largest percentage of deficiencies. Incorrect layout of soldier piles and spacing of lateral bracing was the second largest percentage.

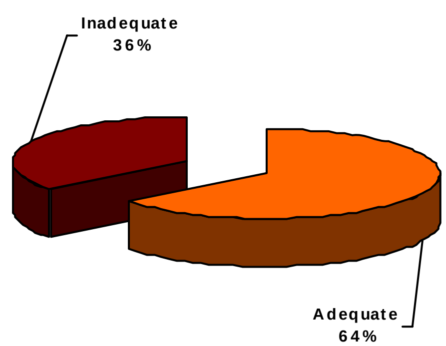


Figure D.14.1: *Earth retention system deficiencies observed by site*

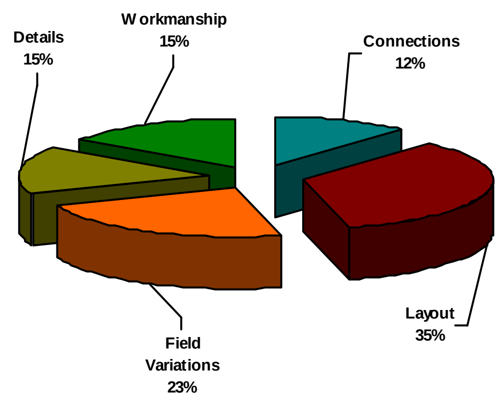


Figure D.14.2: *Earth retention deficiencies observed by category*

Figure D.14.3: *Typical braced retention system. Close-up at right of inadequate (omitted in this case) weld at stub connection to waler.*

Underpinning

Inadequate construction or variation from permitted design was identified at roughly 26% of sites with underpinning.

Failure to comply with the design installation sequence was single largest deficiency for underpinning. Nearly half of the sites at which underpinning construction was in progress violated the installation sequence.

Improper excavation of the approach or box pit comprised the second largest percentage of deficiencies. In many cases the sideslopes of the approach pit were unshored or had slopes significantly steeper than 1:1 (horizontal:vertical). Excavated soil was stockpiled at the edges of the approach pits. Mass excavations along the existing structure were used in lieu of perpendicular excavations equal to the pit or pier width.

When conventional box pits were used, the pit or pier excavation beneath the foundation was advanced with (rather than after shoring and completion) the box pit.

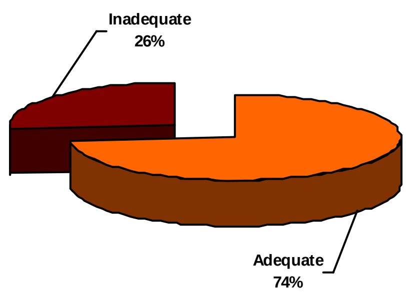


Figure D.14.4: *Underpinning deficiencies observed by site*

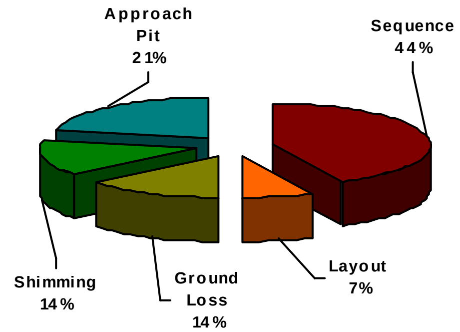


Figure D.14.5: *Underpinning deficiencies observed by category*

Figure D.14.6: *Improper pit excavation*

Figure D.14.7: *Inadequate repair and shimming*

Recommendation Approach

The TR1 form is used to identify special inspections, progress inspections, and tests required for compliance by the responsible design applicant. If an agent other than the responsible design applicant is designated by the owner to perform the work, the responsible design applicant is required to certify that the agent engaged by the owner is acceptable.

TR1 Form

A copy of the TR1 form which identifies the current agent responsible for the performance of the special inspections, progress inspections, and tests should be provided to the general contractor, site safety manager, or other managing authority which maintains a full-time presence on the project site.

Contact information (comprising the full employee, supervisor, and company name; company address; general company and direct phone number; and email if applicable) for the design applicant and the responsible inspection agent should be also provided.

The on-site authority should maintain the TR1 and contact information, either directly available on-site or immediately accessible at a field office, and it should be made it available upon request to the Department of Buildings official and the designer.

Inspection Log

The agent(s) responsible for the performance of the special inspections, progress inspections, and tests should maintain a log documenting site visits.

As a minimum, the log could identify the individual performing the inspection or test, the date of the inspection, the location of the inspection relative to the project scope, a brief description of any corrective action as may be required, and a note documenting when and how the corrective action was performed.

The log should be completed by the responsible agent and initialed by the on-site authority.

The log should be maintained by the on-site authority, either directly available on-site or immediately accessible at a field office, and made available upon request to the Department of Buildings official.

Additional HRCO Observations

The recommendation is intended to provide an on-site document that can be used by the designer, contractor, and the NYC DOB to identify (and contact where necessary) the individuals responsible for special inspections. The log will provide an on-site record of compliance with the inspection requirements. The documents are intended to be field records, and would not replace the submittal of inspection reports and the TR1 sign-off currently required as part of project completion. The intent of the recommendation is to assist the NYC DOB in the performance of their work, and to improve communication between contractors, designers, and inspectors. In cases where the designer does not perform the inspections, the on-site documents will allow the designer to perform a quality assurance check on the inspector during construction.

It is clear from the site observations that the special inspections are too infrequent and often-times inadequate. The majority of deficiencies observed by the HRCO should have been readily identifiable by any reasonably experienced and trained inspector. Because of the variability of the work in terms of duration, method, complexity, contractor schedule, etc., it would be almost impossible to mandate a minimum number of intermittent inspections for excavation related operations. The requirement of full-time inspection is excessive and costly, and it would be heavily resisted by industry.

The designer (not the special inspector) should determine the number of inspections and define the minimum requirements for their performance as part of the project specifications. The determination should be made in consideration of the desired quality of construction and the level of risk the designer and owner are willing to accept in the execution of the construction. The TR1 form could be modified to include an area in which the designer must clearly define the minimum number of required inspections. General language should also be added to explicitly define the responsibility of the owner and the designer as it relates to protection of the surrounding structures and facilities.

The TR1 requires that the designer "accept" the special inspector. Implied in this consent is the acknowledgment that the designer considers the inspector adequately qualified for the performance of the work. Again the designer can best address minimum qualifications in the specifications, but consideration should be given to creating a mechanism which will allow designers to withdraw, or otherwise suspend the construction operation (with the support of the NYC DOB either directly or as an arbitrator) when an inadequate special inspector is selected by others.

D.15 RECOMMENDATION E-9: PRE-CONSTRUCTION SITE MEETING

The contractor should schedule an on-site meeting with the designer and special inspector (as applicable) to walk through the planned operation in advance of the start of construction. The contractor should the notify the Department of Buildings of the time and place of the meeting, and attendance by the NYC DOB should be at their discretion.

Description

An on-site meeting with the designer, contractor, special inspector, and Department of Buildings official in advance of construction to walk through the planned operations. The concept for this recommendation was presented during an industry subcommittee meeting.

The recommendation is designed to re-emphasize the importance of advance site reconnaissance and pre-construction planning. It is believed that a simple site walkthrough can often be sufficient to identify fundamental design flaws and “unanticipated” conditions. While it is unlikely that the NYC DOB could attend all such meetings, the addition of the NYC DOB notification would be expected to encourage compliance with what is ostensibly an existing requirement.

A preconstruction meeting would be important, for example, for identifying neighboring structures that could be sensitive to underpinning operations or ground vibrations.

For the meeting to be of value, industry would likely expect attendance by NYC DOB engineers. Highly experienced, technically proficient inspectors would probably be acceptable alternatives if their qualifications were known to industry, but in general they would expect the meetings to include equivalent peers. The amount of time associated with these meetings should not be expected to be inconsequential, and the addition of this responsibility could reduce the production rate of staff in their existing duties. The recommendation should be viewed as a long-term implementation effort, and the optional participation component is intended to allow the NYC DOB to effectively manage their time and limited resources.

Additional HRCO Observations

The inspection of existing structures during construction are addressed within the provisions of Chapter 16 in the 1968 Building Code. Article 16-01 (d) states that “The controlled inspection architect or engineer should determine the frequency of inspections needed…” and “At a minimum, the site must be inspected twice, once at a preconstruction meeting with the contractor…”

A part of the pre-construction meeting, particularly if DOB is in attendance, should be an assessment of the appropriate frequency of inspections.

This recommendation is related to E-08 (TR-1 and Inspection Log), and the special inspection data from that recommendation is relevant here as well:

- The special inspector was on-site at less than 6% of active construction sites.
- About 35% of the contractors (or other site contacts) could not identify the special inspector – 3 sites claimed there was none, and several incorrectly identified the QA/QC representative.
- Of those that could identify the special inspector, less than 50% could provide the date of the last site visit.

D.16 STATE OF THE PRACTICE

This section serves to provide an overview of construction practices in New York City, and to provide definitions of typical geotechnical terms used elsewhere in this report. The majority of excavation work in NYC utilizes well established, but potentially outdated, methods. The reasons for this are manifold, some of which are discussed in this report. Soldier Pile and Lagging and Classical Underpinning, for example, are predominant methods for earth retention and underpinning, respectively. Newer alternatives to these methods exist, and are widely used elsewhere, but less so in NYC. These newer methods are typically less sensitive to design or construction errors and are likely to promote safety.

The fundamental methods of design and analysis of excavations, earth retention systems, and underpinning are the subjects of numerous engineering textbooks and design manuals. Only a qualitative overview of the most common systems is presented in this report. The “modern” systems discussed below have been in widespread use throughout the US and internationally for some time, and in many areas they have largely supplanted the classical labor-intensive methods. The practice of hand-dug underpinning in particular is diminishing as modern systems continue to demonstrate greater safety in construction, more reliable performance, and more rapid installation.

Many of the more modern systems are installed by specialty contractors and that may partially account for their comparatively slow penetration into the New York City marketplace. Local engineers may be unfamiliar with the design aspects, particularly in the cases of proprietary systems, and contractors may be loathe to subcontract to firms that could be competitors. On a per-unit basis the modern systems can also be underbid by an inexpensive labor force. However, when all the factors of design and construction are considered in the cost-benefit analysis, the modern systems may often be cost competitive.

Construction in New York City is predominantly accomplished in a conventional bottom-up manner. After any existing structures slated for demolition are dismantled or removed and the site is cleared, an excavation is advanced to the lowest level of the planned structure, and the building is constructed floor-by-floor to its final height. Depending upon the size of the planned structure and the site-specific subsurface soil and groundwater conditions, foundations may be constructed from pre-existing grade, or from the excavation subgrade. Cast-in-place below-grade walls can be double formed (front and back) or the earth retention system is encapsulated into the wall to serve as a back-side form and/or long-term waterproofing.

In practical terms, the process of design is heavily influenced by - possibly even dominated by - cost. In a dense, built-out, urban environment such as New York City the premium placed on useable space is such that many projects define their scope by the dimensions of the available lot. Property line to property line development is the rule rather than the exception. To maximize the return on investment, owners and developers naturally give first priority of capital resources to superstructure (above-ground) aesthetics and enhancements to habitable space.

Substructure (foundations, permanent below-grade walls) and the temporary works necessary for construction are direct costs with limited potential for recovery, and there is considerable pressure to reduce these expenditures to whatever extent possible.

The compression of space places restrictions on designers and extends their responsibilities to structures and facilities outside the project site boundaries. As with any site, the selection and design of an appropriate excavation, earth retention, or underpinning system must consider the subsurface conditions, feasibility, and the cost of construction. However, the affect of the construction on the project surroundings is a much more significant consideration for an urban design than it would be for an open-air undeveloped land parcel. The designer is responsible for ensuring that the proposed system will both effectively “enable” the planned construction, and minimize the impact on the pre-existing structures and facilities that surround the site. The designer must consider:

1. The potential loss of foundation support and lateral restraint associated with the advancement of an excavation (resulting from removal of overburden or withdrawal of groundwater),

2. The lateral and related vertical ground movements inherent to every earth retention system and their magnitude and zone of influence beyond the system boundary,

3. The structural integrity of existing buildings adjacent to the site, and their ability to withstand the loads and movements imposed during installation of the system.

For any excavation, earth retention, or underpinning system, performance should be the basis of design. An engineering estimate of ground and structure movements is part of the design process, and without the predictive analysis there is no means to evaluate the system during construction or in service. The empirical methods outlined by Clough and O’Rourke (1989) and O’Rourke (1992) are generally sufficient to predict movements with a reasonable tolerance for most retention systems. Highly complex systems often require the use of a finite element analysis, but the performance predictions are highly subject to the quality of the data used to define the constitutive soil models, the proper initialization of the model, staging, and the application of loading. Boscardin and Cording (1989) examined 18 buildings affected by braced excavations or tunneling, and they developed an interaction diagram to correlate damage to angular distortion and horizontal strain. With reasonable estimates of the limiting deflection ratio and angular distortion for a structure, the potential for damage and the suitability of possible remedial measures can be assessed based on predicted ground movements.

The retention system and surrounding structures should be monitored during construction to validate the assumptions made in the analyses. The early observed behavior should be used to refine design parameters, improve constitutive soil and structural models, and enhance confidence in the prediction. Where the behavior differs markedly from the prediction, construction should be suspended and the basis of analysis and the suitability of the design should be re-evaluated.

Structural collapse is not the most common mechanism by which failure of excavations and earth retention systems are typically defined. The control of support system deformations and the accompanying ground movements, adequate groundwater cutoff, and long-term stability are generally considered the most important design considerations. Puller (2003) summarizes the causes of failure as follows:

1. Inadequate site investigations resulting in optimistic design assumptions of soil, rock strength and groundwater conditions

2. Inadequate appreciation by the designer of susceptibility to settlement of adjacent structures and services

3. Lack of appreciation by the designer of the influence of deflections in the soil support structure and retained soil deformations

4. Inadequate quality of structural detailing

5. Inadequate coordination between designer and constructor

6. Changes in loading from natural conditions – groundwater, tidal states, waves, temperature - and lack of appreciation by the constructor of the possible consequences of these changes

7. Changes in soil and rock conditions and the lack of appreciation by the constructor of the possible consequences

8. Bad workmanship in site temporary works.

In Puller's experience, structural failure of braced and anchored walls usually occurs within the strutting or anchorage, or by passive soil failure resulting from inadequate embedment. Sowers and Sowers (1967) state that failures of sheet pile walls and braced excavations are most often caused by the neglect of backfill loads and surcharges related to construction operations, inadequate allowances for deflections, and poorly designed support systems and connection details.

D.16.1 Excavations

When the available site area is sufficient to contain the slopes, open cut excavations will be more economical in direct cost and construction time when compared to virtually any earth retention system. The depth and slope of an excavation, and groundwater conditions control the overall stability and movements of open excavations. Seepage and groundwater discharge on to the slopes is often overlooked in the design of open cuts, but it can be a significant source of instability in the excavation.

According to the US Naval Facilities Engineering Command (NAVFAC) design manual, instability in granular soils will not extend significantly below the bottom of the excavation if groundwater seepage is controlled. For dry infinite slopes, the stability can be determined simply from the angle of internal friction for the soil and the geometry of the slope.

In cohesive soils, however, the method of analysis must consider both the duration of the excavation and the stress history of the deposit. In normally consolidated soils, short-term slope stability is based on the undrained shear strength of the soils along a failure surface determined from limit equilibrium. Depending upon the project geometry, stability may be heavily influenced by materials located some distance below the base of the excavation. For permanent or long-term excavations, the stability should be based on an effective stress analysis using drained shear strength parameters. Excavations in cohesive soils, particularly in over-consolidated clay, are also subject to bottom heave which is a function of strength, the depth of cut, and the groundwater conditions.

The stability of rock cuts is controlled by the depth and slope of excavation, the joint patterns of the rock mass, in-situ stresses, and groundwater conditions. Slope failures are common in stratified sedimentary rocks, in weathered shales, and in rocks containing platy minerals such as talc, mica, and the serpentine minerals. Failure planes in rock occur most often along zones of weakness or discontinuities (fissures, joints, faults) and bedding planes (strata). The orientation and strength of the discontinuities are the most important factors influencing the stability of rock slopes.

Puller (2003) identifies several commonly used methods to improve the stability of a cut slope:

1. Regrading the profile to a shallower angle, or providing a local soil berm at the toe of the slope,

2. Providing tensioned ground or rock anchors to increase the effective stress on the potential failure surface,

3. Intercepting the potential failure surface with sheet piles, contiguous piles, or mix-in-place pile walls installed from top of the slope,

4. Providing drainage to reduce pore water pressure and increase the effective stress on the potential failure surface,

5. Regrading and providing soil reinforcement (*e.g.,* soil nails or mechanically stabilized earth) to improve the composite soil strength of the slope.

The first two methods would most commonly be applied to short-term excavations. Where the slope is long, or expected to remain open and exposed for a significant length of time, intercepting the failure surface, exterior dewatering, or providing horizontal drainage may be cost-effective. The final method is generally applied only to permanent slopes, although when combined with shotcrete, soil nailing can provide a cost-competitive temporary earth support system. The most significant difference between soil nailing and mechanically stabilized (also commonly called reinforced) earth is the direction of the construction operation. Reinforced earth is a fill process built from the base of the cut upwards, whereas soil nails are installed as the cut proceeds downward from the ground surface.

For the relatively shallow cuts that would expected at most construction sites, the stability of the slopes is determined almost exclusively by material type. The Organizational Health and Safety Administration (OSHA) defines nominal cut slopes for depths of excavation greater than 5 feet. The requirements for sloping and benching are defined in 29 CFR, 1926 Subpart P: Excavations, which was revised in 1989.

OSHA categorizes soil and rock deposits into generic types, as follows:

1. **STABLE ROCK** is natural solid mineral matter that can be excavated with vertical sides and remain intact while exposed. It is usually identified by a rock name such as granite or sandstone. Determining whether a deposit is of this type may be difficult unless it is known whether cracks exist and whether or not the cracks run into or away from the excavation.

2. **TYPE A SOILS** are cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 tons per square foot (tsf) or greater. Examples of Type A cohesive soils are often: clay, silty clay, sandy clay, clay loam and, in some cases, silty clay loam and sandy clay loam. (No soil is Type A if it is fissured, is subject to vibration of any type, has previously been disturbed, is part of a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation on a slope of 4:1 (horizontal to vertical) or greater, or has seeping water.

3. **TYPE B SOILS** are cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength greater than 0.5 tsf but less than 1.5 tsf. Examples of other Type B soils are: angular gravel; silt; silt loam; previously disturbed soils unless otherwise classified as Type C; soils that meet the unconfined compressive strength or cementation requirements of Type A soils but are fissured or subject to vibration; dry unstable rock; and layered systems sloping into the trench at a slope less than 4:1 (only if the material would be classified as a Type B soil).

4. **TYPE C SOILS** are cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 0.5 tsf or less. Other Type C soils include granular soils such as gravel, sand and loamy sand, submerged soil, soil from which water is freely seeping, and submerged rock that is not stable. Also included in this classification is material in a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation or have a slope of 4:1 or greater.

5. **LAYERED GEOLOGICAL STRATA** Where soils are configured in layers, *i.e.*, where a layered geologic structure exists, the soil must be classified on the basis of the soil classification of the weakest soil layer. Each layer may be classified individually if a more stable layer lies below a less stable layer, *i.e.*, where a Type C soil rests on top of stable rock.

OSHA states that the person causing the excavation is responsible for maintaining the stability of adjacent structures through provision of support systems, such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning. Other than those in stable rock, excavations are not permitted to extend below the bearing level of a base or footing of any foundation or retaining wall unless a support system is provided, or a registered engineer determines that the structure is sufficiently removed from the excavation and the excavation will not pose a hazard to employees. The standard also prohibits excavations under sidewalks unless an appropriately designed support system is provided.

D.16.2 Earth Retention

Earth retention systems are broadly categorized by function and design as gravity, cantilever, and anchored walls. Gravity walls derive their capacity through a combination of dead weight and lateral resistance to sliding. Cantilever systems rely on the combined structural resistance of the wall and the passive resistance of the soil in which they are embedded to withstand lateral earth and water pressures. Anchored systems supplement the cantilever action with the tensile capacity of tiebacks embedded in stable soil outside the potential failure surface, or by the use of internal bracing which transfers loads in compression. The retaining wall may provide temporary earth support prior to permanent substructure construction, or it may be incorporated into the final structure.

TABLE V:2-1. ALLOWABLE SLOPES.

Soil type	Height/Depth ratio	Slope angle
Stable Rock	Vertical	90°
Type A	¾:1	53°
Type B	1:1	45°
Type C	1½:1	34°
Type A (short-term)	½:1	63°
(For a maximum excavation depth of 12 ft)		

FIGURE V:2-13. SLOPE CONFIGURATIONS: EXCAVATIONS IN LAYERED SOILS.

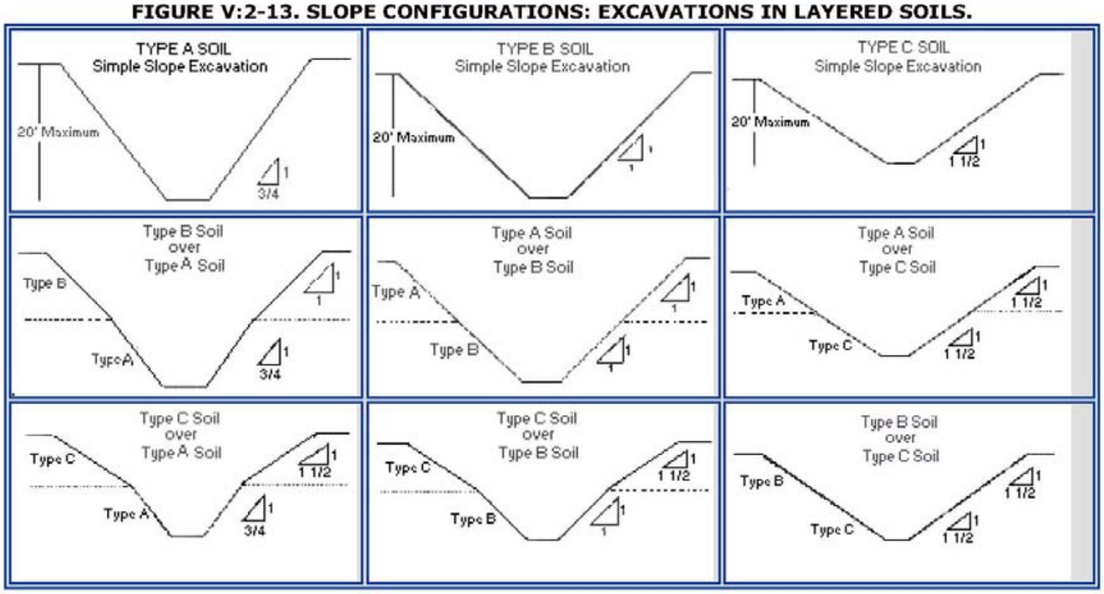


Figure D.16.1: OSHA slope configurations (reproduced from OSHA Technical Manual Section V: Chapter 2)

D.16.2.1 Soldier Pile and Lagging

Soldier pile and lagging is a common and relatively inexpensive earth retention system. In a conventional construction, soldier piles are driven or predrilled at intervals along the wall alignment, and timber lagging is installed between the piles as the excavation proceeds. When a predrilled system is used, the hole is augered through the soil (and/or cored into rock) to the desired embedment depth, and the pile is placed vertically in the borehole which is backfilled with lean concrete to the bottom excavation depth. Depending upon the weight of the soldier pile and the depth of embedment, the concrete may be placed in the borehole and the pile can then be plunged to the design depth.

In non-cantilever applications, tieback anchors and/or internal bracing are installed and stressed (as appropriate) as the excavation proceeds. The lateral thrust from the soldier piles is transferred to the anchorage through steel section walers. Alternatively, if each soldier pile is anchored or braced, the waler can be omitted. The design of the soldier piles is governed by bending.

Figure D.16.2: Soldier pile and lagging with 2 layers of tiebacks supporting a 40-ft excavation

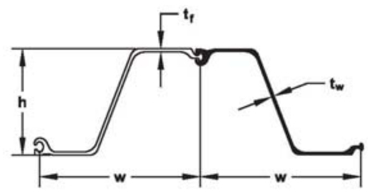
Soldier pile and lagging retention systems are limited to relatively dry ground or dewatered soils which are capable of self-support as each level of lagging is secured. The attachment of the lagging lends itself to the use of wide-flange or HP sections for the soldier piles (oriented with the flanges parallel to the wall alignment), although pipe sections are used occasionally. For deep cuts, or situations where a tieback will be installed at each soldier pile, dual sections or back-to-back channels may be used.

Lagging is installed as the excavation proceeds. The lagging usually consists of rough cut structural grade timber that is designed to resist the maximum lateral pressure due to soil and surcharge loads. Standard practice dictates that the lagging be installed behind the front flange of the soldier piles. In some cases, however, local convention or contractor preferences can result in the installation of the lagging behind the rear flanges. If the soldier piles are driven with their rear flange at the property line, contractors may install the lagging behind the flange to serve as a backside form for the cast-in-place basement walls. The soldier piles would be encapsulated in the final wall in this case. After studying various lagging configurations, Peck (1969) determined that lagging installed behind the rear flange results in significantly greater soil loss and three times the settlement of lagging installed behind the front flange in similar conditions.

D.16.2.2 Steel Sheet Piling

Sheet piles are long structural sections with a vertical interlocking system that creates a continuous wall. Hot-rolled or cold-formed steel is the most common material used for sheet piles, although wood, concrete, aluminum, and vinyl piles are manufactured for low section-modulus and non-structural situations. Steel sheet piles are available in a variety of standard cross sections. The Z-shaped piling is predominantly used in earth retention and floodwall applications where bending strength governs the design. When interlock tension is the primary consideration for design (such as cellular cofferdams), an arched or straight web piling is typically used.

Sheet pile walls used for earth retention can be cantilevered, internally braced, or tied back as the excavation depth requires. The interlocking steel sheet piles minimize water infiltration and when they are properly keyed into semi-impervious soil can allow excavation below the groundwater table without external well points or site-wide dewatering. Piles are generally driven in pairs from existing grade using vibratory hammers. Depending upon the depth of penetration required and the subsurface conditions, impact hammers, or hydraulic presses may also be used.



PZ

SECTION	Width (w) in (mm)	Height (h) in (mm)	THICKNESS: Flange (t_f) in (mm)	THICKNESS: Wall (t_w) in (mm)	Area in²/ft (cm²/m)	WEIGHT: Pile lb/ft (kg/m)	WEIGHT: Wall lb/ft² (kg/m²)	Section Modulus in³/ft (cm³/ft)	Moment of Inertia in⁴/ft (cm⁴/ft)	COATING AREA: Both Sides ft²/ft of single (m²/m)	COATING AREA: Wall Surface ft²/ft² of wall (m²/m²)
PZ 22	22.0 559	9.0 229	0.375 9.50	0.375 9.50	6.47 136.9	40.3 60.0	22.0 107.4	18.1 973	84.38 11500	4.48 1.37	1.22 1.22
PZ 27	18.0 457	12.0 305	0.375 9.50	0.375 9.50	7.94 168.1	40.5 60.3	27.0 131.8	30.2 1620	184.20 25200	4.48 1.37	1.49 1.49
PZ 35	22.6 575	14.9 378	0.600 15.21	0.500 12.67	10.29 217.8	66.0 98.2	35.0 170.9	48.5 2608	361.22 49300	5.37 1.64	1.42 1.42
PZ 40	19.7 500	16.1 409	0.600 15.21	0.500 12.67	11.77 249.1	65.6 97.6	40.0 195.3	60.7 3263	490.85 67000	5.37 1.64	1.64 1.64

PS

SECTION	Width (w) in (mm)	Web (t_w) in (mm)	Maximum Interlock Strength k/in (kN/m)	Minimum Cell Diameter* ft (m)	Area in²/ft (cm²/m)	WEIGHT: Pile lb/ft (kg/m)	WEIGHT: Wall lb/ft² (kg/m²)	Section Modulus in³/sheet (cm³/sheet)	Moment of Inertia in⁴/sheet (cm⁴/sheet)	COATING AREA: Both Sides ft²/ft of single (m²/m)	COATING AREA: Wall Surface ft²/ft² of wall (m²/m²)
PS 27.5	19.69 500	0.4 10.2	24 2400	30 9.14	8.09 171.2	45.1 67.1	27.5 134.3	3.3 54	5.3 221	3.65 1.11	1.11 1.11
PS 31	19.69 500	0.5 12.7	24 2400	30 9.14	9.12 193.0	50.9 75.7	31.0 151.4	3.3 54	5.3 221	3.65 1.11	1.11 1.11

Figure D.16.3: Typical sheet piling sections (reproduced from Skyline Steel)

The loads governing the design of a sheet pile wall arise primarily from the soil and water surrounding the wall and from other influences such as surface surcharges and external loads applied directly to the piling. Classical methods for evaluating these loads are discussed in most foundation engineering textbooks and in design manuals published by American Society for Civil Engineers and the US Army Corps of Engineers.

D.16.2.3 Contiguous Bored Piling (Secant and Tangent Piles)

Continuous walls can be formed by installing a row of cast-in-place piles at a narrow spacing. If the spacing is equivalent to the pile diameter the wall is said to be tangent. In practice, tangent pile walls suffer from gaps between piles and they are generally not considered to be waterproof. Post-excavation repairs and external grouting are often required.

Secant pile walls are constructed by boring primary piles at an on-center spacing that is slightly less than twice the nominal pile diameter. Before the concrete in the primary piles achieves its full design strength, secondary piles are bored between them. As the secondary pile is advanced, the auger or cutting head carves a secant from each of the primary piles to form an interlocking continuous wall. To improve the bending capacity of the circular section, piles are reinforced. For long piles or high-section modulus applications, longitudinal steel is replaced by steel beam sections. Tiebacks or rock anchors can be installed through unreinforced secondary piles or the wall can be internally braced as the excavation depth requires.

Figure D.16.4: Secant piles being installed using segmental casing

When properly designed for bearing, secant pile walls can serve as the permanent earth retention system and the perimeter foundation for the final structure. A unique application is the procedure of top-down construction. In this system, the perimeter walls (and interior foundation if applicable) are installed first from existing grade, then the interior is excavated in stages to the design subgrade floor level. As each level is reached, the floor and its associated support system is constructed and the excavation proceeds as a mining operation to the next stage. The finished floor provides the lateral bracing to support the perimeter as the operation proceeds. Depending upon the nature of the construction and the foundation system used to support the interior column loads, construction can proceed upwards and downwards simultaneously.

D.16.2.4 Diaphragm (Slurry) Walls

Reinforced concrete diaphragm walls are constructed by mechanical excavation of a slurry-supported trench. Initially a set of concrete guide walls are constructed on the ground surface along the trench alignment. A hydraulic clamshell-type grab suspended from a cable crane or specialized carrier rig is then used to excavate to the desired depth in segmental panels. The trench is kept filled with a viscous slurry (usually a mixture of bentonite or a polymer, sand, and water) to prevent collapse during excavation. After the slurry is de-sanded, a reinforcing cage is lowered into the excavation, and the slurry is displaced by tremie-placed concrete. In modern systems the slurry is pumped from the excavation as it is displaced and recycled.

The economy of slurry walls is derived from their dual use as temporary and permanent earth retention systems. Tiebacks and internal bracing (or top-down construction as described above) can be used to support diaphragm walls as necessary. Because they are excavated in panels, diaphragm walls are subject to the same problems of end gaps and water leakage as tangent pile walls. Moreover, because inspection under slurry is difficult, inclusions of spoil or partial cave-in may result in "windowing" of the panels.

As equipment has improved, production rates increased, and costs have been reduced, secant pile walls have assumed a greater market share of mid-depth to deep construction. Diaphragm walls are largely limited to deep construction with relatively long wall alignments. The recirculation tanks, material storage, and reinforcing cage assembly areas require considerable amounts of laydown area. Often a dedicated service crane must be provided in addition to the slurry rig.

Figure D.16.5: *Slurry wall rig with hydraulic grab*

D.16.2.5 Ground Modification (Soil Nailing)

Soil nailing is an in-situ technique for reinforcing, stabilizing and retaining excavations and deep cuts through the introduction of relatively small, closely spaced inclusions (usually steel bars) into a soil mass, the face of which is then locally stabilized. A zone of reinforced ground is formed that functions as a soil retention system.

The typical construction sequence begins with the excavation of a shallow cut. Then shotcrete is applied to the face of the cut and soil nails are drilled and grouted. This sequence is then repeated until subgrade is reached.

Soil nailing is possible in a wide range of materials including clays, sandy soils, weathered rock, and tallus slope deposits. Depending upon the individual layer strengths and thicknesses soil nailing can also be effective at retaining heterogeneous and stratified soils. Soil nailing is not practical in soft plastic clays, loose organic and peat deposits, and low density soils. Fills (rubble, cinder, ash, etc.) and soils below the water table are generally not suitable for soil nailing.

Figure D.16.6: *Application of shotcrete over wire mesh for a soil nail wall (Hayward Baker, Inc.)*

D.16.3 Underpinning

Underpinning is the transfer of the foundation loads of an existing structure to alternative supports such as cast-in-place concrete pits or piers, push piles or micropiles, or it may consist of a ground modification technique such as jet grouting. The actual system chosen will be dependent upon the size and integrity of the existing foundations and the required capacity. Prestressing of the installed components enables the underpinning system to provide active support and limit the potential of settlement related damage.

In most cases, the underpinning is a permanent change to the foundation of an existing building. The construction of the underpinning will result in the redistribution of loads throughout the structure either temporarily or permanently. Reinforcement of existing foundations, structural ties, or repairs within the building, may be required to stabilize the structure before underpinning work begins.

D.16.3.1 Classical Underpinning

In its simplest form, underpinning consists of excavating rectangular pits or piers at regularly spaced intervals beneath an existing bearing wall or strip foundation. The pits are filled with concrete or brickwork up to within 2 to 4 inches of the underside of the existing foundation. After the new work has been allowed to set and shrink, the gap is dry-packed with mortar or rammed with steel shims to make full contact with the existing foundation. The process is repeated on the intervening segments to form a continuous strip of underpinning. Because of the significant risk of soil loss associated with excavations below the water table, the method is basically limited to dry ground.

Tomlinson (1995) states that the maximum length of unsupported wall above the pit excavations should not exceed 4 to 5 feet for brick walls of normal construction. The unsupported lengths should be equally distributed over the length of the wall, and in no circumstances should the sum of the unsupported lengths exceed one-quarter of the total length of the structure. If the wall is heavily loaded or shows signs of structural weakness, the unsupported length should not be allowed to exceed one-fifth to one-sixth of its total length. Exceptionally wide foundations should be underpinned in steps working from back to front.

Winterkorn and Fang (1975) indicate that large column footings can be underpinned in multiple pits, but they recommend that no more than 20% of the footing support be underpinned at any one time without shoring the columns. They indicate that the most common error is to extend the underpinning to just below the subgrade of the excavation of the planned structure instead

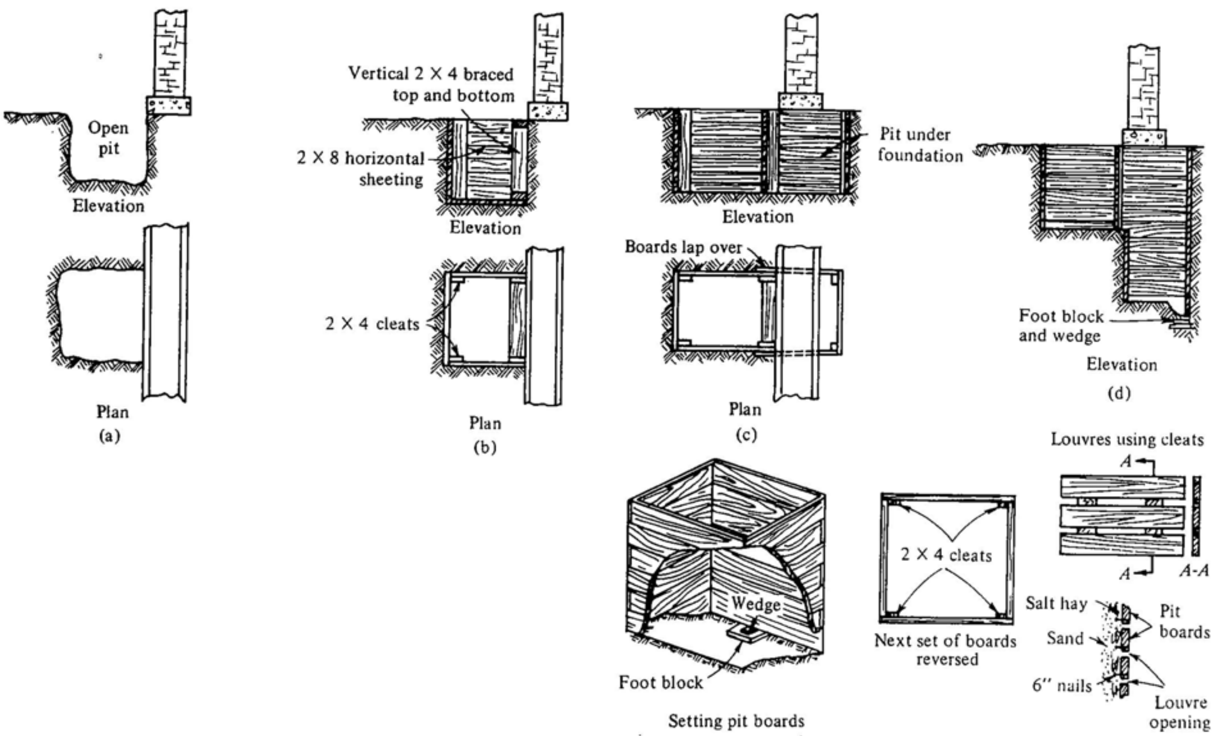


Figure D.16.7: *Conventional pit underpinning (reproduced from Winterkorn and Fang)*

of founding the underpinning on a suitable bearing stratum. The extent and success of underpinning are dependent upon the care taken in other phases of the work such as the lateral bracing of the underpinning, general excavation techniques, sheeting of the excavation, and the groundwater pumping methods used on the project.

Smoltczyk (2003) states that bearing capacity and settlement considerations should be used to determine the size and sequence of underpinning. Because the buildings loads will be transferred to adjacent unexcavated areas, the sequence of underpinning should start at the wall sections with the highest loads so as to minimize the potential for differential settlement between pit locations. For weak or old structures, Smoltczyk recommends starting the underpinning at the corners to provide fixed support conditions at the edges of the section then moving to the center to provide a midspan support. If the work begins at the center and then moves outward, a "saddle" support condition can result which can cause vertical cracking.

D.16.3.2 Push Piles or Resistance Piers

A push pile typically consists of a structural steel pile (or pier) installed to bedrock or other suitable bearing stratum which is attached to the foundation or slab through a head assembly. In most applications, the push pile will be driven hydraulically to the design resistance using the existing structure as a reaction. In cases where the underpinning is intended to recover settlement, the structure can then be lifted hydraulically against the load bearing pile to restore it to a higher elevation. The piles are sectional, and can, therefore, be installed in limited access and low overhead conditions.

Depending upon the condition and integrity of the foundation wall of the existing building, it may be necessary to cast a reinforced concrete grade beam adjacent to the structure to provide a suitable connection for the push pile hardware. Dowels should be provided between the grade beam and the existing structure to resist shear forces and to transfer moments which will be created by the eccentric support. The effect of eccentricity on the axial pile capacity should also be considered in the pile design.

Figure D.16.8: *Manifold jacking of push piles to underpin a bearing wall (Reproduced from Atlas Systems Technical Guide for Underpinning Settled Structures, 2003)*

D.16.3.3 Drilled-in-Place Micropiles

As an alternative to push piles, or if it is determined that structural loads exceed the available working capacity of standard push piles, drilled-in-place micropiles can be used to support the existing building. Micropiles consist of small diameter (typically less than 10-inch diameter) high-strength steel pipe casing with flush couple threaded joints. The piles are normally advanced by duplex drilling techniques using water as the drilling fluid. Sacrificial tricone bits are used to socket the pile into bedrock. After reaching the design depth, the casing interior is tremie filled and pressure grouted through the equipment with neat cement grout. Because the casing is segmental, micropiles can be installed in low-overhead conditions and in areas inaccessible to standard piling rigs.

The size of the micropiles will be a function of the foundation loads for the existing building, as well as the desired spacing between piles. Due to the size of the head assembly and the casing support frame, micropiles cannot realistically be installed closer than about 16 inches from the wall of an existing building. Therefore, a reinforced concrete grade beam as discussed above for push piles may be required if micropiles are used to underpin the structure.

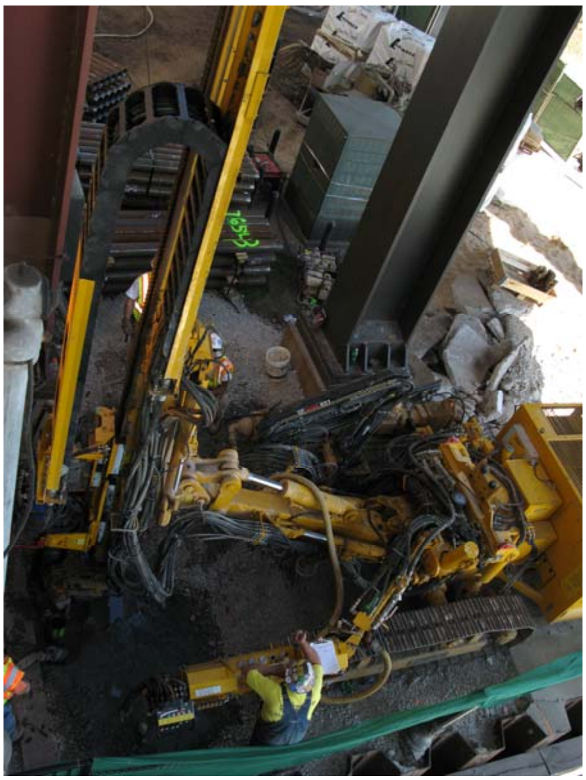


Figure D.16.9: *Drilled-in-place micropile installation (Hayward Baker, Inc.)*

Figure D.16.10: *Jet grout underpinning (Nicholson Construction Company)*

D.16.3.4 Jet Grouting

Jet grouting is a ground modification system which creates in-situ cemented geometries of soil (or soilcrete). Grout is pumped through a rotating rod from which it exits at a high velocity. The energy of the grout jet erodes the surrounding soil which mixes with the grout to create the desired in-place geometry. Full and partial columns as well as panels are possible through control of the rod rotation and withdrawal.   Depending upon the geometry desired and the soil conditions, the grout jet can be supplemented with high pressure air or water jets. Because the point of application and the finished geometry are controlled, jet grouting can provide both direct underpinning support of an existing building and a continuous retention system for excavation.

D.17 REFERENCES

Boscardin M. and Cording E., "Building Settlement to Excavation Induced Settlement," *ASCE Journal of Geotechnical Engineering*, **115,** No. 1, January 1989.

Boone S.J., "Assessing Construction and Settlement-Induced Building Damage: a Return to Fundamental Principles," Proceedings Underground Construction, Institution of Mining and Metallurgy, London, 2001.

City of Toronto By-Law No. 514-2008 "Building Construction and Demolition, with respect to regulation of vibrations from construction activity," Council of the City of Toronto, 2008.

Clough G.W. and O'Rourke T.D., "Construction Induced Movements of In-Situ Walls," *Proceedings Design and Performance of Earth Retaining Structures*, ASCE Special Publication 15, Cornell University, 1989.

Curtin W.G. *et al.*, *Structural Foundation Designers' Manual*, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, 2006.

Das B.M., *Principles of Foundation Engineering*, PWS-Kent, Boston, 1990.

Design Manual 7.2. *Foundations and Earth Structures*, US Navy, Washington, DC, 1982.

DIN 4123: 2000-9 Deutsche Norm "Excavation, Foundation and Underpinning Work Adjacent to Existing Buildings," *Unterfangungen* of the *Normenausschuss Bauwesen* (Building and Civil Engineering Standards Committee), Berlin, 2000.

District of Columbia Construction Codes Supplement of 2008 DCMR 12A Building Code Supplement, "Section 3307A Protection of Adjoining Property," Washington DC, 2008.

Dowding C.H., *Construction Vibrations*, Northwestern University, 2000.

Gratacap L.P., *Geology of the City of New York (1909)*, Kessinger Publishing Co., Reprint 2008.

Holtz R. and Kovacs W., *An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1981.

Lavis *F., The New York Rapid Transit Railway Extensions*, Engineering News, **72**, No. 14, October 1, 1914.

New York City Transit Authority, Engineering Department, Civil Engineering and Architectural Division, *Field Design Standards,* unknown.

O'Rourke T.D. *et al.*, *The Ground Movements Related to Braced Excavations and Their Influence on Adjacent Buildings,* US Department of Transportation, 1976, DOT-TST76, T-23.

O'Rourke, T.D., "Base Stability and Ground Movement Prediction for Excavations in Soft Clay," *ASCE Journal of Geotechnical Engineering*, **122**, No. 6, 1996.

O'Rourke, T.D., "Ground Movements Caused by Braced Excavations," *ASCE Journal of Geotechnical Engineering*, **107**, September, 1981, (discussion **109**, March 1983).

OSHA Technical Manual *Section V: Chapter 1, Demolition*, Washington DC.

OSHA Technical Manual *Section V: Chapter 2, Excavations: Hazard Recognition in Trenching and Shoring*, Washington DC.

Peck R.B., "Deep Excavations and Tunneling in Soft Ground," *Proceedings of the 7th International Conference S.M.F.E.*, Mexico City, 1969, State of the art volume, Sociedad de Mexicana de Suelos, Mexico City, 1969.

Puller M., *Deep Excavations: a Practice Manual*, Thomas Telford Ltd., London, 2003.

Regulatory Review of 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P: *Excavations*, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Washington DC, March 2007.

Report No. FHWA-RD-75-(128 to 130) *Lateral Support Systems and Underpinning*, Federal Highway Administration, Washington DC, April 1976.

Schuberth C.J., *The Geology of New York City and Environs*, Natural history Press, Garden City, NY, 1968.

Smoltczyk U., *Geotechnical Engineering Handbook Volume 2: Procedures*, Ernst & Sohn, Berlin, 2003.

Sowers G.B. and Sowers G.F., "Failures of Bulkhead and Excavation Bracing," *Civil Engineering*, 1967, **107**, No. 1.

Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, AASHTO, Washington DC, 2002.

Statutory Instrument 1994 No. 3140 "The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations 1994," UK Department of Employment, London,1994.

The Party Wall etc. Act 1996, HMSO, London, 1996.

Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 1926, US Government Printing Office, Pittsburgh, PA, 1926. (aka. 29 CFR 1926, Subpart P. *Excavations.)*

Tomlinson M., *Foundation Design and Construction*, Longman Scientific & Technical, London 1995.

Winterkorn H. and Fang H., *Foundation Engineering Handbook*, Van Norstrand Reinhold Co., New York, 1975.

I. Regulatory Benchmarking

I.1 DESCRIPTION:

The benchmarking survey was developed with a goal of obtaining general operational and specific HRCO related information from a wide cross section of large jurisdictions that provide similar building department type services. One of the goals of the HRCO project was to look for gaps in the NYC regulatory framework that can compromise safety, particularly with regard to the potential for major accidents. While the local conditions and needs of every jurisdiction are unique, this survey provides a basis from which best practices worthy of future study can be identified as well as potential gaps in NYC services meriting further investigation.

The survey was developed utilizing input from both the HRCO operational teams and their DOB counterparts. A beta test version of the survey was circulated to three jurisdictions to evaluate the questions prior to wider distribution. The survey was also circulated to DOB subject matter experts for input and changes before being sent out. A constant challenge in the development of the survey was to keep it at a manageable size in order to encourage a representative number of responses. Finally the survey, along with a cover letter, was put into graphical format and distributed.

Big cities are the obvious respondents but in some cases, county departments containing a large city or an urban area with high-rise construction were contacted. For instance, Mecklenberg County, NC contains Charlotte as part of the jurisdiction. Fairfax County, VA has a population of over 1 million with high-rise construction. Pompano Beach served as a beta-test jurisdiction and was chosen because of its waterfront wind exposure and number of concrete high-rise residential projects.

Large cities as well as some county departments, containing a large city or an urban area with high-rise construction, were contacted. The HRCO team received benchmarking surveys from a total of 16 jurisdictions, home to an estimated 26.5 million population (Table I.1).

Table I.1
Population and Construction Data Reported by Responding Benchmarking Jurisdictions

Jurisdiction	Stated Population	Stated '08 Construction Value
Austin, TX	743,074	$1,184,385,825
Boston, MA	600,000	$3,000,000,000
Chicago, IL	3,000,000	n/a
Fairfax Co, VA	1,065,178	$1,168,372,000
Honolulu, HI	900,000	$1,917,166,000
Houston, TX	1,954,000	$12,600,000,000
Los Angeles, CA	4,000,000	$4,300,000,000
Mecklenburg Co (Charlotte), NC	1,652,178	$2,713,125,024
Pompano Beach, FL	110,000	$265,000,000
Philadelphia, PA	1,500,000	n/a

San Diego, CA	1,250,000	$1,430,000,000
San Francisco, CA	800,000	$3,500,000,000
San Jose, CA	1,000,000	$851,113,558
Seattle, WA	800,000	$2,400,000,000
Singapore	4,500,000	$16,000,000,000
Toronto, ON	2,698,400	$6,490,000,000
New York, NY	8,360,000	$33,800,000,000

A number of the jurisdiction responses above referred to Cal-OSHA, so a copy of the cover page and the Crane and Hoist section was sent to Northern California Cal-OSHA. We received back from their crane unit.

Other jurisdictions that were contacted regarding the survey but have not yet responded include:

- San Antonio, TX
- Dade County (Miami), FL
- Phoenix, AZ
- Atlanta, GA
- Dallas, TX
- Clark County (Las Vegas), NV
- Jacksonville, FL
- Orlando, FL

Finally, ten represented countries of the Inter-jurisdiction Regulatory Collaboration Committee (IRCC) received copies of the survey in March. Thus far, one survey was returned from Singapore. The IRCC is an organization of international jurisdictions that fosters collaboration amongst its members in addressing construction-related regulatory issues.

It is anticipated more of the jurisdictions listed above as well as many of the IRCC countries will respond, including:

- Australia
- Austria
- England
- China
- Spain
- Japan

I.2 SUMMARY OF GENERAL TRENDS AND OBSERVATIONS:

Returns from the benchmarking study point out a trend of focusing operations on areas where there are demonstrated issues or problems specific to the locale. For example all four of the California cities, located in high seismic regions, report doing a complete structural plan review. Chicago has a focus on deep foundations as they are located on naturally deep and poor soil conditions requiring special care for foundations supporting most structures. New York, Chicago and Philadelphia, all with a dense and a vertical downtown building environment, have a specific crane unit to provide an extra level of safety and enforcement. The Excavations Unit in New York is also an example of services in response to the issue of building collapses and adjacent property structure damage.

Because New York has a relatively benign natural environment (low seismicity, solid bedrock and low incidence of tropical wind events) there is no recent history of natural events driving the focus on plan review and structural inspections. Instead, there has been a history of crane and construction accidents which has focused attention on areas such as site safety and means and methods of construction. These are not typically perceived by many as the primary mission for building departments. This alternative focus can compete for resources with areas of work normally viewed by many building departments as their core work: structural plan review and inspections to ensure public safety of the built environment. One of the goals of the survey was to determine the level of focus on site safety and means and methods type of work in other regions and that relationship to other activities performed by individual jurisdictions.

Most survey responses reveal that site safety inspections, when performed, are typically an offshoot of departments' day-to-day construction progress inspections and are rarely accomplished by stand-alone site safety inspections. The benchmarking effort also shows there are very few major building departments who do not complete some sort of structural plan review and do not perform structural inspections.

Table I.2 presents a summary of benchmarking information related to study areas documented in the HRCO report. For each area the survey results are compared and contrasted to New York.

Table I.2
Benchmarking Summary

Study Area	Benchmarking Jurisdictions	New York City
Structural Plan Review	14 out of 16 responding building departments perform detailed or partial structural plan review on major projects.	Relies on the professional for code compliance of structural drawings
Excavation and Underpinning	11 out of 14 respondents require either a partial or detailed structural plan review of excavation, permanent earth retention systems and/or underpinning.	Selective audits are performed
Special Inspections	13 out of 15 respondents qualify special inspection agencies in one of three ways: themselves, rely on some	DOB established qualifications for special inspection agencies

Study Area	Benchmarking Jurisdictions	New York City
	form of qualification process, or accept International Accreditation Service Inc. (IAS) accreditation.	effective July1, 2008, and requires accreditation by IAS or other nationally recognized accrediting bodies by July 1, 2010.
	7 out of 9 responding jurisdictions require the special inspection agency to notify the building of an observed ongoing, unresolved, construction deficiency.	The 2008 NYC Building Code requires hazardous conditions be reported to the Department.
	11 out of 15 responding jurisdictions either perform structural inspections with their staff in addition to special inspections or provide QA/QC of the special inspections with their staff on a proactive basis for major projects.	Structural inspections are not performed.
Concrete and Rebar Practices	The fastest number of days from floor to floor from six initial responding jurisdictions was 3 days on average for high-rise concrete with the typical floor to floor cycle of 5 to 7 days according to 4 initial responding jurisdictions.	The two to three day cycle is common in NYC.
	Rebar is typically fabricated in the shop at all 8 responding jurisdictions.	Majority of reinforcement in NYC is bent on-site; current union rules prohibit shop fabrication of reinforcement, and while non-union sites do use some shop fabrication, on-site bending is still common there as well.
	14 jurisdictions reported no requirement for wind design of forms or anchorage.	’08 and ’68 code require formwork to be designed to resist wind.
Concrete Regulatory and Safety Practices	1 of 6 jurisdictions that regulate general site safety on high-rise concrete reported only specific site safety inspections.	’08 and ’68 codes have requirements for site safety on all projects, BEST squad actively enforces on major buildings.
	2 of 16 responding jurisdictions issue citations for OSHA work place violations on high-rise concrete.	DOB does not have the authority to issue OSHA citations.

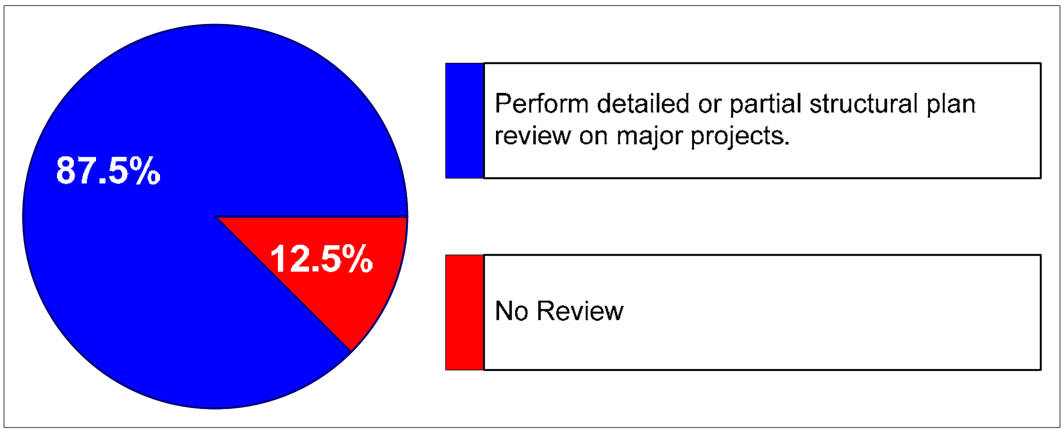
Study Area	Benchmarking Jurisdictions	New York City
	2 of 13 responding jurisdictions license or regulate site safety managers.	DOB licenses site safety managers and site safety coordinators.
Crane Practices	5 out of 15 responding building departments regulate tower cranes, and 3 out of 15 regulate mobile cranes other than relying on the state or federal OSHA.	Both tower cranes and mobile cranes are regulated.
	One jurisdiction reported having a requirement for tower crane part inventory and tracking of parts for jumps or during dismantling.	New requirements are being developed.
	Two building department respondents issue licenses or otherwise regulate crane operators.	Operators are licensed.
	Cal-OSHA has a rule or policy for synthetic rigging material stating it is “allowed” and Singapore (MOM) states synthetic sling materials are statutory lifting gear.	The use of synthetic slings is prohibited by law for tower crane assembly, jumping, and disassembly unless required by the manufacturer.
Regulation and Licensing Practices	No jurisdictions reported regulating crane signal persons or pedestrian safety flag persons.	This is under consideration with the new code, licensing of crane safety coordinator and signal person.
	Singapore was the only jurisdiction out of 15 that reported they have a program for targeted focus of plan review or inspections where the license holder has a history of repeated violations or incidents.	DOB has a targeted audit program in place.
	Only Singapore reported keeping a database on the number and type of construction accidents.	DOB maintains a construction incident database

I.3 HRCO BENCHMARKING DATA OBSERVATIONS:

I.3.1 Structural Plan Review Practices

As seen in Figure I.1, the majority of jurisdictions surveyed perform some form of detailed or partial structural plan review on major projects. New York City relies on the professional for code compliance of structural drawings.

Figure I.1
Jurisdictions Performing Some Structural Plan Review



** Results out of 16 jurisdictions*

The depth of review appears to be geographically based on perceived risk, local conditions or state law. For example all four jurisdictions responding in California reported 100% of major jobs receive a detailed structural plan review. San Francisco has an additional peer review process for major structures. Other areas with less perceived earthquake risk do more or less of a focused or spot check structural review based on the degree of completeness of the construction documents and the relative risk of the project. Chicago reported reviewing 99% of major projects with a detailed structural review and because foundation designs are challenging due to deep and poor soils, there is a great emphasis on proactive plan review of deep foundations. Only the two jurisdictions located in Texas rely solely on self certification by design professionals for major projects. Alternatively, Austin does a structural review of plans for buildings under 5000 square feet that are not prepared by a design professional.

Singapore utilizes extensive third party review by accredited checkers who are registered professional engineers licensed by the building department. The building department itself also completes audits of all submissions and a focused plan review on 20% of the submissions. Self certification is utilized for minor work but these projects still receive a focused review from the department on at least 20% of all submittals.

Jurisdictions with partial or focused plan review utilizing guidelines to determine the focus of plan review include: Mecklenburg County, Pompano Beach, Seattle and

Toronto. These jurisdictions may be worthy of additional investigation to glean ideas and best practices used to prioritize the focus of limited plan review resources. Boston utilizes an affidavit for structural plan review applications and/or peer review to provide review and accountability for submitted plans. Chicago is working on a self certification policy to augment its capacity and expressed interest to work with DOB on the development of a sound and flexible program and standard operating procedure to create a QA/QC audit process for self certifications of plan review.

Mecklenburg County reports only 10% of projects receive a focused or partial structural review while 90% of projects are self certified. The engineer of record for the overall project completes, stamps and signs a summary of the design loads and calculations in a pre-determined format provided by the jurisdiction. All of these documents are given a cursory review by the jurisdiction and compared with the submitted structural construction documents. Based on this review, certain projects with higher risk (high-rise) and other projects with missing documents or issues are targeted for additional review. This makes up the 10% reported with a focused or partial structural review.

Fairfax County, VA reported doing a one hour spot check for major structures. The one review is a cursory check of vertical loads, importance factor, and the wind and seismic loads applied. The jurisdiction also utilizes a peer review process to conduct additional assessments. A more detailed review is performed on smaller projects with a wider array of design engineers and competency levels.

All of the systems mentioned to screen projects and prioritize structural plan review effort deserve additional study as a tool to effectively require more focused structural plan review on appropriate projects while managing the resources needed for the program.

Many jurisdictions mentioned also utilize a collection of resources or strategies to make plan review scalable and stated they have a fast track plan review process. Given the variable nature of construction volume, a challenge for both large and small building departments is to build a scalable system to provide consistent quality service regardless of the level of workload. Many respondent jurisdictions use a combination of jurisdiction staff, self certification, peer review, third party review hired by owners, and consultants hired by the jurisdiction to help balance available resources with varying workload as needed to maintain service levels. This challenge must be met to be effective and sustainable in the long term with any service as work levels tend to fluctuate. The issuance of Directive No. 2 of 1975 ceased almost all structural plan review to date (not including excavation design audits, as discussed below). Thus any level of structural screening or plan review should be investigated as an improvement. A positive first step is the requirement for peer review recently adopted in section 1627 of the 2008 New York City Building Code. However, buildings covered by Section 1627 represent only a small slice of the overall built environment.

Benchmarking results show various versions of four basic steps that can be implemented incrementally to provide a comprehensive structural plan review program:

1. Develop a system and criteria to screen all submitted projects.

2. Define and prioritize the level of self certification, QA/QC, independent structural plan review and/or peer review based on rational criteria.

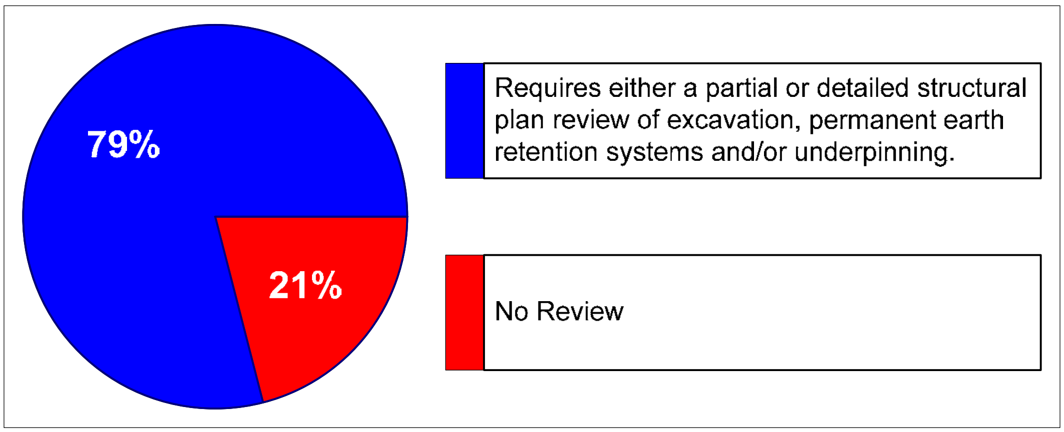
3. Identify a sufficient quantity of qualified resources to complete structural plan reviews and the rules for their engagement.

4. Screen and audit a sufficient portion of completed plan reviews to ensure both the quality of approved plans and the performance of the structural plan review qualified resources.

I.3.2 Excavations and Underpinning Practices

The majority of benchmarking respondents require either a partial or detailed structural plan review of excavation, permanent earth retention systems and/or underpinning, as shown in Figure I.2. In NYC, selective audits are performed in each borough.

Figure I.2
Jurisdictions Performing Some Excavation Plan Review



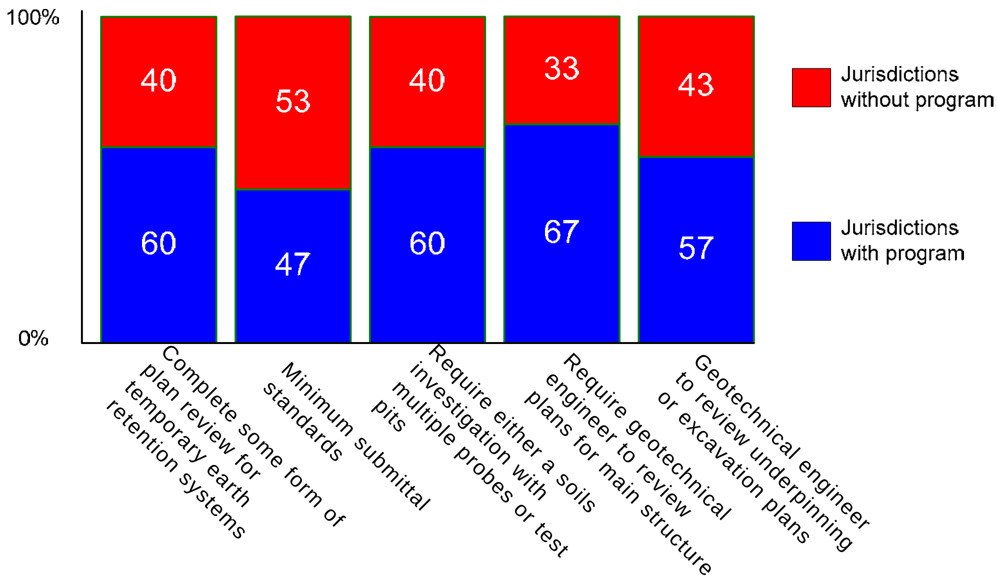
** Results out of 14 jurisdictions*

Since the structural plan review of permanent excavations, earth retention systems and underpinning are an element of the overall structural plan review, the results are very similar to the survey response for building structural plan review.

Jurisdictions located in Texas do not review excavation plans. Honolulu does not issue partial permits for excavation and/or foundation work prior to the building permit. Review of excavation and foundation elements are included in the partial structural plan review Honolulu reported doing for the overall project. Chicago does not perform a detailed review for shallow foundation systems less than 12 feet deep. However, because of the poor soils, nearly all major structures require a deep foundation system.

The majority of respondents have additional review standards in place, as shown in Figure I.3.

Figure I.3
Additional Excavation Review Procedures



The breakdown of responses in the figure above is as follows:

- 9 out of 15 respondents complete some form of plan review for temporary earth retention systems.

- 7 out of 15 respondents have minimum submittal standards. Boston is in the process of developing a policy for minimum submittal requirements, Chicago, Fairfax County, Honolulu, Los Angeles, Philadelphia, San Francisco and Singapore all reported having minimum submittal requirements.

- 9 out of 15 respondents require either a soils investigation with multiple probes or test pits when underpinning is anticipated for adjacent structures or the original plans for the adjacent building are not available.

- 10 out of 15 respondents require the soils or geotechnical engineer to review plans for the main structure in all or some cases to verify on writing the recommendations of their soils report are incorporated prior to permit issuance.

- 8 out of 14 respondents require the soils or geotechnical engineer to also review underpinning, excavation and/or excavation plans in all or some cases. Jurisdictions requiring evaluation and/or monitoring of adjacent structures include: Boston, Chicago, Philadelphia, San Diego, Seattle, Singapore and Toronto. Toronto recently developed and published specific rules and submittal requirements for the evaluation of vibration influence and monitoring on influenced structures. Singapore requires instrumentation and monitoring by the Engineer of Record along with the requirement for notification of the jurisdiction when a predetermined level of movement in existing structures is exceeded.

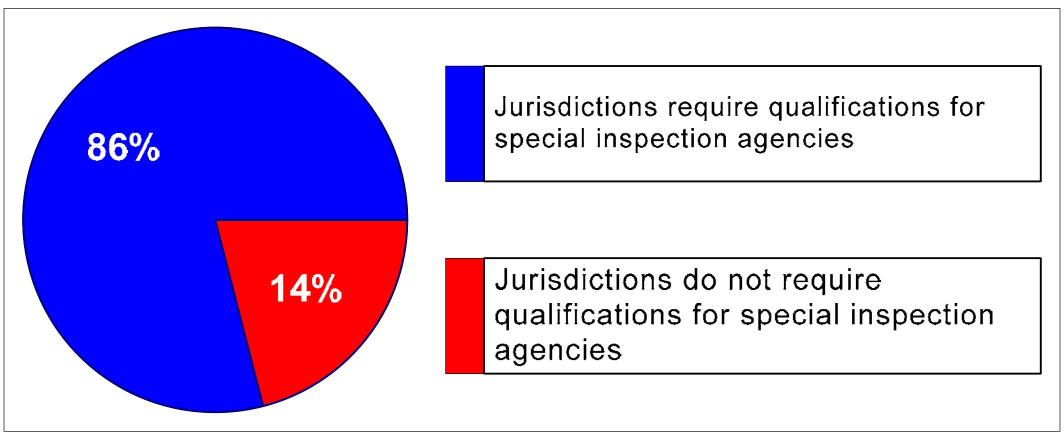
New York City has created an excavations unit that does conduct plan review via selective audits. The excavations unit will perform pro-active reviews if requested by an applicant. Otherwise, the structural review comes post-inspection, when an inspector has identified a serious problem in the field and makes the referral to the engineering unit for review. While this is an interim step towards creating a more comprehensive program, there is considerable room for improvement as demonstrated in benchmarked jurisdictions. This could include making the program proactive with specific plan submittal requirements for excavations, underpinning, reinforcement of existing buildings if applicable, and monitoring of influenced structures. In addition the four steps previously outlined for the establishment of a building structural plan review program could be utilized along with related recommendations made by the HRCO.

I.3.3 Special Inspection and Structural Inspection Practices

I.3.3.1 Special Inspections

As shown in Figure I.4, most respondents qualify special inspection agencies themselves, rely on some other form of qualification process, or accept International Accreditation Service Inc. (IAS) accreditation. DOB established qualifications for special inspection agencies effective July 1, 2008, and requires accreditation by IAS or other nationally recognized accrediting bodies by July 1, 2010.

Figure I.4
Special Inspections Qualification



DOB established qualifications for special inspection agencies effective July 1, 2008, and requires accreditation by IAS or other nationally recognized accrediting bodies by July 1, 2010. Of these jurisdictions, all with the exception of Houston have a special inspection disciplinary process.

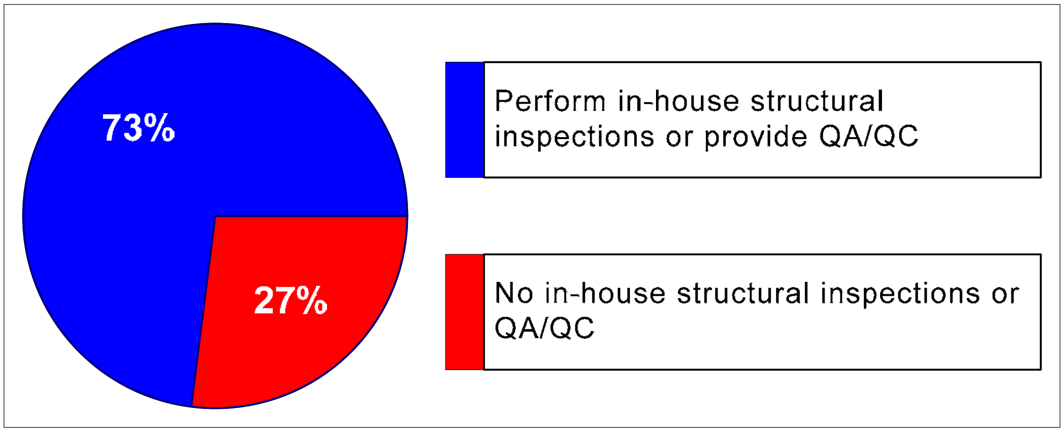
Of the seven jurisdictions who responded to the question, the disciplinary process is used on average from zero to two times per year. San Francisco, San Jose and Seattle participate in collective regional qualification efforts worthy of additional follow-up.

When non-conforming work is not resolved quickly, 7 out of 9 responding jurisdictions have a requirement for the special inspection agency to notify the building department regarding the observed ongoing construction deficiency**.** The 2008 NYC Building Code requires that hazardous conditions be reported to the Department.

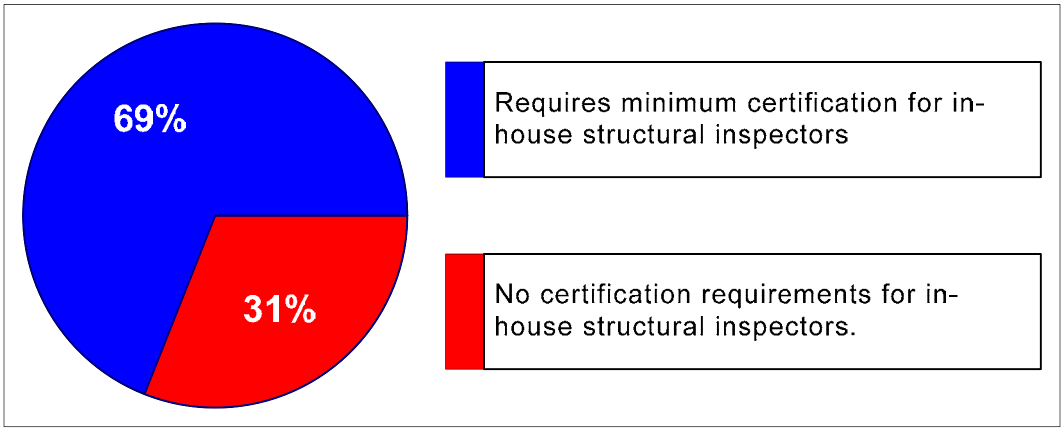
I.3.3.2 Structural Inspections

As shown in Figure I.5, most jurisdictions either perform structural inspections with their staff in addition to special inspections or provide QA/QC of the special inspections with their staff on a proactive basis for major projects. Most also require some minimum form of certification for their in-house structural inspectors (typically either ICC or state required certifications). Structural inspections are not performed by DOB.

Figure I.5
Minimum Certification for In-House Structural Inspectors



** Results out of 15 jurisdictions*



** Results out of 13 jurisdictions*

Austin and Houston do not provide structural inspections for major projects. Boston and Honolulu require inspections by the engineer of record in addition to special inspections. Six jurisdictions reported having a qualification process if inspectors outside of the department are used. This is reported to be accomplished by state certifications, utilization of special inspection qualification requirements or the engineer of record to engage outside inspectors.

It is clear from the benchmarking results that regular structural progress inspections provide a mechanism for quality control of delegated special inspections and also provide an informal means to help monitor site safety. This appears to be true even when they are minimally performed as an audit or spot check by competent jurisdiction staff,

Judging from other jurisdictions, New York City can substantially improve the effectiveness of its operations in structural and special inspections with aggressive training and recruitment programs aimed at increasing the critical mass of engineers and inspectors with a high level of structural design and inspection knowledge and certification.

Benchmarking shows that as the percentage of staff resources with appropriate training and certification increases, a transition can occur from (1) initially auditing outside inspectors to (2) performing routine spot checks of projects and finally, (3) utilizing DOB staff to perform scheduled audit inspections at critical stages of prioritized projects.

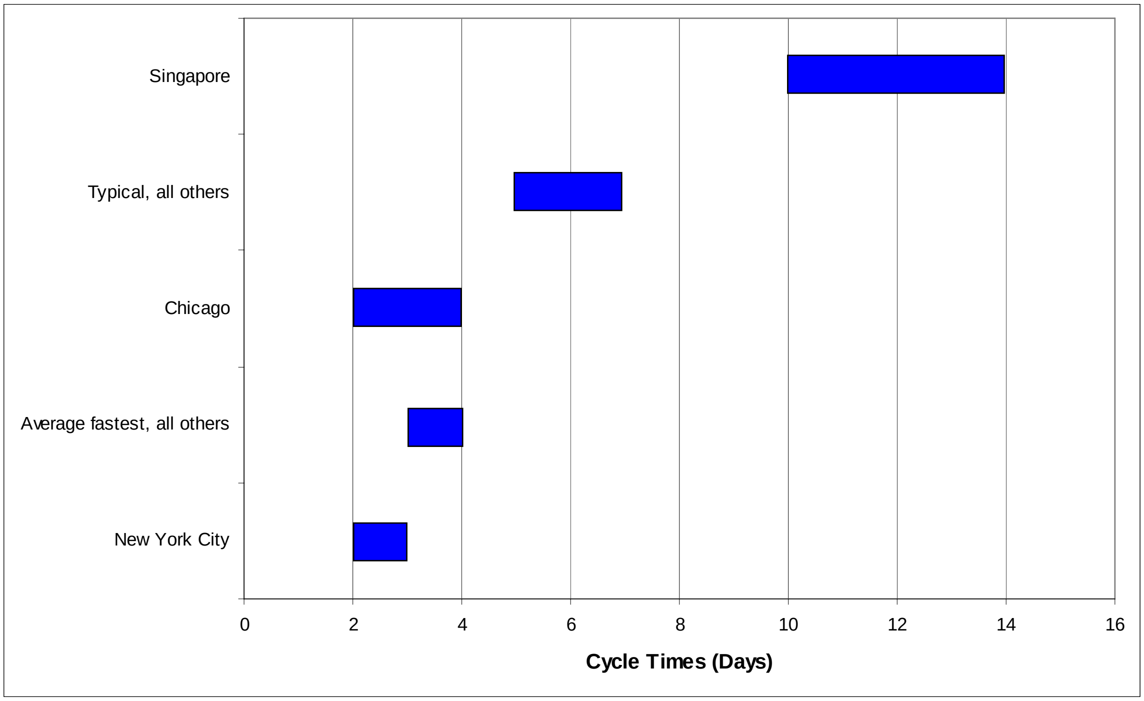
I.3.4 High Rise Concrete Forming and Rebar Practices

I.3.4.1 Cycle Times

The most notable differences in high-rise concrete construction practices were the average number of construction days from floor to floor and the practice of site-fabricated rebar. Cycles times are summarized in Figure I.6.

Rebar is typically fabricated in the shop at all 8 responding jurisdictions. San Francisco estimated 20% of the rebar is site fabricated for buildings of 10 stories or less. Otherwise no other answer showed less than 90% of the rebar being fabricated in the shop. For buildings greater than 10 stories the reported median percent of shop fabricated rebar was 99%.

Figure I.6
Floor to Floor Cycle Times



I.3.4.2 Formwork Construction

Another factor affecting the number of loose pieces of material at the top of a high-rise under construction is the type of forming system. Stick built forms tend to have many more individual pieces of material with the potential to fall to the ground. Fairfax County, VA and Pompano Beach, FL reported 90% and 75% respectively as the percent of high-rise concrete jobs with stick-built forms. Other than those two jurisdictions, the remaining six responding jurisdictions indicated an average of 90% of high-rise concrete projects utilize pre-fabricated forming systems. These typically have fewer pieces to potentially fall.

I.3.4.3 Wind Design and Wind Alerts

An observed issue in New York is frequency of wind damage to formwork on the leading edge of upper floors, sometimes causing material to fall. This motivated a question on the benchmarking survey regarding requirements for form anchorage, wind design of forms and high wind alert procedures.

Fourteen jurisdictions reported no requirement for wind design of forms or anchorage. Only Pompano Beach, FL reported having specific storm watch regulations in the form of high-wind alerts and safe guards at construction sites. Miami-Dade County did not respond to the survey but research shows it also has storm watch regulations. The 2008 and 1968 New York City building code does require formwork to be designed to resist wind and DOB does issue high wind alerts to construction sites.

I.3.4.4 Form Design

Only Fairfax County, VA, Pompano Beach (the same two jurisdictions reporting a large use of stick built forms) and Philadelphia reported requiring engineered design of forms or regulations for form design. Fairfax County, VA requires the engineered design of forms for walls or columns 10' high or greater. Fairfax County and Philadelphia reported performing plan review of forms while a total of 6 jurisdictions reported performing inspections of forms.

New York high-rise concrete construction practices include three high risk factors:

- a high reliance on stick built forms,
- and site fabricated rebar
- a quick floor cycle

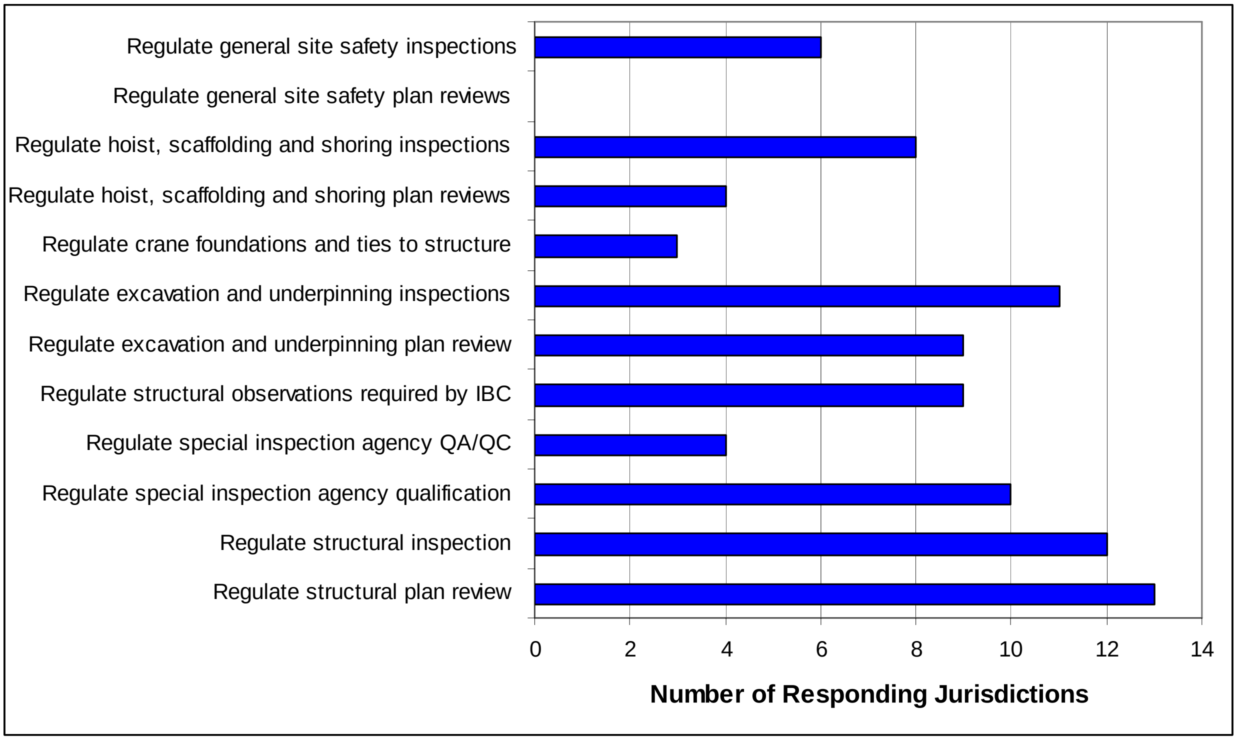
This practice has the resulting outcome of a high number of workers and loose pieces of material at the top of large high-rise concrete projects. Nowhere else could benchmarking efforts duplicate all of these factors. Personnel from other jurisdictions expressed verbal concerns about the quality of site fabricated rebar. Quality issues have also been consistent with field observations by the HRCO team in New York City. Improved practices including QA/QC of structural plan review for engineered forms, special inspections of rebar fabrication and placement, and inspections of formwork particularly at leading edges exposed to wind can all contribute to the performance and safety of high-rise reinforced concrete construction.

I.3.5 Site Safety and Enforcement Practices

I.3.5.1 High Rise Concrete Regulatory and Safety Practices

Figure I.7 shows the areas that responding jurisdictions said they regulate for high-rise concrete or other major projects.

Figure I.7
Areas Regulated by Responding Jurisdictions

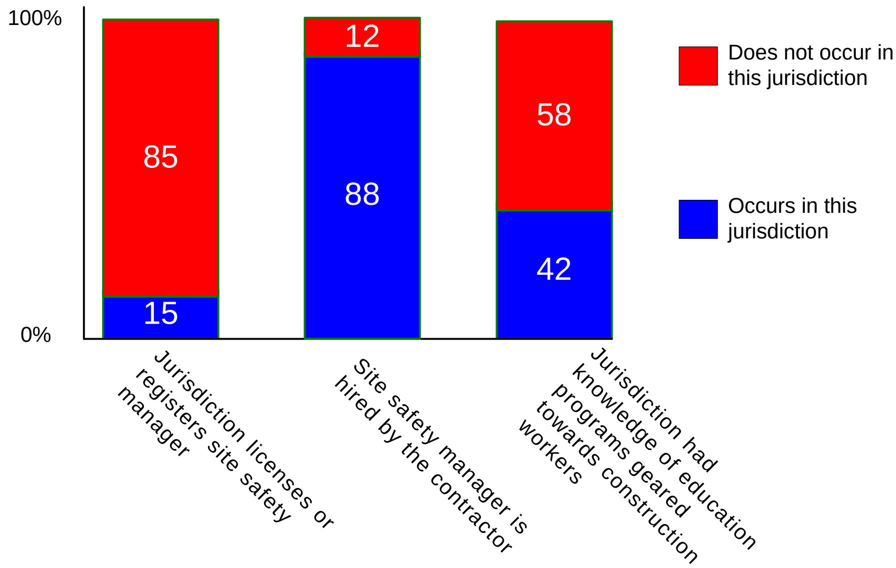


Of the six responding jurisdictions that regulate general site safety on high-rise concrete, only Boston reported inspections solely focused on site safety. Three of the remaining five jurisdictions that regulate site safety, conduct site safety inspections as part of their regular structural progress inspections and two do both specific site safety inspections and site safety inspections as part of the regular day to day inspections. Both the 2008 and 1968 NYC codes have requirements for site safety on all projects. DOB actively enforces these requirements on major buildings.

There were a wide variety of ways to resolve general, repeated and immediately dangerous site safety violations. The most popular first response was to write a violation or correction notice. After repeated unresolved site safety violations the most popular response was to refer to OSHA followed by writing a stop work order. The most popular way of resolving an immediately dangerous condition was to write a stop work order. While 8 of 13 responding jurisdictions report coordinating site safety violations with OSHA, only 2 of 16 responding jurisdictions issue some sort of citation for OSHA work place violations on high-rise concrete (San Francisco and Pompano Beach, FL). DOB does not have the authority to issue OSHA citations.

Figure I.8 summarizes site safety manager and worker safety information gathered from responding jurisdictions.

Figure I.8
Site Safety Practices



Detail regarding the figure above is as follows:

- 2 of 13 responding jurisdictions license or regulate site safety managers (Singapore through MOM and Fairfax County on large County owned projects). DOB does license site safety managers.

- 7 out of 8 responding jurisdictions stated site safety managers are hired by the contractor. One said they are hired by the owner.

- 5 out of 12 responding jurisdictions reported some knowledge of site safety education programs geared to individual construction workers.

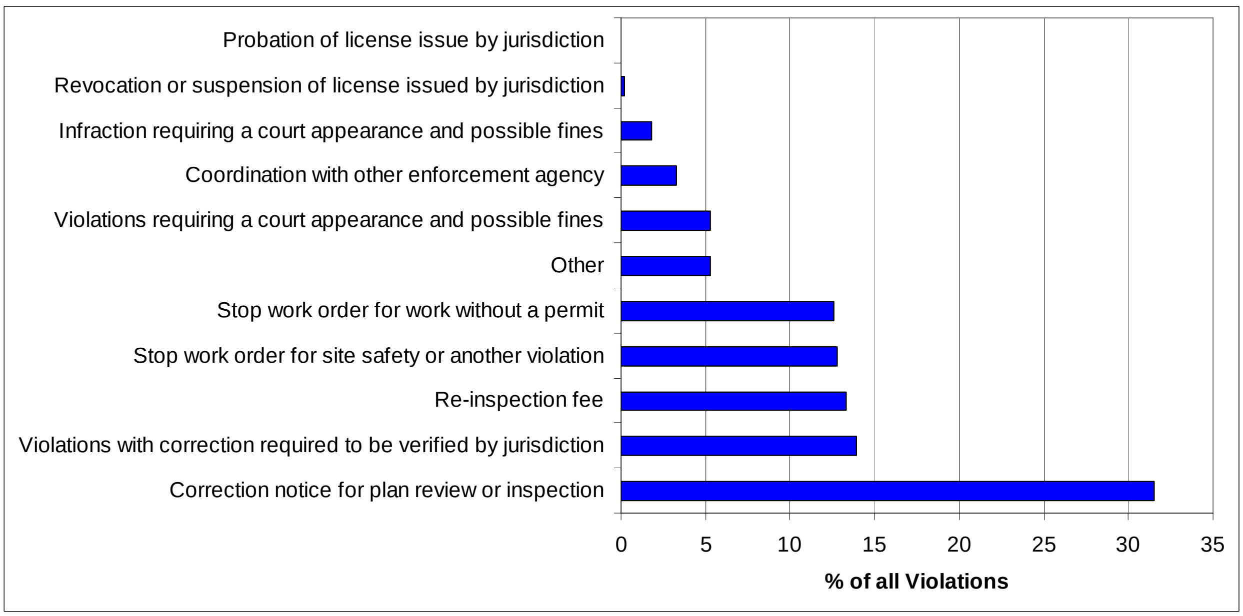
Benchmarking appears to show most jurisdictions focus on what they view as their core area of work: plan review, special inspections and progress inspections of construction. Even on special or major projects, most jurisdictions integrate site safety work into the overall department organization. General site safety inspections, when they occur, tend to be an offshoot of what is perceived as core functions. In New York City, site safety work appears to be the main area of focus in many respects because DOB has a delegated system of structural inspections and a professional certification process.

I.3.5.2 Site Safety and Enforcement Practices

The goal of this portion of the benchmarking survey is to identify the most common enforcement mechanisms utilized, and the relative level and focus of general site safety enforcement provided, by typical building departments.

Jurisdictions were asked to list an approximate breakdown of the types of violations they issue. Figure I.9 summarizes how common each violation is issued as percentage of all violations. This average is based on responses from eleven jurisdictions. For example, on average, 12.6 percent of violations issued by responding jurisdictions are a stop work order for work without a permit.

Figure I.9
Enforcement Tools Used by Responding Jurisdictions



Jurisdictions were asked to identify the site safety plan review and site safety inspection tasks that they perform. The most common tasks amongst the respondents are summarized in Figures I.10 and I.11.

In general: fire protection features, pedestrian and property protection, fencing, utilities and egress are of significant focus. San Francisco and Philadelphia appear to have the most proactive site enforcement programs. In general, more site safety enforcement occurs in the field than in plan review. DOB appears to do more than most cities relative to site safety.

Figure I.10
Site Safety Site Inspection Tasks

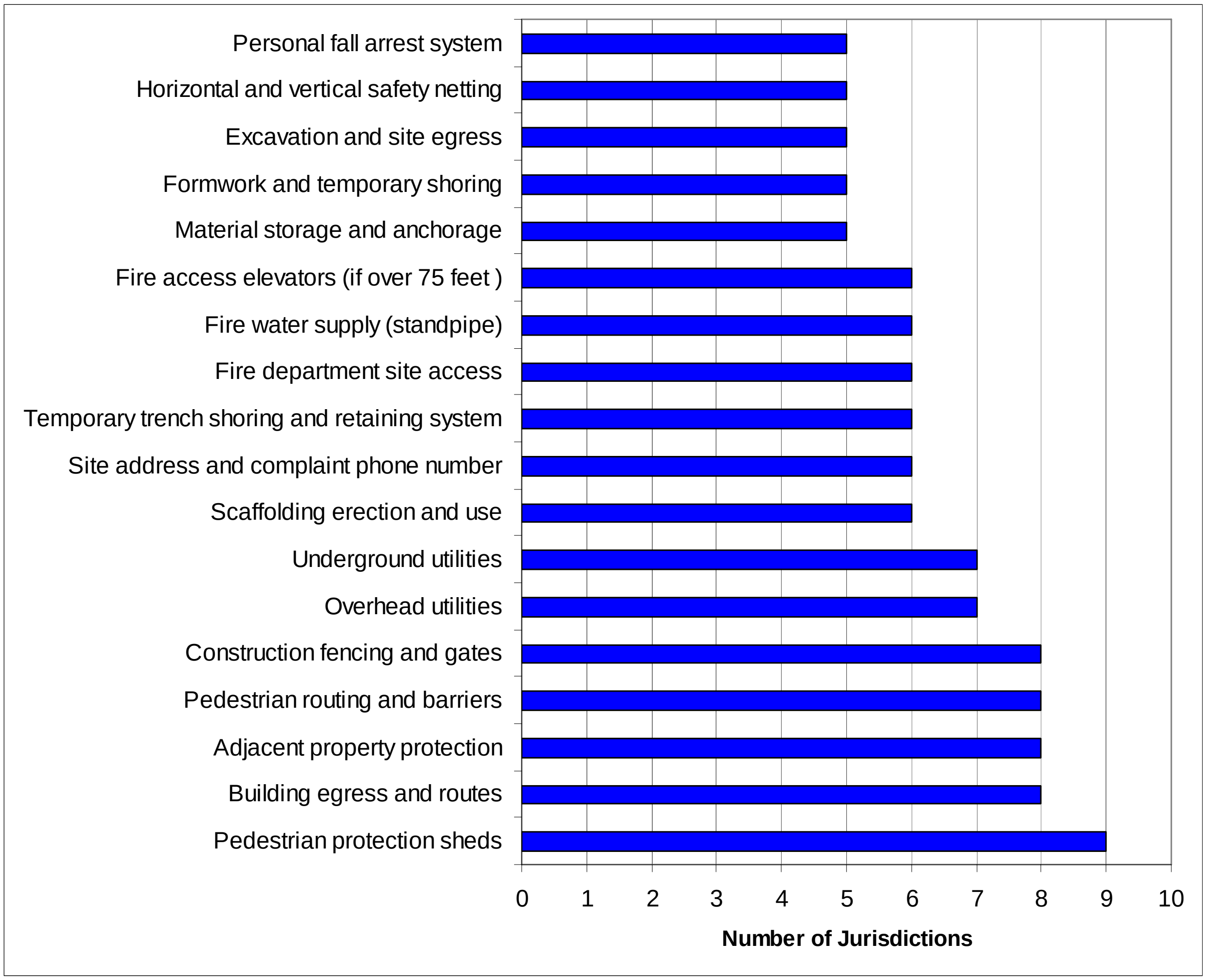
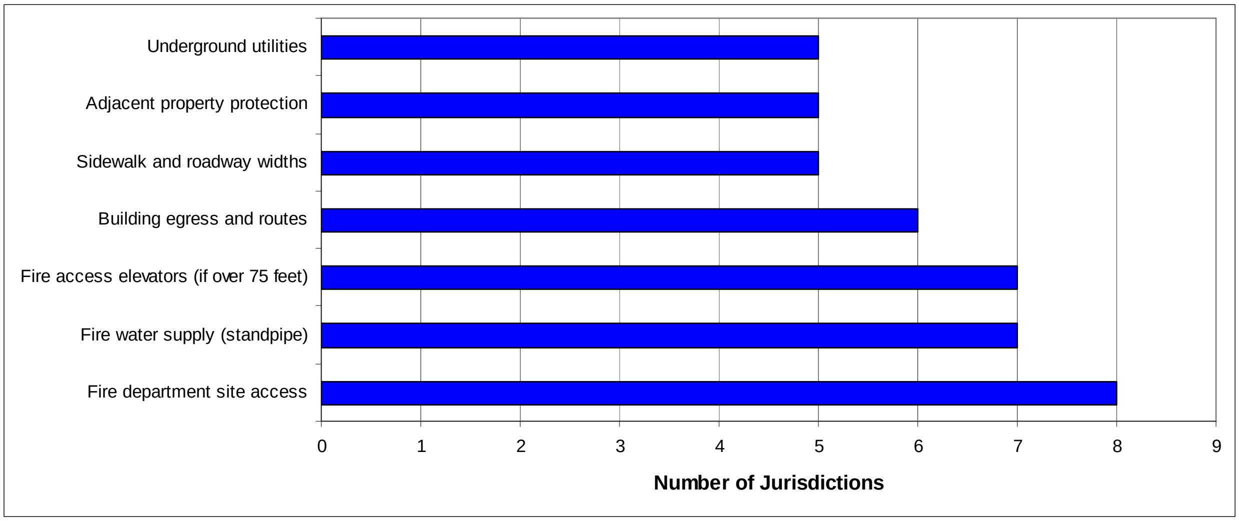


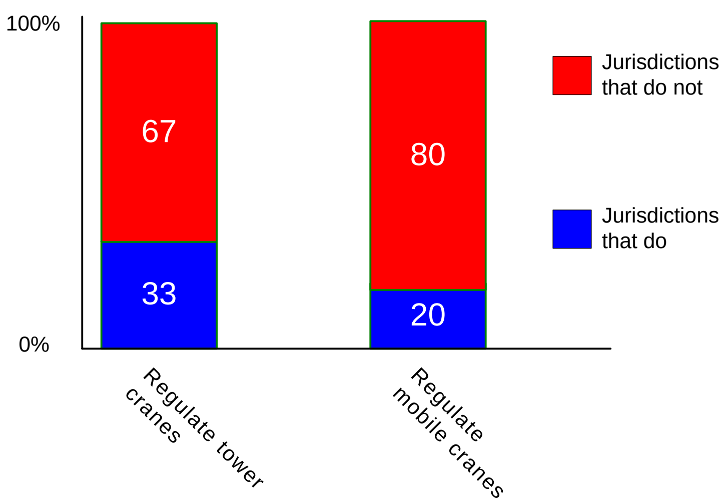
Figure I.11
Site Safety Plan Review Tasks



I.3.6 Crane Practices

DOB regulates both tower and mobile cranes to a greater extent than most jurisdictions. As shown in Figure I.12, the majority of responding jurisdictions do not regulate cranes in any manner other than relying on the state or federal OSHA.

Figure I.12
Crane Regulations



Of those who do regulate tower cranes:

- In California, Cal-OSHA specifically regulates tower cranes and relies on third party certification for mobile cranes. In Singapore, the Ministry of Manpower (MOM) regulates tower cranes and mobile cranes utilizing authorized examiners for plan review of tower cranes and tests plus inspections by third parties.

- Fairfax County, VA was the only building department requiring tests and inspections by third parties for tower cranes. Chicago was the only building department that provides tests and inspections utilizing their own inspectors for tower cranes.

- Chicago, Fairfax County VA, Singapore (MOM), and San Francisco were the only building departments that issue individual crane permits and/or prototypes for tower cranes. Chicago issues individual permits not prototypes for tower cranes and Fairfax County issues electrical permits for tower cranes. Cal-OSHA issues individual permits and prototypes for tower cranes.

- Austin , Chicago, Cal-OSHA, Fairfax County, Singapore (MOM) and San Francisco all reported requiring plans and calculations by a registered engineer for tower cranes and the jurisdiction performs or requires a plan review.

- Chicago, Cal-OSHA, Fairfax County and San Francisco all require the building engineer of record to review tower crane plans for tie-in points and foundations. Singapore (MOM) requires a PE to review the plans for tie-in points and foundations.

- Chicago, Fairfax County and Cal-OSHA all require special inspections for tower crane tie connections and foundations.

- Chicago, Singapore (MOM) and Cal-OSHA require pre-assembly non-destructive testing for tower cranes. Chicago, Singapore (MOM), Cal-OSHA and Fairfax County require assembled tests and inspections of tower cranes.

- Philadelphia has a requirement for tower crane part inventory and tracking of parts for jumps and during dismantling.

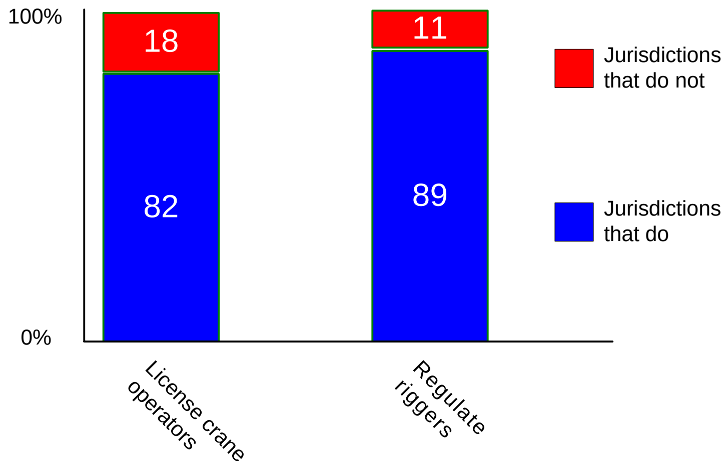
- Philadelphia, Singapore (MOM) and Chicago regulate mobile cranes. Chicago requires plans and calculations by a registered engineer and does a plan review for mobile crane installations that are not at grade.

- Cal-OSHA and Singapore (MOM) both reported having a repair procedure and inspections for tower and mobile crane repairs. Chicago is developing a repair procedure.

A substantial majority of responding jurisdictions do not license crane operators or regulate riggers.

Figure I.13

Licensing of Crane Operators and Riggers



Philadelphia and Chicago were the only two building departments out of 11 respondents that issue licenses or otherwise regulate crane operators. Other jurisdictions rely on the state OSHA, federal OSHA or the Ministry of Labor (in the case of Toronto) or the Ministry of Manpower (MOM) (in the case of Singapore).

1 out of 9 responding building departments regulate riggers, Philadelphia was the only building department that requires a license for riggers or master riggers.

DOB licenses both operators and riggers. Other notable crane regulatory information includes:

- 2 out of 14 respondents have a rule or policy regarding synthetic slings**.** Cal-OSHA has a rule or policy for synthetic rigging material stating it is "allowed" and Singapore (MOM) states synthetic sling materials are statutory lifting gear. NYC passed a law prohibiting the use of synthetic slings for tower crane assembly, jumping, and disassembly. In NYC, the use of synthetic slings is prohibited by law for tower crane assembly, jumping, and disassembly unless required by the manufacturer

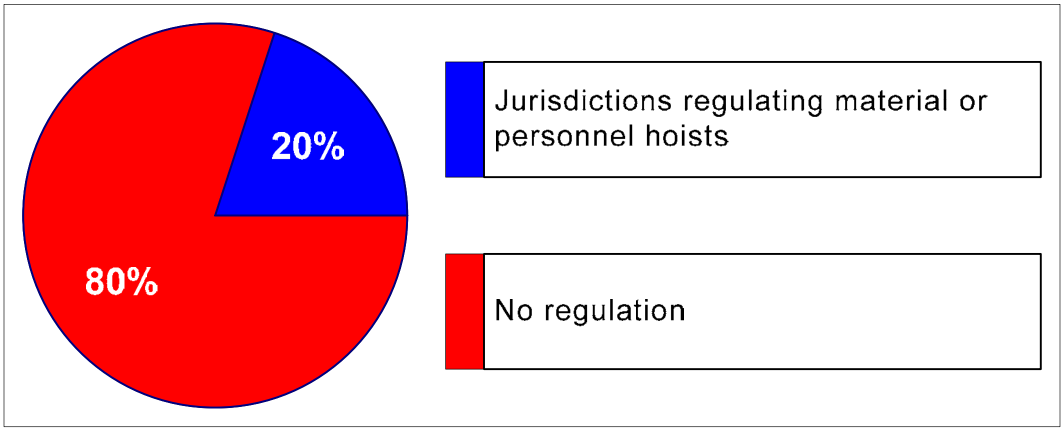
- 4 out of 13 respondents have a rule or policy requiring a physical barrier between hoisting areas and pedestrians. Singapore requires a risk assessment. No jurisdictions reported knowledge of any public awareness campaigns for pedestrian safety around crane hoisting areas.

Based upon benchmarking results to date, the New York City crane oversight program has a greater scope than most building departments and enforcement agencies. Cal-OSHA practices for tower cranes may be worthy of additional study. Inspections by Cal-OSHA personnel for tower cranes are in addition to inspections provided by third parties and serve as an extra quality control component for both tower and mobile crane inspections. Additional investigation of Cal-OSHA and Singapore (MOM) repair procedures may be worthwhile study.

I.3.7 <u>Construction Hoist Practices</u>

As shown in Figure I.14, the majority of respondents do not regulate material or personnel hoists.

Figure I.14
Material and Personnel Hoists Regulations



** Results out of 15 jurisdictions*

Additional detail for those respondents that do some level of regulation includes:

- Fairfax County, VA and Houston were the only building departments providing these services. Both require specific tests after initial acceptance and Fairfax County requires or recognizes third party inspectors. Cal-OSHA also regulates construction hoists but does not require specific tests after initial acceptance. Singapore relies on third party inspections.

- Cal-OSHA and Singapore were the only two respondents that record incidents with injury or death due to hoist service personnel riding on the top of the cab during service or installation.

- Cal-OSHA, Singapore and Houston provided contact information on the person in charge of the construction hoist program.

- Of the other jurisdictions responding, Boston and Pompano Beach Florida require the building engineer of record to review plans for the hoist prior to the permit or during erection. Philadelphia requires signoff of the hoist installation by the building engineer of record and/or the hoist engineer of record.

As in cranes, the New York City hoist oversight program has a greater scope than most building departments and enforcement agencies. Additional investigation of jurisdictions utilizing third party inspections and/or signoff required from the engineer of record may be worthwhile. Also, follow-up with jurisdictions where there are reports of death or injury caused by service personnel riding on the cab undertaken since this has been an issue also in New York City.

I.3.8 Regulation and Licensing Practices

Jurisdictions have many different methods of regulating or issuing licenses for individuals involved in the construction trades. Typically states are the primary regulatory body for contractor and engineer licenses. The scope of this benchmarking study did not go into great detail regarding the relationship and overlap between states and local jurisdictions. However the following observations are noteworthy:

- Only Chicago, Philadelphia, Singapore and San Francisco indicated they regulate permit expediters.
- Philadelphia was the only building department to indicate they regulate third party crane inspectors, riggers or master riggers.
- No jurisdictions reported regulating crane signal persons or pedestrian safety flag persons (Boston reported the local police regulate flag persons). This is under consideration in NYC in conjunction with the new codes.
- Chicago was the only building department that reported regulating hoist operators and none reported regulating hoist inspectors. Singapore (MOM) reported regulating both.
- Singapore was the only jurisdiction out of 15 that reported they have a program for additional plan review or inspections where the license holder has a history of repeated violations or incidents. DOB has a targeted audit program in place.
- Only Boston, Los Angeles and Pompano Beach reported requirements for evidence of fitness for duty for license holders. Chicago is considering it in the future for general contractors
- Pompano Beach refers to state requirements for continuing education. Singapore requires continuing education for engineers and architects.
- Only Singapore keeps a database to track the number and type of construction accidents. DOB maintains a construction incident database.

I.4 BENCHMARKING DISCUSSION

New York City regulates at a greater degree than most building departments when focusing on site safety, cranes and hoists. Still there are measures from other jurisdictions which may be of value.

New York City tends to regulate at a lesser degree than most building departments in the areas of structural plan review, special inspections and structural inspections. This is particularly true with building construction and excavations and underpinning.

The benchmarking study raises the foundational question of DOB's role. For most other jurisdictions, site safety, when not addressed by OSHA, is dealt with as an adjunct to the core functions of plan review and inspections of construction. The New York City DOB approach is almost polar opposite. This benchmarking study, in conjunction with the HRCO recommendations, should be used as a starting point in answering the important question of the appropriate DOB focus.

Conclusions and statements in this report are made based on interpretation of survey responses, information from the HRCO study and a limited number of follow-up calls. Given the number of areas of study and sometimes incomplete responses, all conclusions and statements should be viewed as starting point for additional follow-up, investigation and verification, particularly where statements are used as a basis to consider future changes in the regulatory process. The NYC Department of Buildings should continue to benchmark with other jurisdictions to obtain information on areas where there may be room for improvement but also share information of its practices where it is taking the lead.

Appendix II

Principal Staff Resumes

Project Management - CTL
Steven Smith – Program Director
W. Gene Corley – Senior Advisor

High-rise Concrete - CTL
Jeffrey Garrett - Principal
David Drengenberg – Field Manager

Cranes – Crane Tech Solutions
Manfred Kohler - Principal
Frank Hegan – Principal
Marcus Janik – Field Manager

Excavations - AECOM
Ted Bushell - Principal
Darren Diehm – Field Manager

Hoists – Patuxent Engineering Group
John O'Connor - Principal

Regulatory – DBR Group
Dennis Richardson - Principal

STEVEN J. SMITH

PRINCIPAL ENGINEER AND GROUP MANAGER

CTLGroup
9030 Red Branch Road, Suite 110
Columbia, MD 21045
Phone: 410-997-8480 Fax: 410-997-0400
SJSmith@CTLGroup.com
www.CTLPC.com

PRINCIPAL EXPERIENCE

- Dr. Steven J. Smith specializes in the performance evaluation and failure analysis of structural systems. He has investigated steel, concrete, masonry, advanced composites and wood frame buildings, as well as industrial structures, communication towers, and heavy construction equipment. Many of these investigations have addressed the construction process as well, assessing construction documents, means and methods and regulatory compliance.

  Dr. Smith has particular expertise in structural dynamics and vibrations. He has consulted on numerous projects within this field including the measurement, analysis, and mitigation of structural vibration; security and antiterrorism design; the effects of vibration on people and structures; analysis of structural response to blast, impact, wind, seismic and other dynamic loadings.

Representative Projects

- Assessment of thermal damage to reinforced concrete and structural steel superstructure of a 1000-ft chimney. Investigation included on-site conventional and nondestructive testing, laboratory analysis and repair design and evaluation.
- Investigation of the collapse of a 500-ft-tall, double crawler crane at the Miller Park Baseball Stadium construction site. Analyses included nonlinear dynamic and stability analyses of the crane superstructure and wind load effects.
- Condition assessment of a newly constructed parking structure, including full-scale load testing; nondestructive testing and structural analysis; detailed negotiation among stakeholders and building officials to resolve structural integrity concerns.
- Testing of an elevated section of the Washington D.C. Metro rail to determine the response at expansion joints during train travel.
- Determination of blast pressures from an explosion that occurred in a six-story boiler system. Investigation included site inspections, laboratory testing, and nonlinear dynamic finite element modeling of steel, masonry, and glass blast indicators. Investigation of wind effects on light support poles and communications towers. Studies have included field inspection, structural analysis and design recommendations.

PRINCIPAL EXPERIENCE	▪ Impact assessment of ground vibrations from geological exploration on residential structures. This included detailed signal processing and statistical analysis of a large set of measured vibration records, analysis of the ground vibration attenuation behavior and related impacts from geological variability, and structural analysis of the buildings. ▪ Impact assessment of noise from reconstruction of a park on neighboring residences. Investigation included measurement of noise from various sources (heavy equipment, generator fans), development of a noise contour map for the affected area, comparison against applicable codes and standards, and development of theoretical impacts from noise barriers and other abatement alternatives.
EDUCATION AND CERTIFICATIONS	University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign Ph.D. Structural Engineering, 1997 The Catholic University of America M.CE. Civil Engineering, 1991 B.CE. Civil Engineering, 1990
PROFESSIONAL REGISTRATION	Registered Professional Engineer – Maryland, District of Columbia, Virginia, Pennsylvania, Delaware, New York, New Jersey, Massachusetts, West Virginia, Illinois, Iowa and Washington Registered National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveying (NCEES) as a Model Law Engineer OSHA 29-CFR 1910.120 Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response (HAZWOPER)
BUSINESS EXPERIENCE	CTLGroup Principal Engineer, 2006- Senior Engineer, 2004-2006 Exponent Failure Analysis Associates Senior Engineer, 1998-2004 University of Wisconsin at Madison Post-Doctoral Fellow, 1997-1998 U.S. Army Construction Engineering Research Laboratory (USACERL) Research Assistant, 1992-1997
PROFESSIONAL ASSOCIATIONS	American Society of Civil Engineers (Member) ASCE Structural Engineering Institute - Blast Resistant Design Committee (Member) Progressive-Collapse Committee (Member) American Institute of Steel Construction (Member) Catholic University, Dept of Civil Engineering Advisory Board (Member)
PUBLISHED WORKS AND PRESENTATIONS	Dr. Smith has coauthored numerous reports, papers and invited presentations

PUBLICATIONS

1. “Blast Resistant Design Guide for Reinforced Concrete Structures”, Portland Cement Association, June, 2009 (with D. McCann and M. Kamara).

2. “Blast Protection of Buildings – Detailing and Performance Qualification”, Structures 2009, Austin, TX, April, 2009 (with A. Whittaker and W. Corley).

3. “A Complete Guide to Blast-Resistant Design of Low Rise Reinforced Concrete Buildings”, IABSE 2008, Chicago, IL, October, 2008 (with D. Bilow, D. McCann and M. Kamara).

4. “Voluntary Standard for Blast Protection”, Protect 2007, Whistler, CA, August, 2007 (with D. Dusenberry, P. Hobelmann, L. Lorraine, J. Schmidt, R. Smilowitz, A. Whittaker, G. Corley, P. Mlaker).

5. “Blast-resistant Design of Concrete Structures”, Structure Magazine, April 2007 (with D. M. McCann).

6. “Repair of Duck Creek Culvert”, Structure Magazine, January 2007 (with T. M. Sullivan, J. R. Nichols, P.E. Kolf and M. G. Carfagno).

7. “Evaluation of Structural Damage”, Structure Magazine, October 2006 (with T. M. Sullivan, J. R. Nichols, H. Cao, M. G. Carfagno and L. P. DeRoo).

8. “Investigation and Repairs to Damaged Duck Creek Culvert”, American Society of Civil Engineers 4th Forensic Conference, Cleveland, OH, 2006 (with T. M. Sullivan, J. R. Nichols, H. Cao, M. G. Carfagno and L. P. DeRoo).

9. “Modal Testing Diagnosis of Bus Seat Failures,” IMAC XXII, Detroit, MI, 2004 (with D.M. McCann, E.M. Meacham and B. Weaver).

10. “Blast Indicators and Damage Assessment associated with a Boiler Explosion,” Mechanics and Materials Conference, 2001 (with J.L. Garrett and R.T. Long.).

11. “Analysis and Testing of a Prototype Pultruded Composite Causeway Structure,” Composite Composites Structures, Accepted for publication July 1999 (with L.C. Bank, T.R. Gentry, K.H. Nuss, S.H. Hurd, S.J. Duich, and B. Oh).

12. “Experimental Comparison of Novel Connections for GFRP Pultruded Frames,” ASCE Journal of Composites for Construction, Vol. 42, 1998 (with I.D. Parsons and K.D. Hjelmstad).

13. “Finite Element and Simplified Models of GFRP Connections,” ASCE Journal of Structures, Vol. 8, 1998 (with I.D. Parsons and K.D. Hjelmstad).

14. “An Experimental Study of the Behavior of Connections for Pultruded GFRP I-Beams and Rectangular Tubes,” Composite Structures, Vol. 47 (with I.D. Parsons and K.D. Hjelmstad).

15. “The CERL Equipment Fragility and Protection Procedure (CEFAPP),” Technical Report [TR] 97/58, U.S. Army Construction Engineering Research Laboratories [USACERL], 1997 (with J. Wilcoski and J.B. Gambill).

16. “Fragility Testing of a Power Transformer Bushing,” Technical Report [TR] 97/57, U.S. Army Construction Engineering Research Laboratories [USACERL], 1997 (with J. Wilcoski).

17. “Engineered Joints for GFRP Pultruded Members,” The Third International Conference on Composite Engineering, 1996, (with I.D. Parsons and K.D. Hjelmstad).

18. “A Study of the Behavior of Joints in GFRP Pultruded Rectangular Tubes and I-beams,” ICCI 96- Proceedings of the First International Conference on Composites in Infrastructure, 1996 (with I.D. Parsons and K.D. Hjelmstad).

19. “Modifications to Beam Theory for Bending and Twisting of Open-section Composite Beams. Experimental Verification,” Composite Structures, Vol. 22, 1992 (with L.C. Bank).

20. “Experimental Investigation of Bending and Twisting Coupling in Thin-walled Composite Beams,” Proceedings of the 9th Conference on Engineering Mechanics, ASCE, 1992 (with L.C. Bank).

PRESENTATIONS

1. “ASCE Standard – Blast Protection of Buildings”, 2009 Structures Congress Workshop, Structures 2009, Austin, TX, April 30, 2009.

2. “A Failure Investigator’s Advice on How to Avoid Structural Failures”, Maryland Structural Engineering Institute, April, 2007.

3. “Collapse of the World Trade Center Towers- Engineering Realities and Insurance Implications”, Property Loss Research Bureau National Conference, March, 2007.

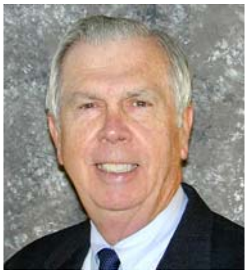
4. “Structural Design and Failure Investigation”, Structural Engineers Association of Alabama, December, 2006.

5. “Structural Dynamics- Investigation, Analysis and Design”, Structural Engineers Association of Illinois, October, 2004.

6. “Studies in Forensic Engineering”, University of Illinois- Urbana, April, 2004

7. “Collapse of Big Blue – the Miller Park Crane Catastrophe”, University of Wisconsin- Madison, March, 2002.

W. GENE CORLEY
SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT



CTLGROUP
5400 OLD ORCHARD ROAD
SKOKIE, ILLINOIS 60077-1030
Phone: 847-972-3060 Fax: 847-965-6541
GCorley@CTLGroup.com
www.CTLGroup.com

PRINCIPAL EXPERIENCE

- Conducted nationally recognized research related to bridges, buildings, railroads, and engineering uses of concrete.
- Chaired committee that wrote much of strength design for concrete that is the basis of AASHTO Bridge Specifications, and Chaired ACI Committee 318 on Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
- Wide international experience in consulting related to earthquake resistant structures, blast resistant structures, bridge design, and construction. Principal Investigator for FEMA on Oklahoma Bombing Building Performance Assessment Team. Team Leader, for World Trade Centers Building Performance Assessment Team. Expert advisor during the investigation and trial resulting from the 1993 fatal fire at the Branch Davidian complex in Waco, Texas. Managing design professional responsible for structural and professional engineering at CTLGroup.
- Teaching experience includes advanced structural design at University of Wisconsin at Madison extension, concrete slab design at University of Illinois, earthquake resistant design for Federal Emergency Management Agency, reinforced concrete design for the American Concrete Institute, seismic design refresher course for Structural Engineers Association of Illinois, and FHWA Bridge Engineering Training Course.

EDUCATION

University of Illinois
Ph.D. Structural Engineering, 1961
M.S. Structural Engineering, 1960
B.S. Civil Engineering, 1958

PROFESSIONAL LICENSES

Licensed Structural Engineer – Illinois, Utah, Washington
Licensed Professional Engineer – Illinois
Registered Civil Engineer – California, Hawaii
Registered Professional Engineer – Alabama, Arizona, Florida, Iowa, Kansas, Kentucky, Louisiana, Massachusetts, Maryland, Michigan, Minnesota, Mississippi, Missouri, Nebraska, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, Ohio, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, South Dakota, Tennessee, Texas, Utah, Vermont, Virginia, West Virginia, Washington
Chartered Engineer, FI Struct E, UK

BUSINESS EXPERIENCE	CTLGroup Senior Vice President, 1987- Portland Cement Association Final Position, Director of Development, 1964-1986 Other Titles United States Army Corps of Engineers (1st Lt. U.S.A.) Research and Development Coordinator for Military Bridging, 1961-1964 University of Illinois - Research Assistant, 1958-1961 Shelby County (Illinois) Department of Highways Junior Engineer, 1958
PROFESSIONAL ASSOCIATIONS	National Academy of Engineering (Member) American Society of Civil Engineers (Honorary) Reinforced Concrete Research Council (Former Member and Secretary) Structural Division Committee on Research (Former Chairman) Committee on Research Needs to Reduce Failure (Former Chairman) Committee on Concrete Bridge Superstructure (Member) Technical Council on Forensic Engineering (Chairman) National Society of Professional Engineers (Fellow) National Council of Structural Engineers Associations (Founding Member, Board of Direction, President 1996-97) American Concrete Institute (Honorary) Voting Member, Committee on Simplified Design of Concrete Buildings (ACI 314) Committee on Standard Building Code (ACI 318-95) (Member, Former Chairman) Committee on Bridge Design (Member and Former Chairman) Committee on Earthquake-Resistant Concrete Bridges (Member) Committee on Limit Design (Former Member) Technical Activities Committee (Former Member) Committee on Deflections (Former Member) Committee on Crossties (Former Member) Building Seismic Safety Council (Former Vice-Chairman and Founding Member, Board of Direction) Chicago Committee on High Rise Buildings (Member and Former Chairman) Earthquake Engineering Research Institute Great Lakes Chapter (Member and Former President) Illinois Building Commission (Former Member, Technical Advisory Group) Illinois Seismic Safety Task Force (Member) Institute for Business & Home Safety (Member, Earthquake Committee) International Association for Bridge and Structural Engineering (Member) International Standards Organization, Committee TC-71, Concrete (Chairman) Mid America Earthquake Center (Member, Board of Directors)

PROFESSIONAL ASSOCIATIONS (CONTINUED)

National Association of Railroad Safety Consultants and Investigators (Member)
National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveying (President 2007-2008)
RILEM (Member)
Post Tensioning Institute
  Technical Activities Board (Former Member)
Transportation Research Board
  Committee on Design of Concrete Bridge Superstructures (Former Member)
National Research Council
  (Member) Committee for Oversight and Assessment of Blast-effects
Structural Engineers Association of Illinois (Former President)
Structural Engineers Institute
  (Chairman) Professional Activities Committee, (Member Board of Governors)
Structural Engineers World Congress (Founding Member, Board of Direction)
Governor's Earthquake Preparedness Task Force (Illinois)

AWARDS

AAES National Academy of Engineering Award, 2007
ASCE Lifetime Achievement in Design-Opal Award, 2006
University of Illinois Chicago Illini of the Year, 2004
AAES Norm Augustine Award for Outstanding Achievement in Engineering Communications, 2004
Cornell University, Peter Gergely Lecture, 2003
ASME Chicago Section Outstanding Program, 2003
ASCE Presidents Award, 2003
NSPE Presidents Award, 2003
Cleveland G Brooks Earnest Lecture, 2003
SEAOI Meritorious Publication, 2003
ASCE Forensic Engineer of the Year, 2002
Illinois ASCE Civil Engineer of the Year, 2002
ACI Honorary Member, 2002
Pennsylvania State University -
  Thomas Kavanagh Lecture 2002
ASCE Honorary Member 2001
UIUC College of Engineering -
  Distinguished Alumnus Award 2001
NCEES, Distinguished Service Award, 2000
National Academy of Engineering, Member, 2000
ACI Alfred E. Lindau Award, 2000
NCSEA Distinguished Service Award, 1999
NCSEA Best Structural Publication Award, 1999
ASCE Outstanding Paper of 1998, Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, 1998
SEAOI John Parmer Award, 1997
SEAOI Meritorious Publication, 1997
Illinois ACI Henry Crown Award, 1997
UIUC Civil Engineering Distinguished Alumnus Award, 1995
Illinois ASCE Structural Division – Lifetime Achievement Award, 1994
SEAOI Meritorious Publication, 1993
SEAOI Service Award, 1994
ACI Phil Ferguson Lecture, 1991

AWARDS (continued)	ACI Henry C. Turner Award, 1989 ACI Reese Structural Research Award, 1986 RCRC Arthur J. Boase Award, 1986 ASCE T. Y. Lin Award, 1979 PCI Martin Korn Award, 1978 ACI Bloem Award, 1978 ACI Wason Medal for Research, 1970
PUBLISHED WORKS	Dr. Corley has over 170 papers and books.

PUBLICATIONS

1. Sheehan, M.J., VanDuyne, E.J., and Corley, W.G., "Casino Parking Garage Collapse: Understanding the Failure of a Concrete Structure with Stay-in-Place Formwork," The Fourth International Conference on Forensic Engineering: From Failure to Understanding, Institution of Civil Engineers (ICE), Westminster, London, UK, December 3-5, 2008.

2. Corley, W. G., "Special Interview NCEES President, Dr. W. Gene Corley," Korean Structural Engineers Association Magazine, No. 9, September 2008, pp. 9-14.

3. Sheehan, M.J., VanDuyne, E.J., and Corley, W.G., "Casino Parking Garage Collapse Forensic Investigation," Congress on Creating and Renewing Urban Structures, Tall Buildings, Bridges and Infrastructure, Congress Report, International Association for Bridge and Structural Engineering (IABSE), USA Group of IABSE, Chicago, Illinois, September 17-19, 2008.

4. Corley, W. G., "Learning from the Attacks on The Twin Towers: World Trade Center Building Performance Study," Institution of Structural Engineers, Centenary Conference, Paper, Hong Kong, January 24-26, 2008, pp. 236-245.

5. Dusenberry, D., Corley, W. G., Hobelmann, J. P., Lin, L., Mlakar, P. F., Schmidt, J., Smilowitz, R., Smith, S., and Whittaker, A., "Voluntary Standard for Blast Protection," American Society of Civil Engineers Protection of Buildings Standards Committee, March 5, 2008.

6. Corley, W. G. and Alsamsam, I. M., "Emerging Trends for Structural Concrete," presentation, 50th Anniversary of Institution (Facultad de Ingenieria UAEM), Toluca, Mexico, June 8, 2006.

7. Corley, W. G., "Qualifying Expert Witness Testimony," Structure Magazine, September 2005, pp. 55-56.

8. Hayes, J. R., Woodson, S. C., Pekelnicky, R. G., Poland, C. D., Corley, W. G., and Sozen M., "Can Strengthening for Earthquake Improve Blast and Progressive Collapse Resistance?," Journal of Structural Engineering, American Society of Civil Engineers, August 2005, Vol. 131, No. 8, pp. 1157-1177.

9. Hayes, J. R., Woodson, S. C., Pekelnicky, R., Poland, C., Corley, W. G., Sozen M., Mahoney, M., and Hanson, R. D., "Earthquake Resistance and Blast Resistance: A Structural Comparison," Proceedings, 13th World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Vancouver, August 2004.

10. Corley, W. G., "Lessons Learned on Improving Resistance of Buildings to Terrorist Attacks," Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, American Society of Civil Engineers, May 2004, Vol. 18, No. 2, pp. 68-78

11. Shuab, H. A., Corley, W. G., and Cagley, J. R., "ACI and International Standardization," Concrete International, Vol. 26, No. 3, American Concrete Institute, March 2004, pp. 65-67.

12. Corley, W. G., "The World Tradecenter Collapse and It's Implications for International Standards," ISO Focus, Vol. 1, No. 1, January 2004, pp. 27-28.

13. Corley, W. G., "World Trade Center—Building Performance Study," Proceedings, Beutscher Bautechnik-Tag 2003 Vorträge, Hamburg, Germany, April, 2003, pp. 101-108.

14. Corley, W. G., "Applicability of Seismic Design in Mitigating Progressive Collapse," NIST Workshop, July 2002.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

172. Magura, D. D. and Corley, W. G., "Tests to Destruction of a Multi-Panel Slab Structure--1964-65 New York World's Fair," Vol. II, The Rathskeller Structure, Building Research Advisory Board, Publication 1721, 1969.

173. Corley, W. G. and Hawkins, N. M., "Shearhead Reinforcement for Slabs," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, (also Research and Development Bulletin DX144, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), October 1968, pp. 811-824.

174. Burton, K. T., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Connections in Precast Concrete Structures-Effects of Restrained Creep and Shrinkage," Journal of the Prestressed Concrete Institute, Vol. 12, No. 2, pp. 18-37 (also Research and Development Bulletin DX117, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), April 1967.

175. Corley, W. G., "Rotational Capacity of Reinforced Concrete Beams," Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE, pp. 121-146, (Also Research and Development Bulletin DX108, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois) October 1966.

176. Corley, W. G. and Sozen, M. A., "Time-Dependent Deflections of Reinforced Concrete Beams," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, March 1966, pp. 373-386.

177. Corley, W. G., "Dynamic Response of Military Bridges," Proceedings, Army Conference on Dynamic Behavior of Materials and Structures, Springfield Armory, Springfield, Massachusetts, September 1962, pp. 170-197.

178. Corley, W. G. and Sozen, M. A., Discussion: "Creep of Prestressed Concrete Beams," by W. S. Cottingham, P. G. Fluck, and G. W. Washa, Journal of the American Concrete Institute, September 1961, pp. 1787-1793.

179. Corley, W. G., Sozen, M. A., and Siess, C. P., "The Equivalent Frame Analysis for Reinforced Concrete Slabs," Structural Research Series No. 219, University of Illinois, Urbana, Illinois, June 1961.

180. Corley, W. G., Discussion: "The Apparent Modulus of Elasticity of Prestressed Concrete Beams under Different Stress Levels," by W. N. Lofroos and A. M. Ozell, Journal of the Prestressed Concrete Institute, pp. 82-88.

181. Corley, W. G., Sozen, M. A., and Siess, C. P., "Time-Dependent Deflections of Prestressed Concrete Beams," Highway Research Board Bulletin 307, National Academy of Sciences - National Research Council, Washington, D.C., 1960, pp. 1-25.

182. Corley, W. G., "Bibliography on Time-Dependent Effects in Plain and Reinforced Concrete," Department of Civil Engineering, University of Illinois, Urbana, Illinois, December 1959.

183. Corley, W. G., Sozen, M. A., and Siess, C. P., "A Study of Time-Dependent Deflections of Prestressed Concrete Beams," Structural Research Series No. 184, University of Illinois, Urbana, Illinois, October 1959.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

15. Corley, W. G. et al., "World Trade Center Building Performance Study: Data Collection, Preliminary Observations, and Recommendations," Federal Emergency Management Agency Mitigation Directorate, FEMA 403, Washington, D.C., May 2002.

16. Corley, W. G., "Learning from Collapses: From Oklahoma City to the World Trade Center," Tenth Annual Kavanagh Memorial Structural Engineering Lecture, The Pennsylvania State University, April 4, 2002.

17. Corley, W. G., Smith, R. G., and Colarusso, L. J., “Structural integrity and the Oklahoma City bombing,” Concrete Construction, A Hanley-Wood Publication, Addison, Illinois, December 2001, Vol. 46, No. 12, pp. 29-30.

18. Corley, W. G., “Lessons learned from the Oklahoma City bombing,” Learning from Construction Failures, Whittles Publishing, Scotland, UK, 2001, pp. 227-268.

19. Corley, W. G., Smith, R. G., and Colarusso, L. J., "Effects of structural integrity on damage from the Oklahoma City, USA bombing," The Investigation of Failures, Second International Conference on Forensic Engineering, London, UK, Nov. 12-13, 2001.

20. Corley, W. G., and Davis, A. G., “Forensic Engineering Moves Forward,” Civil Engineering, Vol. 71, No. 6, June 2001, pp.64-65.

21. Corley, W. G., Sturm, R., and Blubaugh, S. J., "Lessons Learned from the Oklahoma City Bombing (Part Two)," The Forensic Examiner, The American College of Forensic Engineers, March/April 2001, pp. 31-34.

22. Corley, W. G., Sturm, R., and Blubaugh, S. J., "Lessons Learned from the Oklahoma City Bombing (Part One)," The Forensic Examiner, The American College of Forensic Engineers, January/February 2001, pp. 17-19.

23. Corley, W. G., "The Case for Separate Licensing of Structural Engineers," Report on the National Summit on Separate Licensing of Structural Engineers, Council of American Structural Engineers/National Council of Structural Engineers Associations/Structural Engineering Institute, Reston, Virginia, Nov. 3, 2000.

24. Detwiler, R. J., Taylor, P. C., Powers, L. J., Corley, W. G., Delles, J. B., and Johnson, B. R., "Assessment of Concrete in Sulfate Soils," Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, American Society of Civil Engineers, August 2000, Vol. 14, No. 16, pp. 89-96.

25. Corley, W. G., "Getting Concrete Up to Strength for Chicago's Mega High-Rise Buildings," Engineering in the City of the Century, The John E. Goldberg Distinguished Lectures at Purdue University, June 2000, pp. 143-175.

26. Corley, W. G. and Oesterle, R. G., "Dynamic Analysis to Determine Source of Blast Damage," Abnormal Loading on Structures, E & FN Spon., London and New York, Spring 2000, pp. 85-92.

27. Detwiler, R. J., Taylor, P. C., Corley, W. G., Klemm, W. A., and Johansen, V. C., "Engineering and Science in Structural Forensic Work," Proceedings, Second Congress Forensic Engineering, ASCE, San Juan, Puerto Rico, May 21-23, 2000.

28. Mehrabi, A. B. and Corley, W. G., "Cable-Supported Bridges and Structures: health & safety monitoring and problem solving," The Structural Engineer, The Institution of Structural Engineers, London, England, 2 May 2000, pp. 17-20.

29. Corley, W. G., "Chapter 12, Concrete Structures," Forensic Structural Engineering Handbook, McGraw-Hill, New York, April 2000, pp. 12.1–12.48.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

30. Davis, A. G., Corley, W. G., and Petersen, C. G., "Hi-Tech Testing, Evaluation & Repair of Earthquake-Damaged Concrete Structures," Turkish Chamber of Civil Engineers Meeting, Middle East Technical University, Ankara, Turkey, November 1999.

31. Oliver, C., Tertell, P., Tezak, E. S., Corley, W. G., et al., "Midwest Tornadoes of May 3, 1999: Observations, Recommendations, and Technical Guidance," Federal Emergency Management Agency Mitigation Directorate, FEMA 342, Washington, D.C., October 1999.

32. Corley, W. G., Lim, M. K., and Kolf, P. R., "Use of Nondestructive Testing to Determine Physical Properties of Reinforced Concrete In-Situ," Proceedings, RILEM International Conference on NDT and Experimental Stress Analysis of Concrete Structures, Bratislava, Slovakia, October 1998.

33. Whiting, D. A., Corley, W. G., and Tabatabai, H., "Deterioration and Repair of Prestressed Concrete Bridge Members," National Research Council of Canada, Las Vegas, Nevada, September 1998.

34. Corley, W. G., "Reducing Collateral Damage From Malevolent Explosions: Things Learned From the Oklahoma City Bombing," Reunion del Concreto, Cartagena, Colombia, September 1998.

35. Corley, W. G., Mlakar, P. F. Sr., Sozen, M. A. and Thornton, C. H., "The Oklahoma City Bombing: Summary and Recommendations for Multi-Hazard Mitigation," Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, ASCE, August 1998, pp. 100-112.

36. Mlakar, P. F. Sr., Corley, W. G., Sozen, M. A., and Thornton, C. H., "The Oklahoma City Bombing: Analysis of Blast Damage to the Murrah Building," Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, ASCE, August 1998, pp. 113-119.

37. Sozen, M. A., Thornton, C. H., Corley, W. G., and Mlakar, P. F. Sr., "The Oklahoma City Bombing: Structure and Mechanisms of the Murrah Building," Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, ASCE, August 1998, pp.120-136.

38. Corley, W. G., "Protecting the International Public from Fools and Rascals: ACI & ISO Building Codes for the Millennium," JCI TC961 Symposium, Tokyo, July 1998, pp. 20-45.

39. Corley, W. G., "Reducing Collateral Damage From Malevolent Explosions: Things Learned From the Oklahoma City Bombing," Proceedings, Structural Engineers World Congress, San Francisco, California, July 1998.

40. Corley, W. G. and Michols, K. A., "Repair of Understrength Columns and Other Elements of a New Structure," Proceedings, Structural Engineers World Congress, San Francisco, California, July 1998.

41. Corley, W. G., "Can Structural Engineering Reduce Loss From Malevolent Bombings?," Structure, National Council of Structural Engineers Associations, Fall 1997, pp. 12-17.

42. Corley, W. G., Sturm, R. D., Sozen, M. A., Thornton, C. A., and Mlakar, P. F., "Using Forensic Engineering Techniques to Obtain Data From The Oklahoma City Bombing," Proceedings, First Forensic Engineering Congress, ASCE, Minneapolis, October 1997, pp. 36-43.

43. Corley, W. G., "Evaluating Structural Damage Caused by The Oklahoma City Bombing," Proceedings, 66th Annual Convention, Structural Engineers Association of California, September 1997, pp. 99-114.

44. Corley, W. G., "Strategy for Obtaining Corrosion Resistant Reinforced Concrete Bridges," Proceedings, RILEM International Conference on Concrete Bridges, Bratislava, Slovakia, September 1997.

45. Weaver, W. W., Sen, S. K., Corley, W. G., Crouse, C. B., McCallen, D. B., Murray, R. C., and Scanlon, A., "Independent Review of the Seismic Analyses for the H-Canyon at the Savannah River Site," U. S. Department of Energy, December 1996.

46. Corley, W. G., Sozen, M. A., Thornton, C. H., Mlakar, P. F., et. al., "The Oklahoma City Bombing: Improving Building Performance Through Multi-Hazard Mitigation," Federal Emergency Management Agency Mitigation Directorate, FEMA 277, Washington, D. C., August 30, 1996.

47. Weaver, W. W., Sen, S. K., Corley, W. G., Crouse, C. B., McCallen, D. B., Murray, R. C., and Scanlon, A., "Independent Review of the Seismic Analyses for the F-Canyon at the Savannah River Site," U. S. Department of Energy, August 1996.

48. Corley, W. G., "Experimental Basis for Changes in ACI 318-95 Related to Failures in 1994 Northridge Earthquake," Proceedings, International Seminar on Structural Assessment--The Role of Large and Full Scale Testing, Joint Institution of Structural Engineers/City University, London, June 1996.

49. Corley, W. G., "Repair to an Understrength Building," Proceedings, II International Scientific Conference on Analytical Models and New Concepts in Mechanics of Concrete Structures, Polish Academy of Sciences, Łó dź , June 1996, pp. 385-392.

50. Corley, W. G., Cluff, L., Hilmy, S., Holmes, W., and Wight, J., "Northridge Earthquake of January 17, 1994 Reconnaissance Report, Concrete Parking Structures," Earthquake Spectra, Volume 2, Supplement C, January 1996, pp. 75-98.

51. Corley, W. G., "Ductility of Columns, Walls, and Beams - How Much Is Enough?" The Tom Paulay Symposium, Recent Developments in Lateral Force Transfer in Buildings, University of California San Diego, La Jolla, California, American Concrete Institute, SP-157, Detroit, Michigan, November 1995, pp. 331-350.

52. Corley, W. G., "Designing Corrosion Resistance into Reinforced Concrete," Materials Performance, NACE International, Houston, September 1995.

53. Corley, W. G., Cichanski, W. J., and Morgan, B. J., "Innovation Yields Valuable Data in Major Bridge Evaluation," Structural Engineering Forum, March 1994.

54. Corley, W. G., "Precast Concrete Parking Garages," Northridge Earthquake, January 17, 1994, Preliminary Reconnaissance Report, EERI, Oakland, CA, March 1994.

55. Corley, W. G., Cichanski, W. J., and Morgan, B. J., "Tacoma Narrows Bridge, Innovation is the Key to Bridge Evaluation," SEAOI Bulletin, August 1993, pp. 10-12.

56. Corley, W. G., "Serviceability Design for Durability in Concrete," Proceedings, Tenth Biennial Lecture Series, Structural Division Illinois Section ASCE, April 1993, 16 pp.

57. Vincent, J. F., Corley, W. G., and Kosel, H. C., "Do Not Disturb," Modern Steel Construction, Vol. 33, No. 2, February 1993, pp. 22-25.

58. Corley, W. G., "Multi-story Frames Subject to Static Loading," Small Scale Modelling of Concrete Structures, ed. Noor, F. A. and Boswell, L. F., Elsevier Science Publishers Ltd., Barking, England, 1992, Pages 209-227.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

59. Corley, W. G., "Protecting the Public from Fools and Rascals - Building Codes for the Millennium," Concrete International, Vol. 14, No. 9, September 1992, pp. 57-62.

60. Azizinamini, A., Corley, W. G., and Johal, L. S. P., "Effects of Transverse Reinforcement on Seismic Performance of Columns," ACI Structural Journal, American Concrete Institute, July-August 1992, Vol. 89, No. 4, pp. 442-450.

61. Cohen, J. M., Corley, W. G., Wong, P. K., and Hanson, J. M., "Research Needs Related to Forensic Engineering of Constructed Facilities," Journal of Performance of Constructed Facilities, American Society of Civil Engineers, February 1992, Vol. 6, No. 1, pp. 3-11.

62. Corley, W. G., Vincent, J. F., Lim, M K., and Olson, C. A., "Nondestructive Evaluation and Repair of an Understrength Building," Proceedings, of Seminario Internacional Evaluacion de Estructuras de Concreto, Mexico, D.F., May 30-31, 1991.

63. Lin, T. D., Lie, T. T., Burg, R. G., and Corley, W. G., "Fire Loading of Modern Reinforced Concrete Columns," Proceedings, of the International Seminar on Structural Design for Hazardous Loads - The Role of Physical Testing, Joint Institution of Structural Engineers/Building Research Establishment, Brighton, England, April 17-19, 1991.

64. Corley, W. G., "Structural Standards For Tall Concrete and Masonry Buildings in the Next Century," Proceedings, Fourth World Congress of Council on Tall Buildings and Urban Habitat, Hong Kong, November 5-9, 1990.

65. Michols, K. A. and Corley, W. G., "Evaluation and Repair of Distressed Multistory Parking Structure," Presented at Frontiers in Structural Engineering - A Symposium Honoring Narbey Khachaturian, University of Illinois, Urbana, Illinois, October 31, 1989.

66. Morgan, B. J., Oesterle, R. G., and Corley, W. G., "Assessing Structures Through Field Measured Dynamic Response," Proceedings, of the International Seminar on the Life of Structures - The Role of Physical Testing, Joint Institution of Structural Engineers/Building Research Establishment, Brighton, England, April 24-26, 1989.

67. Azizinamini, A., Johal, L. S., Hanson, N. W., Musser, D. W., and Corley, W. G., "Effects of Transverse-Reinforcement on Seismic Performance of Columns - A Partial Parametric Investigation," final report to the National Science Foundation, Washington, D.C., Construction Technology Laboratories, Inc., September 1988.

68. Azizinamini, A., Johal, L. S., Musser, D. W., and Corley, W. G., "Assessment of Different Transverse Reinforcement Detail in Earthquake Environment," Proceedings, Ninth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Tokyo-Kyoto, Japan, August 2-9, 1988.

69. Corley, W. G., "Perspectives on Fostering the Building Code Process," U. S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 88-13-A, A Review of Research Applications in the National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program: 1977-1987, p. 392.

70. Corley, W. G., "Research Related to Performance of Columns in Special Moment Resisting Frames," Proceedings, U.S. - Japan Seminar on Earthquake Resistant Design of Buildings, Tokyo, Japan, July 1987.

71. Johal, L. S., Azizinamini, A., Musser, D. W., and Corley, W. G., "Seismic Evaluation of Columns to Improve Design Criteria for Transverse Reinforcement," Proceedings, Fifth Canadian Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Ottawa, Canada, July 1987.

72. Saatcioglu, M., Derecho, A. T., Corley, W. G., "Parametric Study of Earthquake-Resistant Coupled Walls," Journal of Structural Engineering, American Society of Civil Engineers, January 1987, Vol. 113, No. 1, pp. 141-157.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

73. Ghosh, S. K. and Corley, W. G., "Behavior of Reinforced Concrete Framing Systems," Proceedings, American Society of Civil Engineers International Conference on the 1985 Mexico Earthquakes, Boston, Massachusetts, October 1986.

74. Corley, W. G., "BSSC/NEHRP Seismic Design Program," Proceedings, Western States Seismic Policy Council 1986 Annual Conference, Jackson, Wyoming, October 1986.

75. Fratessa, P. F. and Corley, W. G., "Predicted and Observed Response of Concrete Structures in Mexico City," Proceedings, Structural Engineers Association of California 53rd Annual Convention, Sacramento, California, September 1986.

76. Daniel, J.I., Shiu, K.N., Corley, W.G., "Openings in Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls," Journal of Structural Engineering, American Society of Civil Engineers, July 1986, Vol. 112, No. 7, pp. 1660-1676.

77. Corley, W. G., "Commentary on Structural Standards," High-Rise Buildings: Recent Progress, Council on Tall Buildings & Urban Habitat, 1986, pp. 209-215.

78. Corley, W. G., "A Consecuencia De Los Sismos," Revista IMCYC 176, Vol. 23, Diciembre-Enero 1986, pp. 155-161.

79. Forbes, M. A., Ghosh, S. K., and Corley, W. G., "Application of the 1985 Blue Book to a Reinforced Concrete Building," Proceedings, Structural Engineers Association of California 52nd Annual Convention 1985, Coronado, California, October 1985.

80. Morgan, B., Hiraishi, H., and Corley, W. G., "Medium Scale Wall Assemblies: Comparison of Analysis and Test Results," Earthquake Effects on Reinforced Concrete Structures, U.S.-Japan Research, ACI Publication SP-84, 1985.

81. Oesterle, R. G., Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Shiu, K. N., and Corley, W. G., "Web Crushing of Reinforced Concrete Structural Walls," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, No. 3 Proceedings V. 81, May-June 1984, pp. 231-241.

82. Shiu, K. N., Takayanagi, T., and Corley, W. G., "Seismic Behavior of Coupled Wall Systems," Journal of Structural Engineering, American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. 110, No. 5, May 1984.

83. Rabbat, B. G. and Corley, W. G., "Long-Time Fatigue Properties of High Yield Reinforcing Bars," Materials and Structures, RILEM, January-February 1984, Vol. 97, pp. 35-38.

84. Vanderbilt, M. D. and Corley, W. G., "Frame Analysis of Concrete Buildings," Concrete International: Design and Construction, December 1983, pp. 33-43.

85. Fiorato, A. E., Oesterle, R. G. and Corley, W. G., "Behavior of Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls Before and After Repairs," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, No. 5 Proceedings V. 80, September-October 1983, pp. 403-413.

86. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Design of Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls," Proceedings of Fourth Canadian Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Vancouver, Canada, June 1983, pp. 81-91.

87. Saatcioglu, M., Derecho, A. T., and Corley, W. G., "Modeling Hysteretic Behavior of Coupled Walls for Dynamic Analysis," Reprinted from Earthquake Engineering and Structural Dynamics, Vol. II (1983), 16 pp.

88. Hanson, N. W., Rowe, T. J., Anstedt, D., and Corley, W. G., "Vibration Techniques for Evaluation of Defects in Concrete," American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Productive Applications of Mechanical Vibrations, Vol. 52, pp. 107-112, Presented at the Winter Annual Meeting of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, November 1982.

89. Scanlon, A. and Corley, W. G., "Evaluation and Improvement of Bridge Foundations," Proceedings, IABSE Symposium, September 1982.

90. Schultz, D. M., Hanson, N. W., Fintel, M., and Corley, W. G., "State-of-the-Art Precast Prestressed Building Structures," Proceedings, Sino-American Symposium, Beijing, China, September 1982.

91. Corley, W. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Oesterle, R. G., "Repair of Structural Walls," Proceedings, Seventh European Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Athens, Greece, September 1982.

92. Corley, W. G., Hanson, J. M., and Helgason, T., "Background of American Design Procedure for Fatigue of Concrete," Proceedings, IABSE Colloquium of Steel and Concrete Structures, Lausanne, Switzerland, March 1982.

93. Shiu, K. N., Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Barney, G. B., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake Resistant Structural Walls - Coupled Wall Tests," Final Report to National Science Foundation, Available through National Technical Information Services, Order No. PB82-131954, 1982.

94. Shiu, K. N, Daniel, J. I, Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake Resistant Structural Walls - Tests of Walls With and Without Openings," Final report to the National Science Foundation, Available through National Technical Information Services, Order No. PB82-131947.

95. Corley, W. G., Fiorato, A.E., and Oesterle, R. G., "Structural Walls," ACI C.P. Siess Symposium Volume, SPT-2 American Concrete Institute, Detroit, Michigan, 1981.

96. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Discussion of Strong and Tough Concrete Columns for Seismic Forces," Journal of the Structural Division, American Society of Civil Engineers, August 1981, Vol. 107, No. ST8.

97. Derecho, A. T., Iqbal, M., Fintel, M., Corley, W. G., and Scanlon, A., "Structural Walls in Earthquake Resistant Buildings - Dynamic Analysis of Isolated Structural Walls - Development of Design Procedure - Design Force Levels," National Science Foundation, Available through National Technical Information Services, Order No. PB82-147794, July 1981.

98. Saatcioglu, M., Derecho, A. T., Corley, W. G., Parmelee, R. A., and Scanlon, A., "Coupled Walls in Earthquake Resistant Buildings: Parametric Investigation and Design Procedure," National Science Foundation, Available through National Technical Information Services, Order No. PB82-147901, July 1981.

99. Takayanagi, T., Scanlon, A., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls - Analysis of Coupled Wall Specimens," National Science Foundation, Available through National Technical Information Services, Order No. PB82-149048, July 1981.

100. Corley, W. G., Fiorato, A. E., Oesterle, R. G., and Scanlon, A., "Evaluation, Repair, and Strengthening of Reinforced Concrete Buildings," Proceedings, US/PRC Workshop on Seismic Analysis and Design of Reinforced Concrete Structures, May 4-8, 1981.

101. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Effects of Reinforcement Details on Seismic Performance of Walls," Proceedings, Earthquakes and Earthquake Engineering: The Eastern

United States, Volume 2, Ann Arbor Science Publishers, Inc., Ann Arbor, Michigan, pp. 685-707, 1981.

102. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Reinforcement Details for Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls," Concrete International: Design and Construction, December 1980, Vol. 2, No. 12, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD073, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), pp. 55-66 .

103. Corley, W. G., Fintel, M., Fiorato, A. E., and Derecho, A. T., "Earthquake Engineering Research at the Portland Cement Association: A Progress Report," Proceedings, Seventh World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Istanbul, Turkey, September 1980, Vol. 9, pp. 17-32.

104. Derecho, A. T., Iqbal, M., and Corley, W. G., "Determining Design Force Levels for Earthquake-Resistant Reinforced Concrete Structural Walls," Proceedings, Seventh World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Istanbul, Turkey, September 1980, Vol. 4, pp. 1-8.

105. Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Tension Lap Splices Under Severe Load Reversals," Proceedings, Seventh World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Istanbul, Turkey, September 1980, Vol. 7, pp. 55-62.

106. Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls - Tests of Lap Splices, Final Report," National Science Foundation (NSF/RA-800497), Available through National Technical Information Services, Order No. PB81-188369, 1980.

107. Fiorato, A. E. and Corley, W. G., "Tests of Heat Transfer Through Walls," Proceedings, IABSE 11th Congress, August-September 1980, pp. 537-542.

108. Corley, W. G., Colley, B. E., Hanna, A. N., Nussbaum, P. N., and Russell, H. G., "Prestressed Concrete in Transportation Systems," PCI Journal, 1980.

109. Barney, G. B., Shiu, K. N., Rabbat, B. G., Fiorato, A. E., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Behavior of Coupling Beams Under Load Reversals," Research and Development Bulletin, RD068, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois, 1980, 22 pp.

110. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., and Corley, W. G., "Hysteretic Response of Reinforced Concrete Structural Walls," ACI Special Symposium Volume, SP63, 1980.

111. Cardenas, A. E., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Strength of Low-Rise Structural Walls," ACI Special Symposium Volume, SP63, 1980.

112. Takayanagi, T., Derecho, A. T., and Corley, W. G., "Analysis of Inelastic Shear Deformation Effects in Reinforced Concrete Structural Wall Systems," Nonlinear Design of Concrete Structures, CSCE-ASCE-ACI-CEB International Symposium, University of Waterloo, Ontario, Canada, August 7-9, 1979.

113. Corley, W. G., "Shear in Two-Way Slabs - ACI Approach," ACI-CEB-PCI-FIP Symposium, ACI Publication SP-59, CEB Bulletin 113, pp. 177-192, 1979.

114. Russell, H. G., Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Applicability of Structural Wall Test Results to Seismic Design of Nuclear Facilities," Journal, Nuclear Engineering and Design, October 1978, Vol. 50, pp. 49-56.

115. Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Cyclic Inelastic Behavior of Structural Walls," Proceedings, Sixth European Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Vol. 3, Tests on Structures and Structural Elements, Dubrovnik, Yugoslavia, September 1978, pp. 231-238.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

116. Derecho, A. T., Iqbal, M., Ghosh, S. K., Fintel, M., and Corley, W. G., "Structural Walls in Earthquake-Resistant Buildings, Dynamic Analysis of Isolated Structural Walls - REPRESENTATIVE LOADING HISTORY," Report to the National Science Foundation (ASRA) under Grant No. ENV77-15333, August 1978.

117. Fiorato, A. E., Oesterle, R. G., and Corley, W. G., "Importance of Reinforcement Details in Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls," Proceedings, Workshop on Earthquake-Resistant Reinforced Concrete Building Construction, pp. 1430-1451, Berkeley, California, June 1978.

118. Corley, W. G., Hanson, J. M., and Helgason, T., "Design of Reinforced Concrete for Fatigue," Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD059, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), June 1978, pp. 921-932.

119. Derecho, A. T., Iqbal, M., Fintel, M., and Corley, W. G., "Loading History for Use in Quasi-Static Simulated Earthquake Loading Tests," Proceedings, Symposium on Mathematical Modelling of Reinforced Concrete Structures Subjected to Wind and Earthquake Forces, Toronto, Canada, April 1978.

120. Iqbal, M., Derecho, A. T., and Corley, W. G., "Distribution of Inertial Forces Over the Heights of Reinforced Concrete Structural Walls Subjected to Strong Ground Motion," Proceedings, Symposium on Mathematical Modelling of Reinforced Concrete Structures Subjected to Wind and Earthquake Forces, Toronto, Canada, April 1978.

121. Iqbal, M., Derecho, A. T., and Corley, W. G., "Ductility and Energy Dissipation in Earthquake-Resistant Reinforced Concrete Structural Walls," Proceedings, Symposium on Behavior of Building Systems and Building Compliments, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Tennessee, March 1978.

122. Fiorato, A. E., Oesterle, R. G., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Tests of Structural Walls Under Reversing Loads," Proceedings, Central American Conference on Earthquake Engineering, San Salvador, El Salvador, January 1978.

123. Shiu, K. N., Barney, G. B., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Reversing Load Tests of Reinforced Concrete Coupling Beams," Proceedings, Central American Conference on Earthquake Engineering, San Salvador, El Salvador, January 1978, pp. 239-249.

124. Barney, G. B., Shiu, K. N., Rabbat, G. B., Fiorato, A. E., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls - Tests of Coupling Beams," Report to National Science Foundation, available through National Technical Information Service, January 1978.

125. Kaar, P. H., Fiorato, A. E., Carpenter, J. E., and Corley, W. G., "Limiting Strains of Concrete Confined by Rectangular Hoops," Research and Development Bulletin RD053, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois, 1978, 12 pp.

126. Russell, H. G. and Corley, W. G., "Time-Dependent Behavior of Columns in Water Tower Place," Douglas McHenry International Symposium on Concrete and Concrete Structures, ACI Symposium Volume SP-55, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD052, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), 1977, 10 pp.

127. Barney, G. B., Corley, W. G., Hanson, J. M., and Parmelee, R. A., "Behavior and Design of Prestressed Concrete Beams with Large Web Openings," Journal of Prestressed Concrete Institute, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD054 Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois) November/December 1977, pp. 32-61.

128. Fiorato, A. E. and Corley, W. G., "Laboratory Tests of Earthquake-Resistant Structural Wall Systems and Elements," Proceedings, Workshop on Earthquake-Resistant Reinforced Concrete Building Construction, Berkeley, California, July 1977, pp. 1388-1429.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

129. Corley, W. G., (Committee Chairman) ACI Committee 443, "Recommended Practice for Analysis and Design of Reinforced Concrete Bridge Structures," American Concrete Institute, Detroit, Michigan, March 1977.

130. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., and Corley, W. G., "Free Vibration Tests of Structural Walls," Proceedings, Sixth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, India, January 1977.

131. Kaar, P. H. and Corley, W. G., "Properties of Confined Concrete for Design of Earthquake-Resistant Structures," Proceedings, Sixth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, India, January 1977.

132. Fiorato, A. E., Oesterle, R. G., and Corley, W. G., "Ductility of Structural Walls for Design of Earthquake-Resistant Buildings," Proceedings, Sixth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, India, January 1977.

133. Oesterle, R. G., Fiorato, A. E., Johal, P., Carpenter, J. E., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls-Tests of Isolated Walls, Report to the National Science Foundation, Available through National Technical Information Service, November 1976.

134. Corley, W. G., (Committee Chairman) ACI Committee 443, "Prestressed Concrete Bridge Design," ACI Journal, Proceedings, November 1976, Vol. 73, No. 11, pp. 597-612.

135. Oesterle, R. G., Aristizabal-Ochoa, J. D., Fiorato, A. E., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Earthquake-Resistant Structural Walls-Tests of Isolated Walls-Phase II," Report to National Science Foundation, November 1976.

136. Corley, W. G., "Improved Seismic Design-Influence of Current Structural Concrete Research," Proceedings, Structural Engineers Association of California 1976 Convention, October 1976, pp. 47-59.

137. Hanson, N. W., Russell, H. G., Corley, W. G., Schultz, D. M., and Fintel, M., "Tests of Cantilever Action in Damaged Large Panel Structures," Preliminary Report of the Tenth Congress of IABSE, September 1976.

138. Barda, F., Hanson, J. M., and Corley, W. G., "Shear Strength of Low-Rise Walls with Boundary Elements," ACI Special Publication SP-53, Reinforced Concrete Structures in Seismic Zones, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD043, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), 1976.

139. Kaar, P. H., Fiorato, A. E., Carpenter, J. E., and Corley, W. G., "Confined Concrete in Compression Zones of Structural Walls Designed to Resist Lateral Loads Due to Earthquakes," Proceedings, International Symposium on Earthquake Structural Engineering, University of Missouri-Rolla, St. Louis, Missouri, 1976, pp. 1207-1218.

140. Fiorato, A. E., Oesterle, R. G., Kaar, P. H., Barney, G. B., Rabbat, B. G., Carpenter, J. E., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Highlights of an Experimental Investigation of the Seismic Performance of Structural Walls," Proceedings, ASCE/EMD Specialty Conference Volume - Dynamic Response of Structures: Instrumentation, Test Methods and System Identification, University of California, Los Angeles, California, 1976, pp. 308-317.

141. Carpenter, J. E., Hanson, J. M., Fiorato, A. E., Russell, H. G., Meinheit, D. F., Rosenthal, I., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Design of Bent Caps for Concrete Box-Girder Bridges," NCHRP Bulletin 163, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, D.C., Part I, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD032, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), 1975. 24 pp.

PUBLICATIONS (Continued)

142. Helgason, T., Hanson, J. M., Somes, N. F., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Fatigue Strength of High-Yield Reinforcing Bars," NCHRP Bulletin 164, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, D.C., (also Research and Development Bulletin RD045, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), 1976, 31 pp.

143. Corley, W. G., "Laboratory Tests of Shear Walls for Multi-Story Buildings," Proceedings, Fifth European Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Istanbul, Turkey, September 1975.

144. Helgason, T., Russell, H. G., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Time-Dependent Behavior of Columns in the World's Tallest Reinforced Concrete Building," Preliminary Reports, Behavior in Service of Concrete Structures, Vol. I., Liege, Belgium, June 1975, pp. 343-353.

145. Corley, W. G., "Put Openings in Your Beams," Concrete Construction, February 1975, pp. 47-49.

146. Corley, W. G., Carpenter, J. E., Russell, H. G., Hanson, N. W., Cardenas, A. E., Helgason, T., Hanson, J. M., and Hognestad, E., "Construction and Testing of 1/10-Scale Micro-Concrete Model of New Potomac River Crossing, I-266," Research and Development Bulletin RD031, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois, 1975, 12 pp.

147. Corley, W. G., (Committee Chairman) ACI Committee 443, "Analysis and Design of Reinforced Concrete Bridge Structures," ACI Journal, Proceedings, Vol. 71, No. 4, April 1974, pp. 171-200.

148. Kaar, P. H., Hanson, N. W., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Bond Fatigue Tests of Pretensioned Concrete Crossties," FIP/PCI Congress, New York, New York, 1974.

149. Barney, G. B., Corley, W. G., Hanson, J. M., and Parmelee, R. A., "Design of Prestressed Concrete Beams with Large Web Openings," FIP/PCI Congress, New York, New York, 1974.

150. Hawkins, N. M. and Corley, W. G., "Moment Transfer to Columns in Slabs with Shearhead Reinforcement," ACI Special Publication SP-42, Shear in Reinforced Concrete, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD037, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), 1974.

151. Corley, W. G., "Ductile Shear Walls in Multi-Story Buildings-Laboratory Tests," Proceedings, 42nd Annual Convention of SEAOC, October 1973.

152. Somes, N. F. and Corley, W. G., "Circular Openings in Webs of Continuous Joists," ACI Symposium Volume SP-42, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD018, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), June 1973, 16 pp.

153. Corley, W. G., (Committee Chairman) ACI Committee 443, "Preliminary Design and Proportioning of Reinforced Concrete Bridge Structures," ACI Journal, Proceedings, Vol. 70, No. 5, May 1973, pp. 328-336.

154. Cardenas, A. E., Hanson, J. M., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Design Provisions for Shear Walls," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, No. 3, Proceedings, Vol. 70, No. 3, (also Research and Development Bulletin RD028, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, Illinois), March 1973, pp. 221-230.

155. Barda, F., Hanson, J. M., and Corley, W. G., "An Investigation of the Design and Repair of Low-Rise Shear Walls," Proceedings from Fifth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Rome, Italy, Vol. 1, June 1973, pp. 872-881.

156. Corley, W. G. and Hanson, J. M., "Design of Earthquake-Resistant Walls," Fifth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Rome, Italy, 1973.

157. Carpenter, J. E., Kaar, P. H., and Corley, W. G., "Design of Ductile Flat-Plate Structures to Resist Earthquakes," Proceedings from Fifth World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Rome, Italy, Vol. 2, June 1973, pp. 2016-2019.

158. Hanson, J. M., Carpenter, J. E., and Corley, W. G., "Analysis and Design of Concrete Bridge Bents (NCHRP Project No. 12-10)," 58th Annual Meeting of AASHO, Phoenix, Arizona, November 1972.

159. Hanson, J. M., Corley, W. G., and Hognestad, E., "Evaluation of Structural Concrete Members Penetrated by Service Systems," U.S. Department of Commerce, National Bureau of Standards, Special Publication 361, Volume 1, Performance Concept in Buildings, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1972, pp. 545-556.

160. Corley, W. G. and Hognestad, E., "Tests of a 1/10-Scale Concrete Model to Aid Design of a Large Prestressed Bridge," Proceedings, 9th Congress of IABSE, Amsterdam, May 1972.

161. Corley, W. G., et. al., ACI Committee 435, Subcommittee 2, "Variability of Deflections of Simply Supported Reinforced Concrete Beams," ACI Journal, Proceedings, V. 69, No. 1, January 1972, pp. 29-35.

162. Corley, W. G., Russell, H. G., Cardenas, A. E., Carpenter, J. E., Hanson, J. M., Hanson, N. W., Helgason, T. and Hognestad, E., "Design Ultimate Load Test of 1/10 Scale Micro-Concrete Model of New Potomac River Crossing, I-266," Journal of the Prestressed Concrete Institute, Vol. 16, No. 6, November-December 1971, pp. 70-84.

163. Magura, D. D. and Corley, W. G., "Tests to Destruction of Multi-Panel Waffle Slab Structures-1964-65 New York World's Fair," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, Digest Paper, September 1971.

164. Hawkins, N. W. and Corley, W. G., "Transfer of Unbalanced Moment and Shear from Flat Plates to Columns," Paper SP 30-7, ACI Special Publication SP-30, Detroit, Michigan, 1971.

165. Corley, W. G., "Performance of Structures in 1971 Los Angeles Shock," Proceedings, 47th Annual Meeting of the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute, CRSI, Chicago, Illinois 1971.

166. Pfeifer, D. W., Magura, D. D., Russell, H. G., and Corley, W. G., "Time-Dependent Deformation in a 70-Story Structure," ACI Special Publication SP-27, Detroit, Michigan, 1971.

167. Corley, W. G. and Jirsa, J. O., "Equivalent Frame Analysis for Slab Design," Journal of the American Concrete Institute, November 1970.

168. Kaar, P. H., Conner, H. W., and Corley, W. G., "Moment Redistribution in a Precast Concrete Rigid Frame," Journal of the Structural Divison of ASCE, March 1970.

169. Corley, W. G., "1969 Portland Cement Association Research on Shear Walls," Proceedings of the 1969 Annual Meeting of the Structural Engineers of California, 1969.

170. Corley, W. G., "Effect of Research on the Future of Concrete Bridge Design," Proceedings of the Colorado State University Bridge Seminar, Ft. Collins, Colorado, 1969.

171. Corley, W. G. and Hanson, N. W., "Design of Beam-Column Joints for Seismic Resistant Reinforced Concrete Frames," Proceedings, 4th World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Santiago, Chile, 1969.

JEFFREY L. GARRETT

PRESIDENT AND CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER

CTLGROUP
5400 OLD ORCHARD ROAD
SKOKIE, ILLINOIS 60077-1030
Phone: 847-972-3210 Fax: 847-965-6541
JGarrett@CTLGroup.com
www.CTLGroup.com

PRINCIPAL EXPERIENCE

Dr. Garrett's principal work includes forensic investigations, failure analyses, and root-cause determination of structural system failures. His expertise extends to the static and dynamic performance, behavior, and analysis of structural systems; structural damage and condition assessments; remedial structural designs; and foundation and retaining structure analysis and design. He consults on cases involving professional standard of care and building codes and standards related to structural design and construction. Finally, Dr. Garrett provides legal and litigation support on cases involving structural failures, structural performance issues, and professional design and standard of care issues.

- Investigated the collapse of a 1,200-ft-tall TV transmission tower in rural Texas.
- Investigated the partial collapse of the roof of a pre-engineered metal building used as a bowling alley in Pennsylvania.
- Investigated the collapse of the 500-ft-tall crawler crane at the Miller Park Baseball Stadium construction site. Nonlinear structural and stability analyses were performed on models of the crane components and its load at the time of the collapse.
- Investigated the collapse of several monopole structures along the interstate highways in Ohio and Illinois.
- Investigated the collapse, during construction, of 120-ft span of precast concrete girder bridge, Interstate Highway Bridge Collapse, Oahu, Hawaii.
- Investigated the partial collapse of 100-ft-span scaffolding suspended beneath the Queensboro Bridge, New York.
- Investigated the collapse of 60-ft-diameter fiberglass dome used to protect a satellite communication antenna, Thule Air Force Base, Greenland.
- Investigated the partial collapse, during construction, of the cable-stayed, 600-foot-span, steel roof, Olympic Ice Skating Venue Collapse, Salt Lake City, Utah.

Design Projects: Dr. Garrett has completed the structural design for over $1.6 billion worth of construction of all types of structures, from award-winning single-family houses to 45-story retail/commercial complexes. Projects include the Corporate Headquarters Building for the Philips Petroleum Company, Bartlesville, Oklahoma; addition to the University of Minnesota Hospital, St. Paul, Minnesota; addition and renovation of Skokie Valley Hospital, Skokie, Illinois; and Motorola's Cellular Facility, Harvard, Illinois.

EDUCATION

Iowa State University
- Ph.D. Civil (Structural) Engineering, 2003
- M.S. Structural Engineering, 1977
- B.A. Architecture, 1973

PROFESSIONAL REGISTRATION

Licensed Structural Engineer - Illinois
Licensed Professional Engineer - Alaska, Arizona, Arkansas, Colorado, Georgia, Idaho, Indiana, Iowa, Kentucky, Louisiana, Michigan, Minnesota, Montana, New Mexico, New York, North Carolina, Oklahoma, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, Wisconsin, Wyoming

BUSINESS EXPERIENCE

CTLGroup
- President and Chief Executive Officer, 2007-
- Senior Principal Structural Engineer & Group Manager, 2001-2007

Exponent Failure Analysis Associates
- Senior Managing Engineer, 1996-2001

Globetrotter Engineering
- Project Engineer, 1994-1996

Hansen, Lind, Meyer, Architects & Planners
- Managing Principal, 1987-1994

Gillum Consulting Engineers, St. Louis, Missouri
Henningson, Durham & Richardson, Omaha, Nebraska

PROFESSIONAL ASSOCIATIONS

American Society of Civil Engineers (Member)
Structural Engineers Association of Illinois (Member)
American Bar Association Construction Forum (Member)
American Institute of Steel Construction (Member)
American Concrete Institute (Member)
American Society of Wind Engineering (Member)

PRESENTATIONS

Dr. Garrett has lectured on various topics of investigative, forensic, and wind engineering to academic, professional and civic organizations and institutions. He has also taught undergraduate-level structural engineering courses at Iowa State University.

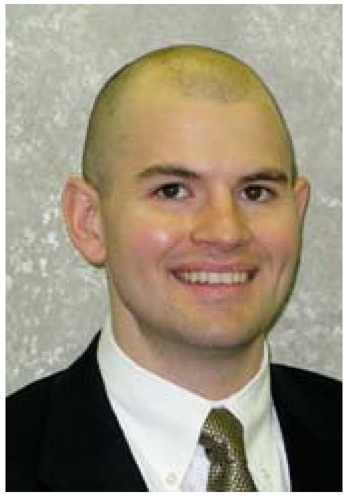
PUBLICATIONS

1. Garrett, J. L., "Flow-Induced Vibration of Elastically Supported Rectangular Cylinders," doctoral dissertation, Iowa State University, December 2003.

2. Garrett, J. L., "Effect of a Tuned Mass Damper on Wind-Induced Vibrations," Americas Conference on Wind Engineering, American Association for Wind Engineering, Clemson University, May 2001.

David P. Drengenberg

Engineer III



CTLGroup
5400 Old Orchard Road
Skokie, Illinois 60077-1030
Phone: 847-972-3064 Fax: 847-965-6541
www.CTLGroup.com

Representative Projects

- Supervised team of field engineers performing extensive structural demolition and repair of $110 million public project. Facilitated cooperation between multi-party engineering, project management and contractor team members involved in complex repair protocols. Provided quality-control oversight of custom repair installations.

- Performed field investigation and discovery document review for lawsuit stemming from structural failure of building components in Southeast U.S. Provided litigation support including reports, responses to interrogatories, and court exhibits. The project team documented extensive structural damage and repair execution for litigants.

- Field-Managed team of engineers performing construction quality and safety inspections of over 100 properties for the City of New York. Produced formal recommendations regarding safety and construction practices for the City of New York.

Professional Profile

Mr. Drengenberg joined CTLGroup in 2002 with the completion of his Master of Science in Structural Engineering from the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. His principal experience with CTLGroup has included structural investigations and assessments; structural analyses and design calculations for evaluation of existing structures; solutions for construction problems; construction related repair and rehabilitation of existing structures; on-site observation and construction services; and administration, development of repairs, and observation of execution of remedial structural demolition and repairs.

Prior to CTLGroup, Mr. Drengenberg acted as a structural laboratory manager, senior teaching assistant, and lecturer at the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.

Education

Master of Science in Structural Engineering
University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2003

Bachelor of Science in Civil Engineering
University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2001

Registrations

Professional Engineer – Illinois

Presentations

Mr. Drengenberg has lectured on various topics of investigative and forensic engineering to academic and professionally affiliated student organizations.

MANFRED R. KOHLER, Dipl. Ing.
2030 Ponderosa Street
Portsmouth, VA 20147
USA
(757) 405-0311
E-mail: mkohler@cranetechsolutions.com

SUMMARY:

Born and educated in Germany with work experience in Germany and the USA. Transferred to the USA by Peiner AG (a former subsidiary of Salzgitter AG) in 1971. Since then, represented German companies in the American and global marketplace, responsible for marketing, engineering, service, manufacturing, legal, financing and cost control. Demonstrated ability to form a profitable team and shareholder value oriented organization.

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS:

CraneTech Solutions, LLC **4/1/05 to Present**
Chief Executive Officer, Member

Reshaped the business model to incorporate new technologies for introduction to the marine industry that increases the port's efficiency and lower their cost. In addition, CTS has expanded its product and service offering to the construction and government verticals.

Kohler Crane Inc. (formerly Noell Crane & Service, Inc.) **4/1/97 to Present**
President & Chief Executive Officer and
Member of Board. Purchased company in 2000.

NOELL, INC., Herndon, Virginia **1994 to April 1997**
Vice President, Crane and Material Handling Division
Hydro Division

Crane and Material Handling Division

- Started and managed Noell, Inc.'s Crane Division.
- Generated revenues within a three year period of over $120 million from a virtually untapped market and established product recognition in the United States marketplace.
- Created a self-sufficient and profitable sales, service and crane rental organization.
- Established from the ground up a growth potential service and rigging organization.
- Initiated, negotiated and closed sales contracts up to $56 million.
- Provided budget-oriented business plan and implemented cost and inventory control systems.
- Set up alliances with bankers, contractors and suppliers for major global projects.

Hydro Division

- Appointed to manage Byrd Dam project (fabrication and installation of eight (8) 330 ton roller gates at the Ohio River). Implemented various cost saving procedures and replaced previous management in order to limit the company's existing exposure. Re-established professional working environment with client and sub-contractors and created new team spirit.

AMERICAN PECCO CORPORATION, Millwood, New York
(former subsidiary of Salzgitter AG - Germany)

Executive Vice President **1986 - 1994**

- Managed multi-million dollar tower crane fabrication, sales and service operations located in the US.
- Boosted company revenues significantly by introducing new product lines with changing market conditions.
- Represented the company in all legal cases and contract negotiations.

Vice President-Engineering **1981 - 1986**

- Planned, built and managed manufacturing facility in Houston, Texas for crane, hoist and concrete pump production.
- Managed company's engineering department.
- Set up manufacturing of crane and hoist components in Singapore and Hong Kong.

Chief Engineer **1972- 1981**

- Headed engineering team for tower crane, elevator and concrete pump design.
- Supervised civil engineering projects.
- Handled product approval with various governmental agencies.

Mechanical Engineer **1971 - 1972**

- Designed and performed static calculations for tower cranes.
- Acted as liaison between the German parent company and its American subsidiary.

ENGINEERING OFFICE, HANS TAX, MUNICH, GERMANY

Structural Engineer and Team Leader **1968 - 1971**

- Static calculation and design for container, shipyard, bulk handling and tower cranes.

EDUCATION:

- Dipl. Ing. Mechanical Engineering
- Welding engineer (Schweissfachingenieur)
- Mechanic with Journeyman Certificate

PATENTS:

- Holds several U.S. patents specializing in crane design.

PROFESSIONAL AFFILIATIONS:

- SAE - Committee Chairman for establishing tower crane codes in USA.
- SAE/ANSI Subcommittee member for crane standards B30.3 and B30.4.
- ANSI 10.4 and 17.1 Subcommittee member for construction of special purpose elevators.

EXPERT WITNESS FOR SEVERAL LAWSUITS

FRANK HEGAN
2030 Ponderosa Street
Portsmouth, VA 23701
Email: fhegan@ct-sol.com

SUMMARY:

Over 25 years of management experience in various industries such as: Engineering, construction, manufacturing, and professional services for commercial and government (Federal, State, and municipal) companies. Some of the positions held are: Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer and President (CTS).

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS:

Kohler Crane Inc. (formerly Noell Crane & Service, Inc.) **1997 to Present**
Member of the Board

Instrumental in developing policies and guiding the growth of the Company with other members of the Board.

CraneTech Solutions, LLC ("CTS"), Portsmouth, VA **2003 to Present**
President, Member

Manages the day to day activity of the company with bottom line responsibility. The company has increased its product and service offering from primarily heavy equipment sales and services to the marine and steel industries to include integration of technology products and services to its present customer base and diversified the company to offer capital equipment to the construction industry.

STG, Inc., Reston, VA **2003 to 2004**
Chief Financial Officer

Directed all administrative functions including accounting, finance, human resources, information systems, and contract administration for a $160M global, multi-office professional services company, specializing in providing innovative technology solutions to the Federal and Municipal Governments.

Tatum CFO Partners, McLean, VA **2001 to 2003**
Engagement Partner

An Engagement Partner for the largest CFO firm in the Country numbering over 350 partners in 26 cities nationwide. One assignment was the CFO and COO of a government contractor providing information and telecommunication services where responsibilities included managing the finance, administrative, human resource and operation functions. Other assignments were to create business models and specific strategies for other companies entering the Federal market space.

Ogden Environmental and Energy Service, Co., Inc., Chantilly, VA **1999 to 2001**
Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

Directed all finance and accounting activities for a $145M global, multi-office professional services company which provides consulting and engineering, environmental, remediation, and specialized niche services to government (U.S. – primarily Department of Defense, state and local) and commercial clients. The company also had a significant civil construction division building water treatment plants, dams and other large civil construction building.

Noell, Inc., Herndon, VA **1994 to 1999**
Chief Financial Officer
Provided financial direction and oversight for an international engineering and construction firm with annual revenues of $80M selling, servicing and leasing tower and port cranes as well as specializing in the erection of air pollution equipment, water treatment and power plants. In addition to the CFO duties, responsibilities included managing the engineering and construction aspects of U.S. operations during the President's absences as Chief Operating Officer.

National Tank Company (NATCO), Tulsa, OK **1989 to 1994**
Managed the worldwide treasury activities and all accounting aspects of foreign subsidiaries for an international manufacturer and distributor of oil and gas processing equipment with annual revenues in excess of $100M. Responsibilities included the establishment and execution of banking relations, sourcing domestic and international financing, work with state and local governments to make use of local tax incentives and financing, managing cash, preparing financial analyses and forecasts, monitoring and controlling foreign exchange exposure, negotiating contracts worldwide, overseeing risk management and information systems functions, and provided financial advice and counsel with respect to merger and acquisition activities.

Oil Field Construction Company
Treasurer (Chief Financial Officer) **1986 to 1989**
Senior Accountant **1984 to 1989**
The company specialized in mechanical and civil construction building hotels, water treatment plants, portions of prison complexes and large mechanical projects in the San Joaquin Valley oil fields. After promotion to Treasurer (CFO), reported to the President and assumed full responsibility for accounting, treasury, contract administration, legal, budgeting, strategic planning and capital budgeting.

Combustion Engineering, Inc., Stamford, CTS
Treasury Analyst **1982-1984**
Financial Intern **1981 to 1982**

EDUCATION

MBA, June 1987 — **CALIFORNIA STATE UNIVERSITY,** Bakersfield, CA
BS Finance/Accounting May 1981 — **THE UNIVERSITY OF CONNECTICUT,** Storrs, CT

PROFESSIONAL AFFILIATIONS AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Officer and member of the Board of Directors of Liberty Threads, N.A., Inc.
Held US Government Top Secret Security Clearance
Beta Gamma Sigma - National Honor Society of Schools of Business Administration

Marcus Janik, Engineering Manager (Project Manager)

Mr. Janik has 18 years experience in engineering, project management and inspection, and technology integration. Mr. Janik joined Kohler Crane, Inc. (formerly Noell Crane and Service, Inc.) in 2001 and transferred to CraneTech Solutions in 2005. He has played a key role in managing major projects, such as erecting and commissioning straddle carrier and gantry cranes.

During his tenure as a research engineer, Marcus had responsibility for accident investigation, forensic analysis; producing reports based upon this work and developed a safety protocol for the German rail road dealing with hazardous material.

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE

2001 to Date: CraneTech Solutions, Engineering Manager

- provides organizational and technical leadership for CTS's service and installation departments. He is responsible for planning and estimating project resources necessary to satisfy project execution. He also is responsible for project coordination, communication and execution.
- Has programmed PLC's for cranes and integrated technology products into operating systems
- Erected and commissioned over 20 straddle carriers cranes
- Commissioned several RTG's

2000 to 2002 Vogel Lubrication, Inc. – Sales Engineer

1991-2000 Technical University of Berlin, Germany – Research Engineer

EDUCATION

1991 – Dipl. Engineer - Technical University of Berlin, Germany

Ted D. Bushell, P.E.

Principal Engineer

Education

M.S., Civil Engineering, Northwestern University, 1978

B.S., Civil Engineering, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 1975

Professional Affiliations

American Society of Civil Engineers

International Society of Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering

American Society of Military Engineers

American Council of Engineering Companies

Registrations/Training

Professional Engineer: Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio and Pennsylvania

Experience

Mr. Bushell serves as the project manager for numerous geotechnical engineering projects. He is responsible for major geotechnical evaluations involving analysis and design of dams, reservoirs, landfills, excavations, deep and shallow foundations, tunnels, slope stabilization, pavements, ground improvement and retaining structures. Major project work has included the following:

- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical design including preparation of the construction drawings and specifications for the Alternating Gradient Synchroton (AGS) shielding upgrade at Brookhaven National Laboratory in Long Island, New York. The project involved adding up to 10 feet of additional soil shielding over an existing tunnel enclosure to avoid overstressing the existing tunnel. The final design, which included performing finite element analysis, consisted of a combination of a cast-in-place soil cement and low slump concrete arch to span over to the existing 20- to 30-foot-wide enclosure. Reinforcing in the arch consisted of a geogrid for the soil cement and conventional steel bars in the concrete. Monitored performance of the tunnel via instrumentation.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the underseepage evaluation for the Illinois Department of Natural Resources at the Rand Park Flood Control Project in DesPlaines, Illinois. Performed exploration and analysis to evaluate potential for underseepage below a 3,000-foot reach of railroad embankment which will also act as a levee to control flooding from the DesPlaines River. Services included performing a series of soil borings to evaluate subsurface conditions as well as slug testing in monitor wells to determine the in-situ permeability of the embankment foundation soils. Routine laboratory testing was performed to classify the soils. Seepage analysis was performed using the SEEP/W finite element software and verified using U.S. Army Corps of Engineers hand check methods. Slope stability analysis was performed using the SLOPE/W software with input from the SEEP/W program. The various analyses indicated that a proposed upstream impervious liner would adequately control seepage.

- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the redesign of Drake Lake Dam in Cass County, Illinois for the Illinois Department of Natural Resources. During construction of this 45-foot earth fill dam, distress was observed in the inlet tower and reinforced concrete outlet pipe. Exploration and testing revealed that the dam was constructed on a bed of soft, lacustrine and alluvial soil deposits which led to spreading and cracking of the dam. In addition to extensive field exploration and laboratory testing, instrumentation consisting of inclinometers, vibrating wire piezometers, monitor wells and survey monuments was installed. The instrumentation data was utilized to evaluate the cause of the distress and to monitor the long-term performance of the dam. Remedial measures consisted of placing an upstream impervious blanket, construction of a downstream filter blanket, lining the outlet pipe, and grouting the outlet pipe and inlet tower.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical analysis and redesign of the Len Small flood control levee along the Mississippi River. Primary and secondary levees, 600- and 1,000-foot long, respectively, failed due to internal piping. Field and laboratory exploration and testing performed to characterize the levee and foundation materials. Finite element seepage and slope stability analysis were performed to assess the cause of failure. Prepared design of remedial measures in conjunction with Illinois Department of Water Resources and St. Louis District Army Corps of Engineers.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical engineering evaluations for major Lake Michigan shoreline reconstruction including I-55 to 30th Street, 33rd to 37th Street, 54th to 57th Street and Montrose Harbor. All work performed in accordance with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and City of Chicago guidelines. Slope stability, pile capacity and seepage, settlement, soil-structure interaction analysis were performed. Provided construction plans and specifications prepared in coordination with civil, coastal and structural engineering team members.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical engineering services for numerous projects at the Fermi National Accelerator Laboratory in Batavia, Illinois with special emphasis on underground structures. Foundation systems generally consisted of footing or heavy mat foundations. Several structures supported on drilled pier and pile foundations. Soil-structure interaction analysis performed for several structures due to varying heavy mat foundation loads as well as complex tunnel loading conditions.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical engineering services for seven new railroad bridges for Canadian Pacific Railway in central Indiana. The new bridges will include various foundation systems including culvert/earth fill support, driven piles, drilled piers and footing foundations. Services included subsurface exploration from the existing bridges, laboratory testing and design analysis.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical evaluations for design of various structures performed for the Metropolitan Waste Reclamation District of Greater Chicago. Structures included lagoons, tunnels, pump stations, tanks and sewers.
- Principal Engineer who performed geotechnical and geophysical surveys to characterize the former U.S. Steel Southworks Plant in Chicago, Illinois. Developed foundation support schemes based on dynamic compaction for two, one million square foot manufacturing/warehouse buildings; a million square feet of pavement and; a railroad spur. Prepared drawings and specifications for site preparation of buildings and pavements as well as seawall construction along the adjacent Calumet River. Services included continuing monitoring and evaluation during dynamic compaction operations.
- Principal Engineer providing soil surveys and foundation exploration for various roadway improvements and widenings for the Illinois Department of Transportation (IDOT) District 1. Prepared geotechnical reports according to IDOT guidelines.

- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the geotechnical evaluation of St. Charles East High School in St. Charles, Illinois as part of comprehensive study regarding mold growth in this school. Services included field exploration to assess subsurface conditions especially groundwater conditions which may promote the growth of mold. Also performed general assessment of the foundation support conditions of structure. Recommendations included regrading to promote site drainage and installation of subsurface drains in several below grade areas.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the design of groundwater cutoff wall and playing field subsurface drainage system for a new baseball stadium in Gary, Indiana. Plans and specifications were prepared for a vibrating cement-bentonite slurry wall to serve as a cutoff against the inflow of groundwater into the playing field to be situated 15 feet below grade. Design also included a subsurface drainage system to control surface water as well as long-term seepage infiltration.
- Principal Engineer providing technical oversight for the design of temporary earth retention and underpinning systems for the 100 Wisconsin Avenue project in Madison, Wisconsin. The 50-foot-deep excavation for this project was bordered by city streets of two sides and buildings on two sides in the downtown capital area. The earth retention system was composed of soldier beams and lagging with grouted permanent tiebacks. The underpinning system for the Rifken Building consisted of stiffened steel wide flange sections placed below the existing rubble footing and supported by brackets on the soldier piles. The support brackets were preloaded to reduce movement during excavation. Monitoring of the existing buildings and streets was performed to verify the performance of the system.
- Project Engineer/Manager for the geotechnical evaluations of numerous earth dams and reservoirs along the Upper Salt Creek, Lower Des Plaines River and Little Calumet River Watersheds in the suburban Chicago area for the Metropolitan Water Reclamation District of Greater Chicago and the USDA Soil Conservation Service. These structures consisted of 20 to 25 foot high earth dams and 40 to 60 foot deep excavation reservoirs. Projects included subsurface exploration, geotechnical laboratory analysis, extensive slope stability and seepage analysis and instrumentation.
- Project Engineer/Manager for the engineering assessment and redesign of a major river bluff slope failure in central Illinois. Failure of a previously installed slope permitted the water table to rise and exit on the slope face resulting in major slope movement. This slide endangered both a high voltage transmission tower at the top of the slope and a state highway at the toe of the slope. A new drainage system consisting of deep wells at the top of the slope and a series of drainage trenches on the slope face were installed and the slope re-graded.
- Project Engineer/Manager for the seepage and slope stability analysis along with redesign of a major slope failure in a hazardous waste storage pit. A 10-foot-thick compacted clay liner on the slopes of this 70-foot pit cracked and experienced large downhill movements approximately nine months after installation. The slope instability resulted from a build-up of hydrostatic pressure behind the liner and poorly compacted fill.
- Project Engineer/Manager for the geotechnical evaluation for the proposed 7GeV Advanced Photon Source at Argonne National Laboratory. Complete field exploration including cross-borehole seismic testing along with laboratory analysis. Engineering analysis to determine foundation support for beam storage ring including consideration for both internal and external vibration sources.
- Project Engineer/Manager for the geotechnical evaluation of the Military Street Bridge over the Black River in Port Huron, Michigan. This project involved replacing an existing bridge having unstable abutments. Subsurface exploration included obtaining undisturbed samples and performing field vane shear testing in soft clay. Special laboratory testing included

triaxial, residual direct shear and consolidation testing. Slope stability analyses performed to evaluate foundation drilling and other structural methods of stabilizing abutments. Designed cofferdam for new bridge pier construction.

- Project Engineer/Manager for the design of the earth retention system for the 311 South Wacker Drive project in Chicago. This structure, which is the tallest concrete building in the world, contains a 35- to 45-foot-deep basement covering the entire site. The earth retention system consisted of a slurry wall for the entire 1,400-foot-long perimeter. The 24-inch-thick slurry wall extending to 65 feet also serves as the permanent basement wall. The unique earth retention system combined multiple bracing systems including crosslot struts, inclined rakers, corner braces, tied back deadmen and upside-down method of construction. Monitored ground displacements were found to be minimal and only a fraction of those experienced with conventional bracing systems in Chicago. Services included complete geotechnical evaluation; design of slurry wall, bracing systems and excavation sequence; and instrumentation and monitoring during construction.
- Project Engineer/Manager for the design of 2,700 lineal feet of tied-back retaining wall for the road widening project along U.S. Route 14 in Fox River Grove, Illinois. Subsurface exploration and laboratory testing program was performed to provide design parameters. Analysis included earth pressure, bearing capacity, anchor capacity as well as tie-back length and slope stability calculations.
- Project Engineer for the analysis and redesign of the Hollis Park Dam in Mapleton, Illinois. This 50-foot earth dam experienced a partial slope failure due to seepage, internal piping and inadequate spillway capacity. Remedial measures included an upstream cut-off blanket, a downstream face and toe drainage system along with a new principal and emergency spillway.
- Project Engineer for the geotechnical evaluation and design of remedial measures for a landfill dam for a confidential client. Analysis and field monitoring indicated this 100-foot-tall dam composed mainly of waste fill retaining paper sludge was unstable. Subsurface exploration included in-situ pressuremeter testing and large diameter sampling. Instrumentation consisting of groundwater monitor wells, inclinometers and settlement platforms installed to monitor dam. Slope stability and seepage analysis was performed to evaluate dam. Services included preparation of construction drawings and specification for internal drainage system and stabilizing berm. Managed field construction monitoring of repairs.
- Project Engineer for the complete structural and geotechnical design including preparation of construction drawings and specifications for 4,000 lineal feet of permanent tied-back retaining wall to depress Route 83 beneath Chicago Avenue in Clarendon Hills, Illinois. The retaining wall, which extended up to 35 feet high, consisted of drilled-in soldier piles, one and two levels of walers, timber lagging, permanent soil anchors (tiebacks) and permanent concrete face wall.

Publications/Presentations

“Dearborn Center: A Unique Soil Structure Interaction Design”, Fifth International Conference on Case Histories in Geotechnical Engineering, New York, NY , April, 2004.

"Drake Lake Dam - A Case History", Association of State Dam Safety Officials, Dam Safety 2002, Tampa, Florida, September, 2002.

"Innovative High Rise Foundation Design in Chicago", R.J. Krizek Commemorative Symposium, Geotechnical Materials: Measurement and Analysis, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois, August, 2002.

“Performance of Multiple Retention Systems During Cut and Cover Tunnel Construction,” Proceedings of the Third National Conference, Geo-Engineering for Underground Facilities, Geotechnical Special Publication 90, June, 1999.

“Prediction and Performance of Municipal Landfill Slope,” Geoenvironment 2000, ASCE Specialty Conference, New Orleans, Louisiana, February, 1995.

"Reinforced Soil-Cement Embankment," ASCE Specialty Conference, Stability and Performance of Slopes and Embankments -II, University of California at Berkeley, June, 1992.

"Geogrid Reinforced Soil-Cement Arch," Ohio River Valley Soil Seminar XXIII, Lexington, Kentucky, October, 1991.

"Contribution of Soil Freeze to Pile Capacity," ASCE 1989 Foundation Engineering Congress, June, 1989.

"A Seawall for Sea Mammals," ASCE Civil Engineering, January, 1989.

"Experience with the Osterberg Piston Sampler," The Practice of Foundation Engineering, J.O. Osterberg Commemorative Symposium, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois, August, 1985.

"Caissons Socketed in Sound Mica Schist," Discussion of ASCE Proceedings Paper 16288, July, 1982.

Darren S. Diehm, P.E.

Senior Project Engineer

Education

M.S., Civil Engineering, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1998

B.S., Civil Engineering, University of Wisconsin-Milwaukee, 1992

B.S. Aerospace Engineering, Iowa State University, 1988

Professional Affiliations

American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) Associate Member

Registrations/Training

Professional Engineer - Illinois

Plaxis V8 – Finite Element Code for Soil and Rock Analysis

Computational Geotechnics + Dynamics Certification (Jan. 8, 2004)

GeoStudio Suite – Slope/W, Seep/W and Sigma/W for Stability, Seepage, and Finite Element Stress and Deformation Analyses

Geotechnical Modeling Workshop Certification (June 8, 2006)

Experience

Mr. Diehm serves as a Geotechnical Engineer on structural and standard geotechnical projects. A representative sampling of recent project experience includes:

Geotechnical Experience:

- Provided subsurface exploration and geotechnical recommendations for sites in Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Michigan, Minnesota, Nebraska, South Dakota, Wisconsin and Wyoming.
- Provided finite element transient and steady-state seepage/slope stability analyses for redesign of the Willow-Higgins Reservoir at O'Hare International Airport.
- Provided seepage and stability analyses of the earth bank impoundments for the Rand Park Flood Control project in Des Plaines, Illinois.
- Provided subsurface and hydrogeologic investigations, groundwater mapping, and a perimeter gradient control system design of a wastewater treatment system for a residential development.
- Provided staged construction stress analyses using finite element software for a tunnel cover project at a nuclear research facility in Oak Ridge, Tennessee.
- Provided forensic geotechnical analyses for litigation involving settlement of structures, retention system failures, and landslides.
- Directed and performed caisson and pile load (compression, tension and lateral) testing for geotechnical and structural design.
- Provided gravity dam stability analyses for FERC sites in Wisconsin and upper Michigan.
- Provided solid and industrial waste landfill designs for permitting, construction, and closure. Performed CQA for synthetic liners and covers.

Geo-Structural Experience:

- Senior Project Engineer for the 150-story, Chicago Spire located on the west side of Lake Shore Drive between the Chicago River and the Ogden slip. When completed in 2011, the Spire will become the tallest building in the world at a height of 2,000 feet. The development also includes a 7-level below grade parking structure that will be the deepest such structure in Chicago, access ramps to the existing Lake Shore Drive bridge, and renovation of DuSable Park on the east side of Lake Shore Drive. The project will utilize top-down construction for the site-wide garage and a core cofferdam for the Spire. Provided design analyses of below grade foundation elements including rock-socketed caissons, belled hardpan caissons, secant pile walls, slurry walls, and micropiles. Provided oversight for 2 Osterberg load tests that demonstrated the highest capacity (300 tsf) ever permitted in Chicago. Provided capacity analyses of existing river wall systems and staged construction analyses to evaluate the effects of the construction on adjacent properties.
- Provided peer reviews of foundation and retention system designs for several high-rise projects in Doha, Qatar and Dubai, U.A.E. Also provided bored pile foundation design for Wind Tower II which is part of the Jumeirah Lake Towers in Dubai. Wind Tower II is a 29-story mixed-use structure supported on a pile supported mat and isolated perimeter piles.
- Project Engineer for the 92-story Trump International Hotel & Tower in Chicago. Provided foundation design recommendations, capacity analyses, staged excavation, and base shear analyses for the tower. The project also included design and analyses for reconstruction of the Wabash Street viaduct and the East North Water Bridge, as well as evaluation of the existing steel sheet pile wall on the Chicago River.
- Project Engineer for the Soldier Field Renovation project in Chicago, Illinois. Provided static pile capacity analyses, micropile design and capacity analyses, and foundation construction oversight for the stadium, North Garage, and Waldron Garage.
- Project Engineer for 111 South Wacker in Chicago. Provided foundation design recommendations, capacity analyses, and base shear analyses. The 51-story office tower reutilized foundation elements from the former US Gypsum building supplemented by new caisson foundations at a deeper bearing stratum. The design analyses included development of bearing stress contour plots using Boussinesq theory which were used to evaluate potential settlement.
- Project Engineer for design of numerous earth retention systems for sites in Illinois, Michigan, Minnesota, Tennessee, and Wisconsin. In addition to conventional sheet pile and soldier pile and lagging systems, design experience includes secant pile walls, soil nail walls, jet grouting, and classical hand-dug underpinning analyses. The design analyses included the use of finite element software where appropriate and classical soil mechanics methods.
- Project Engineer for the design of pile foundation, spread footing, and pilecaps for lighting and scoreboard structures at Quisling Park in Middleton, WI. The subsurface stratigraphy at the proposed soccer and softball complex included organic and peat deposits varying from 15 to 35 feet thick.
- Project Engineer for redesign of the Chicago Fire Stadium foundations in Bridgeview, Illinois. The original design consisted of caisson foundations; however, because of schedule and Winter construction, the foundations were changed to driven piles. The project also included geotechnical investigations for supplemental parking areas, design analyses for high mast lightpole foundations, and a one million gallon water tank. A restaurant and hotel development with a water park is currently being planned for the east side of the site.

Geo-Structural Experience Continued:

- Project Engineer for the design of a 7-mile-long seawall, revetment, and shoreline recovery project along Lake Michigan in Chicago, Illinois. Provided analyses for development of alternative anchorage systems, installation procedures, development of specifications, and bid documentation.
- Project Engineer for the peer review of the foundation slurry wall design analysis for the River East Building. The development included a 60-story mixed-use office and residential tower on the Chicago River. Top-down construction was used to simultaneously erect the superstructure and excavate the below ground parking levels.
- Project Engineer for the reconstruction of the Sinnissippi Dam located on the Rock River between Rock Falls and Sterling, Illinois. The project consisted of relocating the dam 50 feet downstream and replacement of the steel tainter gate and rubble fill crib dam facility with more than 500 feet of pnuematically operated hinged-leaf gates and an additional 500 feet of concrete ogee spillway. Provided design and on-site construction inspection of a foundation grout curtain and groundwater cutoff beneath the spillway. The project included inspection and mapping of the excavated rock mass for the dam foundation and review of contractor submittals. Also provided design analysis of the rock-socketed caissons which served as pier foundations for a 1200-foot long bike/pedestrian bridge crossing of the Rock River.

PATUXENT ENGINEERING GROUP, LLC
5800 MAIN STREET SUITE 4 ELKRIDGE, MD 21075
(410) 796-8130 Fax: (410) 796-8131
office@patuxenteng.com

COMPANY PROFILE:

P.E. Group is a structural engineering firm specializing in engineered construction processes and the design, development and construction of temporary structural systems including but not limited to access scaffolding, shoring, personnel hoists, material only hoists, hoist runway systems, rigging, concrete formwork, re-shoring, and protection systems.

PERSONNEL PROFILE:

John G. O'Connor, PE (Professionally Licensed in NJ, MD, DC, VA, NY, GA, PA,MA, NC & DE)
(Q.E.I. Licensed through NAESA International # C-3491)
Managing Member

Profile:

Mr. O'Connor has more then 17 years engineering experience with the last 16 specializing in the design, development and construction of temporary structures including access scaffolds, pedestrian protection, Personnel and material only hoists, shoring, hoist runway structures, concrete formwork, re-shoring, and rigging systems. Mr. O'Connor is involved in the ANSI sub-committees to review and develop codes for A10.4 personnel hoists and A10.5 material hoists. Mr. O'Connor has also provided consultation services to architechtual/engineering firms for the design/specification development and implementation of various temporary structural systems and review of construction procedures. He has also reviewed construction authority permitting/inspection processes and reviewed industry safety specific to personnel hoists, material hoists and backstructures to provide construction authority with safety recommendations. Mr. O'Connor is also a structural specialist for the FEMA-MD Task Force 2 team. Project profiles can be furnished upon request.

Education:

New Jersey Institute of Technology; Newark College of Engineering BS in Civil Engineering Graduated Magna Cum Laude.

dbr group inc.

2777 Yulupa Ave. #114, Santa Rosa, CA 95405
dennisrichardsonpe@yahoo.com

Education:

BS, Civil Engineering University of California, Davis, 1981

Certifications/ License:

CA Registered Civil Engineer # 38680

ICC Certified (renewal pending):
- Building Inspector
- Plans Examiner
- Building Official

Professional Affiliations:

International Code Council

American Planning Association

Structural Engineers Association of Northern California

California Building Officials

Immediate Past-President, Peninsula Chapter ICC

Former Vice President, Redwood Empire Chapter of ICC

Former Board of Directors for Structural Engineers Association of Central California

2003 Presidents Award: California Preservation Foundation

Habitat for Humanity

Professional Committees:

ICC Code Technology Council: Balanced Fire Protection Study Group

Resume:

Dennis Richardson, PE, CBO | CE# 38680, California

Dennis Richardson has 24 years of experience as a professional engineer with extensive experience in municipal administration, development review and inspections as the building official for major jurisdictions in Northern California including the cities of San Jose, Sacramento, and Santa Rosa. He also has several years of private sector structural design and general civil engineering design experience for a variety of private and public projects. He is active on a number of code development efforts including the Balanced Fire Protection / Height and Area Study Group of the ICC Code Technology Committee and is currently the Immediate Past-President of the Peninsula Chapter of ICC serving the Bay Area from San Francisco to San Jose.

As a building official or assistant building official, his jurisdictions reviewed and inspected over $9 Billion in construction value for a variety of building projects including numerous high-rise office and residential towers, high-tech industrial tool and clean room installations, an NBA arena, major hotel and public assembly projects, historical building retrofits, small business and infill projects, a 1.4 million cubic yard landslide repair, FEMA floodplain administration, municipal capital improvement project inspections, and a wide variety of commercial, retail, industrial and residential projects.

Relevant Employment Experience:

Chief Building Official
City of San Jose, CA
10th Largest US City and Capital of Silicon Valley

Dennis started the **Industrial Tool Installation Program** to help high tech companies expedite complex tools for manufacturing, research and development in San Jose and the **Small Business Ambassador Program** to help small business owners locate, operate and expand their business. Was part of the team that delivered the **San Jose Grand Prix** to the downtown and helped open the new **One-stop Development Center** at the new San Jose City Hall.

Chief Building Official
City of Sacramento, CA
State Capital of California

Dennis served as the Co-Director of the Planning and Building Department on the City Manager's executive team, opened the 26K square foot one-stop **North Permit Center**, implemented the first multi-departmental **Development Help Line** to assist customers with any aspect of the development process and the multi-departmental **Process Management Team** to help proactively manage challenging projects through the development process. He was responsible for the organization and initial start up of the **Development Oversight Commission**, a Mayor appointed commission to provide advice and leadership on the improvement of the development process.

Chief Building Official
City of Santa Rosa, CA
US City with the Greatest Loss of Life per Capita from the 1906 Earthquake

Dennis lead the adoption of the nations first ever **Near-Source Seismic Code in 1995** to help ensure construction built on poor soil near the Rodgers Creek Fault would be of greater strength. The building division was also responsible for a proactive **Seismic Retrofit Program** and participated in a neighborhood code enforcement and gang prevention program.

Professional Committees, continued:

California State Fire Marshal Code Adoption Core Committee

California Building Officials: State Code Committee, Seismic Committee and Historic Buildings Committee

Chair: Tri-Chapter Uniform Code Adoption and Interpretation Committee

CUREE Woodframe Project, Codes and Standards Committee

ICBO Structural Review Committee

Structural Engineers Association of Central California: Existing Buildings Committee and Code Committee

Chair: Redwood Empire Chapter of ICC Code Development Committee

Code 2000 Partnership

Teaching Experience:

Building Department Administration at Consumnes River College,

Developed and Taught: California Detailed Means of Egress Class for California Building Officials

Taught:
California Basic Means of Egress and General Building Code Provisions for California Building Officials

Relevant Project Experience:

High-rise Residential Towers
San Jose, CA
Chief Building Official for several high-rise residential post tensioned reinforced concrete towers.

California EPA Building
Sacramento, CA
Chief Building Official for the construction of a City owned 1.1 M s.f. high-rise steel framed office.

Sheraton Grand
Sacramento, CA
Chief Building Official for the plan review and construction of, redevelopment agency owned, post-tensioned concrete high-rise hotel and the historic Julia Morgan Public Market Building Ball Room.

Arco Arena
Sacramento, CA
Assistant Building Official for construction of privately owned Sacramento Kings NBA Arena.

Santa Rosa Marketplace
Santa Rosa, CA
Chief Building Official for the plan review and construction of a regional big box retail center.

South Hall Convention Center Expansion
San Jose, CA
Chief Building Official for this fast-track permanently installed clear-span fabric covered structure.

San Jose Grand Prix
Sacramento, CA
Chief Building Official in charge of plan review and inspections of temporary grandstands, elevated air conditioned box suites, temporary power and several pedestrian bridges.

Plant 51 Condominium Adaptive Re-use
San Jose, CA
Chief Building Official for multiple level podium based, light gauge steel framed, adaptive reuse condominium project utilizing the historic plant walls.

Cathedral of the Blessed Sacrament
Sacramento, CA
Chief Building Official for the structural retrofit and major restoration of the Cathedral of the Blessed Sacrament, an unreinforced masonry, turn of the century, historic landmark cathedral.

Moving Mountain Landslide Repair
Santa Rosa, CA
Chief Building Official for 1.4M cubic yard multiple landslide repair and retail pads.
Music Circus
Sacramento, CA
Chief Building Official for the reconstruction of historical Music Circus Tent Theater in the Round.

Appendix III

Location Reports

Concrete Location Report

CONCRETE Original 071508: **Revised 101008**

Address:	BIN:	Job #

Action Class – ☐ DOB Process ☐ Job Related ☐ Other (If associated with a job, check Job Related and enter Borough and address)	Boro: ☐ Manhattan ☐ Bronx ☐ Brooklyn ☐ Queens ☐ Staten Island ☐ Citywide	Proposed Stories:	Current Stories:	Action Date:	Arrival Time:
		Adjunct Report Reference:		☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union	
Action Level – ☐ Initial ☐ Follow-up/ Re-visit ☐ Violation/ Follow-up		HRCO Staff Member:		Cycle (days/floor)	

Review Type (Sample Source):

☐ => 10 Story NBs	☐ Design Engineers	☐ DOB Docs/Material
☐ => 10 Story Alts (Building on Building)	☐ Contractors	☐ Industry Docs/Material

Site Specific Conditions:

☐ Check if Major Building	Name	Title/Position (PE/RA etc.)	License #	Union Status
Contractor				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Concrete Subcontractor				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Formwork Designer #1:				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Formwork Designer #2				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Design Professional-Structure				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Site Safety Manager/Coordinator				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Controlled/Special Insp.				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Concrete Testing Lab				☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union

Review Category/Task	***Result***	***Adjunct Report***	***Task Comment***
10. Design of Formwork			
10.1 ☐ NYC Code compliance of formwork design (§27-1035, BC 1906)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
10.2 ☐ Compliance with national design standards or current practice (OSHA, Wood Standards, ACI)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
10.3 ☐ Frequency, content and timing of on-site inspections by formwork designer or person designated by contractor	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
10.4 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
20. Design of Concrete Structure			
20.1 ☐ NYC Code compliance of structural design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
20.2 ☐ Compliance with national design standards or current	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory		

practice	☐ Follow up		
20.3 ☐ Identification of required inspections on plans	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
20.4 ☐ Frequency, content and timing of on-site inspections by registered design professional of record	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
20.5 Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30. On-Site Controls			
30.1 ☐ Availability of approved site safety plan	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.2 ☐ Availability of site safety log	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.3 ☐ Review of site safety log	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.4 ☐ Site Safety Personnel Present On-site	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.5 ☐ Technical competence of site safety personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.6 ☐ Clarity of site safety warnings and notifications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.7 ☐ Public complaint analysis and interviews with public on concerns	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.8 ☐ Required BEST Squad Notification (3-Digit #)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.9 ☐ Required Earthwork/ Excavation Notification per 1 RCNY §52-01 (5-Digit #)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.10 ☐ Sidewalk shed compliance with site safety plan	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.11 ☐ Vertical netting compliance with site safety plan	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.12 ☐ Horizontal netting compliance with site safety plan	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.13 ☐ Tie-off compliance with site safety plan	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.14 ☐ Adjacent building protection compliance with site safety plan	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.15 ☐ Housekeeping	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.16 ☐ Barrier/site fence compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.17 ☐ On-site coordination between trades/contractors/site safety personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
30.18 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40. Form Assembly			
40.1 ☐ Availability of formwork design drawings on-site	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory		

	☐ Follow up		
40.2 ☐ Signed and sealed design drawings	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.3 ☐ Post spacing conformance with formwork design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.4 ☐ Stringer installation conformance with formwork design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.5 ☐ Rib installation/spacing conformance with formwork design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.6a ☐ Bracing conformance with formwork design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.6b ☐ Vertical formwork installation conformance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.7 ☐ Vertical formwork bracing conformance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.8 ☐ Workmanlike installation	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.9 ☐ On-site communication between supervisors and workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.10 ☐ Physical protections for workers (PPE, safe practices)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.11 ☐ Observable indicators of insufficient training of workers assembling forms	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.12 ☐ Frequency, content and timing Formwork inspection per 27-1035(b)(1)/BC1906.2	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.13 ☐ Qualifications of person performing formwork inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
40.14. ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50. Reinforcement Operations			
50.1 ☐ Workmanlike operations in placing reinforcing	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.2 ☐ Appropriate material storage	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.3 ☐ Appropriate material handling	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.4 ☐ Physical protections for workers (PPE, safe practices)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.5 ☐ Controlled/Special Inspector present on-site	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.6 ☐ Qualifications of Controlled/ Special inspection personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.7 ☐ Frequency, content, and timing of Controlled/Special inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.8 Technical competence of Controlled/Special inspection personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		

50.9 ☐ Availability of approved documents/shop drawings	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.10 ☐ Review of field reports	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
50.11 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60. Concrete Placement Operations			
60.1 ☐ Workmanlike concrete placement operations	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.2 ☐ Appropriate material storage	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.3 ☐ Appropriate material handling	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.4 ☐ Material hoisting security and transfer methods	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.5 ☐ Physical protections for workers (PPE, safe practices)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.7 ☐ Qualifications of concrete testing field personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.8 ☐ Frequency, content, and timing of concrete sampling	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.9 ☐ Technical competence of concrete testing field personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.10 ☐ Controlled/Special Inspector present on-site (if different from Concrete Testing Lab)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.11 ☐ Qualifications of Controlled/Special inspection personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.12 ☐ Frequency, content, and timing of Controlled/Special inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.13 ☐ Technical competence of Controlled/Special inspection personnel	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.14 ☐ Availability of approved documents/approved mixes	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.15 ☐ Review of field reports	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
60.16 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70. Form Stripping			
70.1 ☐ Form stripping sequence available	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.2 ☐ Timing of cracking formwork in conformance with formwork design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.3 ☐ Sequencing of removal in conformance with formwork design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.4 ☐ Appropriate material handling	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		

70.5 ☐ Appropriate material storage	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.6 ☐ On-site communication between supervisors and workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.7 ☐ Physical protections for workers (PPE, safe practices)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.8 ☐ Technical competency of personnel stripping formwork	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.9 ☐ Sufficient knowledge of concrete compressive strength available	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
70.10 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80. Reshoring Operations			
80.1 ☐ Reshoring sequence available	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.2 ☐ Reshoring Post Spacing Design Available	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.3 ☐ Number of Reshored Floors in Conformance with Reshoring Sequence	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.4 ☐ Reshoring post spacing conformance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.5 ☐ Post tie-offs within 10ft of building edge	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.6 ☐ Only screw-jacks within 10 ft of building edge	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.7 ☐ Workmanlike installation	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
80.8 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
90. Site Safety Plans (BEST) Review			
90.1 ☐ Procedures review and approval of applications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
90.2 ☐ Content of documentation provided	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
90.3 ☐ Technical capabilities for effective examination (Chiefs and DBCs)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
90.4 ☐ Training program content and effectiveness	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
90.5 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
100. Structural Plans (Boro) Review			
100.1 ☐ Procedures review and approval of applications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
100.2 ☐ Content of documentation provided	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
100.3 ☐ Technical capabilities for effective examination (Chiefs and DBCs)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		

100.4 ☐ Training program content and effectiveness	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
100.5 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110. DOB Inspections			
110.1a ☐ Tasks performed for each type of inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.1b ☐ Level of detail at which a task should be performed	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.2 ☐ Frequency of inspections after violations written	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.3 ☐ Timing of inspections with respect to job phase	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.4 ☐ Response time for complaint follow up	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.5 ☐ Spot checks and audits of self-certified inspections/tests	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.6 ☐ Technical capabilities for effective inspections	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.7 ☐ Training programs content and effectiveness	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.8 ☐ Content and usability and development of SOPs	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.9 ☐ Content and usability and development of inspection checklists	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		
110.10 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow up		

Report Comments:

Task Time:	Task Time Comments:			
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:			
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:			
Violation(s) Issued: ☐	Requires Follow-up: ☐ Yes ☐ No		DOB Inspector:	
Report Prepared by:			Report Approved	
Print Name			☐ Yes	Approver Name
Signature:			Date approved:	Signature
Additional HRCO Staff:				
Print Name			Signature:	
Task Time:	Task Time Comments:			
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:			
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:			
Additional HRCO Staff:				
Print Name			Signature:	
Task Time:	Task Time Comments:			
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:			
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:			

Crane Location Report

CRANES Original 071508 **Revised 101008**

Address:		CD #:	CN#	Prot.#
Action Class – ☐ DOB Process ☐ Job Related ☐ Other (If associated with a job, check Job Related and enter Borough and address)	Boro: ☐ Manhattan ☐ Bronx ☐ Brooklyn ☐ Queens ☐ Staten Island ☐ Citywide	Proposed Stories:	Current Stories:	Action Date: / Arrival Time:
Action Level – ☐ Initial ☐ Follow-up/ Re-visit ☐ Violation/ Follow-up		Adjunct Report Reference:		☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
		HRCO Staff Member:		Cycle (days/floor):

Review Type (Sample Source):		
☐ Tower Crane	☐ Other:	☐ Licensed Riggers
☐ Mobile Crane	☐ Design Engineer	☐ Equipment User (or Subs)
☐ Derrick	☐ Basic Configuration Types	☐ DOB Docs/Material
☐ Work Platform/Mast Climber	☐ Crane Owner	☐ Industry Docs/Material
☐ Hoist	☐ HMOs (In Use)	

Site Specific Device Type:			
☐ Tower Crane	☐ Mobile Crane	☐ Derrick	☐ Work Platform/Mast Climber
☐ Hoist	☐ Other:	Manufacturer:	Model:
Activity Under Review/Job Status:			

Review Category/Task	**Result**	***Adjunct Report***	**Task Comment**
10. Design			
10.1 ☐ Technical soundness of design methods by model and configuration	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.2 ☐ Compliance with national and international design safety standards	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.3 ☐ Frequency, content, and timing of on site inspections	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.4 ☐ Practical application of design	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.5 ☐ Effect of having limited number of available crane engineers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.6 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20. Off-Site Controls			
20.1 ☐ Labeling of critical components and effectiveness thereof	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.2 ☐ Compliance with national design safety standards	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.3 ☐ Third-party review of service history, maintenance, and repair records	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.4 ☐ Third-party inspections and testing of structural/mechanical systems	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.5 ☐ Need for notification of mobile crane leaving yard/previous site	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.6 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		

30. On-Site Controls			
30.1 ☐ Communication between owner/ user/operator of critical records	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.2 ☐ Clarity of public site safety warnings and notifications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.3 ☐ Public complaint analysis and interviews with public on concerns	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.4 ☐ Pre-work planning for high risk operations	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.5 ☐ Physical protections from falling objects for public / adjacent buildings	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.6 ☐ On-site communications between contractors, HMOs, Riggers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.7 ☐ Training program curricula, testing, and certification	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.8 ☐ Effectiveness of designated crane safety manager	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.9 ☐ Operational records and safety reporting (equipment, people)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.10 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40. Assembly			
40.1 ☐ Delivery and component handling and storage	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.2 ☐ Assembly component inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.3 ☐ Inspection of items difficult to view after assembly (i.e, pin connection)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.4 ☐ Review of maintenance records	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.5 ☐ Maintenance frequency and methods	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.6 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50. Disassembly			
50.1 ☐ Component handling, transfer, and storage	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.2 ☐ Disassembly component inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.3 ☐ Inspection of items difficult to view during operation (i.e, pin connection)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.4 ☐ Review of maintenance records	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.5 ☐ Maintenance frequency and methods	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.6 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory		

	☐ Follow-up		
60. Self-Certified Testing			
60.1 ☐ Allowable self-certifications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.2 ☐ Technical soundness of testing	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.3 ☐ Application of other relevant testing methods	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.4 ☐ Frequency of inspections/tests	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.5 ☐ Relevancy of inspections/tests	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.6 ☐ Timing of inspections/tests	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.7 ☐ Documentation of test results	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.8 ☐ Sufficiency of documentation	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.9 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70. Operations			
70.1 ☐ Material hoisting security and transfer methods	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.2 ☐ Requirement/effectiveness of licensed professional on site	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.3a ☐ On-site communications between supervisors and workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.3b ☐ Observable indicators of insufficient training	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.4 ☐ Observable indicators of poor housekeeping affecting crane ops	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.5 ☐ On-site proof of adequate training such as certifications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.6 ☐ Physical protections for workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.7 ☐ Maintenance frequency and methods	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.8 ☐ Rigging means and methods during jumping operations	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.9 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
80. DOB Licensing			
80.1 ☐ Licensing types and limitations	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
80.2 ☐ Testing content, relevance, and psychometrics for each license type	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
80.3 ☐ Testing administration process	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		

80.4 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90. DOB Review			
90.1 ☐ Review and approval of prototypes	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.2 ☐ Review and approval of applications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.3 ☐ Documentation provided up front and during the job's life cycle	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.4 ☐ Notification to Buildings regarding job site phase changes	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.5 ☐ Technical capabilities for effective examination	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.6 ☐ Technical soundness of objections	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.7 ☐ Application of and compliance with national and international safety standards	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.8 ☐ Training program content and effectiveness	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
90.9 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100. DOB Inspections			
100.1 ☐ Tasks performed for each type of inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.2 ☐ Level of detail at which a task should be performed	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.3 ☐ Frequency of inspections after violations written	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.4 ☐ Timing of inspections with respect to job phase	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.5 ☐ Response time for complaint follow up	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.6 ☐ Spot checks and audits of self-certified inspections/tests	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.7 ☐ Technical capabilities for effective inspections	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.8 ☐ Training programs (rigging, type, reporting) content and effectiveness	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.9 ☐ Content and usability and development of SOPs	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.10☐ Content and usability and development of inspection checklists	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.11 ☐ Effectiveness and appropriateness of inspection forms	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.12 ☐ Need for double-checks by supervisor for quality assurance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		

100.13 ☐ Appropriateness of inspector behavior/relations with workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
100.14 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		

Report Comments:

Task Time:	Task Time Comments:

Travel Time:	Travel Comments:			
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:			
Violation(s) Issued: ☐	Requires Follow-up: ☐ Yes ☐ No		DOB Inspector:	
Report Prepared by:			Report Approved	
Print Name			☐ Yes	Approver Name
Signature:			Date approved:	Signature
Additional HRCO Staff:				
Print Name			Signature:	
Task Time:	Task Time Comments:			
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:			
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:			
Additional HRCO Staff:				
Print Name			Signature:	
Task Time:	Task Time Comments:			
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:			
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:			

Hoist Location Report

HOISTS Original 071508 **Revised 101008**

Address:	CD #:	CN#	Prot.#

Action Class – ☐ DOB Process ☐ Job Related ☐ Other (If associated with a job, check Job Related and enter Borough and address)	Boro: ☐ Manhattan ☐ Bronx ☐ Brooklyn ☐ Queens ☐ Staten Island ☐ Citywide	Proposed Stories:	Current Stories:	Action Date:	Arrival Time:
		Adjunct Report Reference:			☐ Union ☐ Mixed ☐ Non-Union
Action Level – ☐ Initial ☐ Follow-up/ Re-visit ☐ Violation/ Follow-up		HRCO Staff Member:			Cycle (days/floor):

Review Type (Sample Source):

☐ Design Engineer	☐ Basic Configuration Types	☐ Owner	☐ DOB Docs/Material
☐ Operator	☐ Equipment User (or Subs)	☐ Licensed Riggers	☐ Industry Docs/Material

Activity Under Review/Job Status:

Site Specific Device Type:

☐ Hoist	☐ Other:	Manufacturer:	Model:

Review Category/Task	**Result**	**Adjunct Report**	**Task Comment**
10. DOB Process			
10.1 ☐ Application Approval	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.2 ☐ Permit Process	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.3 ☐ Acceptance Test (90 day temp issued)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.4 ☐ Scheduled Test Appointment Notification	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
10.5 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20. Design			
20.1 ☐ P/M Hoist P/E Design with Technical Drawing	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.2 ☐ Material Hoist P/E Design with Technical Drawing	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.3 ☐ Backstructure P/E Design with Technical Drawing (including tie removal/ replacement program)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.4 ☐ P/E Sign off of Hoist/ Backstructure Loading Imposed on Building	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
20.5 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30. Off-Site Controls			
30.1 ☐ Maintenance Log of Hoist Car	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.2 ☐ Hoist Mast Maintenance/ Quality Control Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.3 ☐ Safety Expiration Date in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.4 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40. On-Site Controls (P/M Hoists)			

40.1 ☐ Original Inspection Certificate	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.2 ☐ Personnel Hoist Operating Instruction	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.3 ☐ Names of Qualified Operators & Operator Qualifications	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.4 ☐ Material Handling Plans Approved by Site Safety Manager	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.5 ☐ Required Signage and Tag	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.6 ☐ Hoist Base Secure to Pad	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.7 ☐ Pit Housekeeping	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.8 ☐ Lower Limit Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.9 ☐ Base Enclosure	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.10 ☐ Pit Access Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.11 ☐ Loading Dock Design Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.12 ☐ Loading Dock Overhead Protection Design Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.13 ☐ Loading Dock Access/Guardrail Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.14 ☐ Landing Gate Size Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.15 ☐ Landing Gate/ Car Clearance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.16 ☐ Landing Gate Latch Accessibility from Landing	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.17 ☐ Landing Min 30" Protection Shield Either Side of Gate	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.18 ☐ Hoistway Protection where Assessable	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.19 ☐ Power Cable Traveler and Guides in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.20 ☐ Static Power Cable Secured to tower in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.21 ☐ Traveling Cable Connection to Tower in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.22 ☐ Hoist Car to Landing Clearance in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.23 ☐ Landing Gate Mounting In Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.24 ☐ Floors Properly Marked	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		

40.25 ☐ Drop Test/Records in Compliance (Cathead/Tower Rise)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.26 ☐ Counterweight Cable / Terminations in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.27 ☐ Rack Properly Lubricated	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.28 ☐ Car Floor Area/ Rating Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.29 ☐ Car Front Gate Switch in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.30 ☐ Car Top Hatch Switch in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.31 ☐ Number of Operable Car Gates in Compliance (2 max)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.32 ☐ Rear/ Side Gate Mechanical locking/ Switch in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.33 ☐ Car Structural Condition	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.34 ☐ Car Cage Condition	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.35 ☐ Car Overhead Protection / Guardrail Condition	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.36 ☐ Top of Car Housekeeping Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.37 ☐ On-site Communication Between Supervisors and Workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.38 ☐ Top Limit Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.39 ☐ Cathead Condition/ Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
30.40 ☐ Hoist Tie Condition/Compliance (Tower Guying/Tower Tie-in Bracing)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.41 ☐ Mast Installation Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.42 ☐ Run-by in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.43 ☐ Restricted Operations Review i.e. Drop Plate Use, Material Loading under Power	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.44 ☐ Guide Roller Wear/ Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.45 ☐ Control Panel Open-door Interlock Switch	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.46 ☐ Hoist Brake Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.47 ☐ Hoist Over-speed Governor Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.48 ☐ Positive Ties (no epoxy on existing building/ no	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		

compression ties)			
40.49 ☐ Car Operating Station in compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.50 ☐ Buffers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.51 ☐ Protection of Spaces Under Hoist	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.52 ☐ Power Shutoff in Sight of Main Unit at Loading Dock (Not Pit)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.53 ☐ All Steel Plates Used for Bridging Tethered and Secure in Car When not in Use	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.54 ☐ Personnel Hoist and Material Hoist Cannot Share the Same Hoisting	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.55 ☐ Disassembly and Removal	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
40.56 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50. Backstructure			
50.1 ☐ Protection of Spaces under Hoistway in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.2 ☐ Retiring in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.3 ☐ Backstructure Structural Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.4 ☐ Guardrail, Toeboard and Mesh Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.5 ☐ Backstructure Tie Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.6 ☐ Tie Removal/Replacement Program in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
50.7 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60. Material Only Hoist			
60.1 ☐ Material Handling Plans Approved by Site Safety Manager	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.2 ☐ Material Hoist Base Mount to Base Pad in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.3 ☐ Hoist Tower Structure in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.4 ☐ Hoist Tower Enclosure	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.5 ☐ Base Enclosure in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.6 ☐ Loading Dock in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.7 ☐ Overhead Protection in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.8 ☐ Drop Bar Gate/ Landing Gate Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory		

	☐ Follow-up		
60.9 ☐ Clearance of Car to Landing	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.10 ☐ Car Structure in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.11 ☐ Car Cage in Compliance (Opened from Landing Side)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.12 ☐ Car Safety Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.13 ☐ Tower Run-by in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.14 ☐ Tower Ties in Compliance (Tower Guying/Tower Tie-in Bracing)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.15 ☐ Winch Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.16 ☐ Operator Shanty Compliance with Overhead Protection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.17 ☐ Operator Communication in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.18 ☐ Winch to Tower Connection in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.19 ☐ Deflector Sheaves/ Fleet Angle in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.20 ☐ Operator House Support Structure in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.21 ☐ Cathead Structure in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.22 ☐ Cable Inspection Compliance include Terminations	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.23 ☐ Number of Minimum Cable Wraps on Drum in Compliance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.24 ☐ Required Signs in Compliance (i.e. No Riders, Rating)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.25 ☐ All Steel Plates Used for Bridging Tethered and Secure in Car When not in Use	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.26 ☐ Personnel Hoist and Material Hoist Cannot Share the Same Hoisting	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.27 ☐ Positive Ties (no epoxy on existing building/ no compression ties)	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.28 ☐ Main Line in Operator's Shanty	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
60.29 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70. DOB Inspections			
70.1 ☐ Tasks performed for each type of inspection	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.2 ☐ Level of detail at which a	☐ Satisfactory		

task should be performed	☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.3 ☐ Frequency of inspections after violations written	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.4 ☐ Timing of inspections with respect to job phase	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.5 ☐ Response time for complaint follow up	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.6 ☐ Spot checks and audits of self-certified inspections/tests	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.7 ☐ Technical capabilities for effective inspections	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.8 ☐ Training programs (rigging, type, reporting) content and effectiveness	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.9 ☐ Content and usability and development of SOPs	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.10 ☐ Content and usability and development of inspection checklists	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.11 ☐ Effectiveness and appropriateness of inspection forms	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.12 ☐ Need for double-checks by supervisor for quality assurance	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.13 ☐ Appropriateness of inspector behavior/relations with workers	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
70.14 ☐ Other	☐ Satisfactory ☐ Unsatisfactory ☐ Follow-up		
Report Comments:			

Task Time:	Task Time Comments:		
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:		
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:		
Violation(s) Issued: ☐	Requires Follow-up: ☐ Yes ☐ No	DOB Inspector:	

Report Prepared by:		Report Approved	
Print Name		☐ Yes	Approver Name
Signature:		Date approved:	Signature
Additional HRCO Staff:			
Print Name		Signature:	

Task Time:	Task Time Comments:
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:

Additional HRCO Staff:		
Print Name		Signature:

Task Time:	Task Time Comments:
Travel Time:	Travel Comments:
Office Time:	Office Time Comments:

Excavation Location Report

HIGH RISK CONSTRUCTION OVERSIGHT
NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF BUILDINGS

LOCATION REPORT - EXCAVATION UNIT

General Site Information/BIS Listing

Address:	BIN:	Job No.:	Page 1 of 4
Action Class: DOB Process / Job Related (enter Borough and address)	Action Level: Initial Site Visit / Follow-up Visit	HRCO Engineer(s):	Inspection Date:

Architect:	Structural Engineer:	Geotechnical Engineer:	Borough: Manhattan / Bronx / Brooklyn / Queens / Staten Island	Job Status (Select One): Not Started / Exc/SSB/UP / Foundation / Demolition / Other:
General Contractor:	Subgrade Consultant:	Excavation/SOE Contractor:		
Controlled Inspector:	CI On-Site: Yes / No	If Not, Date of Last Visit / TR1 On-Site: Yes / No		

NB Description and Site Information

Proposed NB Stories:	Current NB Stories:	No. Basement Levels:	Proposed NB Elevator: None / Isolated Central / Isolated on Perimeter / Adjacent to Existing Bldg

Foundation Class: Shallow (<12') / Deep (>12')

Identify Foundation Type(s): Spread / Mat / Pile (Pipe / HP or W Flng) / Caisson or Drilled Shaft / Micropile

Soil Conditions: SOIL to 50' below grade / ROCK within 50' of grade / Thin SOIL over ROCK

Soil Type: Hard Sound Rock / Med Hard Rock / Intermediate Rock / Soft Rock / Hardpan / Gravel/Gravel Soils / Coarse Sand / Fine Sand / Clay / Silt / Engineered Fill / Unsuitable

EX, SSB, UP Permits:	Excavation Design and Status:		SOE Status:	Underpinning Design and Status:		Soil Berms:
NB	Less Than 12'	Not Started (N/A)	Not Started (N/A)	None (N/A)	Not Started	None (or N/A)
ALT 2 with NB	Greater Than 12'	< 50% Excavated	< 50% Installed	Single Lift	< 50% Installed	2' High
ALT 2 without NB		> 50% Excavated	> 50% Installed	2 Lifts	> 50% Installed	5' High
None (N/A)		Complete	Complete	> 2 Lifts	Complete	> 5' High

General Results

Inspection:	Site Observations:	Exceptions:
Job Not Started (N/A)	Soil or pavement settlement behind SOE	Permit/Design Drawings not on-site
No Access to Site (Closed)	Structure settlement/distress associated with SOE	Work not performed in accordance with Permit/Design Drwgs
Access Denied	Structure settlement/distress associated with UP	Variation: Minor (practical tolerance) / Moderate
Site Inactive (No Contractor)	Structure settlement/distress associated with water mgmt	Significant / Changed Condition

Total Task Time: HRS	Comments
Travel Time: HRS	Comments
Office/Reporting Time: HRS	Comments
Potential Violation Reported: Yes / No	If yes, list Complaint No. from EOC: Emergency Operation Center (212.566.3415) For Non-Emergency contact DOB Customer Service (212.566.5232)

Report Prepared By:	**Report Approved By:**
Print Name:	Print Name:
Signature (Date):	Signature (Date):

General Site Information/BIS Listing

Address:	BIN:	Inspection Date:	Page 2 of 4

Review Category/Task		Time Spent	Comments	Evaluation
10	**SOE and UP Design: As reviewed in the FIELD**			
10.1	Technical SOUNDNESS of permitted subgrade NB design (Do the Architectural and Structural dwgs correspond to the EX/SOE dwgs)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
10.2	Technical COMPLETENESS of permitted subgrade NB design dwgs (Are adjacent structures depicted, SOE/UP details shown, etc.)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
10.3	Technical SOUNDNESS of permitted subgrade SOE design (Is the system suitable for the site conditions, is it adequately proportioned, etc.)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
10.4	Technical COMPLETENESS of permitted subgrade SOE design dwgs (Are sufficient sections and dimensions shown, are details clear, etc.)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
10.5	General Conformance with NYC BUILDING CODE design standards	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
20	**SOE and UP Design: As reviewed in the OFFICE**			
20.1	Technical SOUNDNESS of permitted subgrade NB design (Do the Architectural and Structural dwgs correspond to the EX/SOE dwgs)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
20.2	Technical COMPLETENESS of permitted subgrade NB design dwgs (Are adjacent structures depicted, SOE/UP details shown, etc.)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
20.3	Technical SOUNDNESS of permitted subgrade SOE design (Is the system suitable for the site conditions, is it adequately proportioned, etc.)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
20.4	Technical COMPLETENESS of permitted subgrade SOE design dwgs (Are sufficient sections and dimensions shown, are details clear, etc.)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
20.5	General Conformance to NYC BUILDING CODE design standards	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
20.6	General Conformance to NATIONAL (IBC, AASHTO, FHWA, USACE, etc.) design standards	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
30	**On-Site Controls**			
30.1	Clarity of public site safety warnings and notifications	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
30.2	Apparent Pre-work planning operations and coordination efforts	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
30.3	Physical protections from falling objects for public and adjacent buildings	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
30.4	Notification to Department of Buildings regarding job operations (Rule 52)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)

General Site Information/BIS Listing

Address:	BIN:	Inspection Date:	Page 3 of 4

Review Category/Task		Time Spent	Comments	Evaluation
40	**On-Site Observations: Excavation Operations**			
40.1	Adjacent property survey	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.2	Monitoring of adjacent property	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.3	Restriction of SOE and Excavation operations to avoid encroachment of adjacent properties	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.4	Excavation means and methods	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.5	SOE System construction/installation	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.6	Underpinning construction/installation	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.7	Testing methods and reporting of results	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.8	On-site communications between supervisors and workers	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.9	Worker/Operator training and familiarity with activity	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
40.10	Physical protections for workers	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)

Review Category/Task		Time Spent	Comments	Evaluation
50	**DOB Review**			
50.1	Review and approval of applications	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
50.2	Content of documentation provided	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
50.3	Technical capabilities for effective examination (Chiefs and DBCs)	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
50.4	Training program content and effectiveness	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)

General Site Information/BIS Listing

Address:	BIN:	Inspection Date:	Page 4 of 4

Review Category/Task	Time Spent	Comments	Evaluation
60 DOB Inspections			
60.1 Tasks performed for each type of inspection	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.2 Level of detail at which a task should be performed	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.3 Frequency of inspections after violations written	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.4 Timing of inspections with respect to job phase	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.5 Response time for complaint follow up	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.6 Spot checks and audits of self-certified inspections/tests	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.7 Technical capabilities for effective inspections	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.8 Training programs content and effectiveness	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.9 Content and usability and development of SOPs	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)
60.10 Content and usability and development of inspection checklists	MIN		☐ Adequate ☐ Inadequate ☐ Incomplete (Revisit)

70 Site Safety

Protection for Workers:

70.1 Harnesses	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.2 2(+) routes of egress	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.3 Guardrails	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.4 Overhead protection	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.5 Hardhats/PPE	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A

Protection of Public:

70.6 Sidewalk sheds	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.7 Fences/netting	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.8 Jersey barrier	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A
70.9 Lighting	☐ Adequate	☐ Inadequate	☐ None N/A

General Comments

Permit Audit Report

HIGH RISK CONSTRUCTION OVERSIGHT
NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF BUILDINGS

AUDIT CHECKLIST - EXCAVATION UNIT

General Site Information/BIS Listing			HRCO Engineer(s):	Audit Date:	Page 1 of 2
Address:	BIN:	Job No.:	DSD		

Site Plan (Basic Elements)

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
10.1	Adjacent Buildings (No. of Stories, Basements, *etc.*)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.2	Utilities		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.3	Property Lines		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.4	Streets and Sidewalks		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.5	Excavation Limits and Slopes		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.6	NB Foundations and/or Column Lines		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.7	SOE Comp (Soldier Piles, Sheetpile, Timber Shoring, *etc.*)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.8	Underpinning Alignment with Sequence		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.9	Anchorage (Tieback, Internal Bracing, Rakers) Comp		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.10	Section Callouts Identified		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.11	North Arrow		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.12			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.13			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Site Plan (Dimensions)

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
10.21	Elevation Reference		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.22	Setback and Encroachment of Foundation Elements		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.23	SOE Offset from Property Lines and Utilities		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.24	Center-to-Center Spacing of Soldier Piles		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.25	Underpinning Extent		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.26	Dewatering Components		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.27			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.28			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.29			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10.30			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

SOE Cross-Sections

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
20.1	Subsurface Soil and Groundwater Conditions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.2	Exst Foundations (Type, Dimensions, and Bearing Elev)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.3	Utilities (Type, Dimensions, and Bearing Elevation)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.4	Offset (to Fnds and Utilities) and Encroachment Dim		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.5	Exst Grade, Intermediate Stages, and Final Excav Elev		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.6	Berm Dimensions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.7	Top and Tip Elevation of Sheeting and Soldier Piles		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.8	Anchor and Wale Elevation		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.9	Anchorage Dimensions (Tieback and Deadman)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.10	Installation/Excavation Staging Sequence		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.11	At Least 1 Section at Each Side of Excavation		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.12	At Least 1 Typ Section Extends Beyond the Active Zone		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.14			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.15			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

General Site Information/BIS Listing			HRCO Engineer(s):	Audit Date:	Page 2 of 2
Address: 0	BIN: 0	Job No.: 0	DSD	1/0/1900	

Underpinning Cross-Sections

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
20.21	Subsurface Conditions (Soil/Rock Type and Allow Brg)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.22	Existing Foundations (Type, Dimensions, and Brg Elev)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.23	Bearing Elevation of Underpinning		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.24	Lift Sequence, Box Pit and Pin Dimensions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.25	Approach Pit Dimensions, Excavation Slopes		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.26	Bracing and/or Shoring for Sideslopes		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.27	Anchorage/Bracing Elevations and Dimensions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.28	Installation Sequence		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.29	Shimming/Dry Pack Requirements and Schedule		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.30	At Least 1 Section at Each Adjacent Building		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
20.31			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Anchorage (Grouted Tiebacks or Alternate)

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
30.1	Soil/Rock Type in Bond Zone		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.2	Bonded/Unbonded Length		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.3	Diameter of Bond Zone		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.4	Design Capacity/Lock-off Load		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.5	Component Sizes (Threadbar, Hollowbar, Tendon)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.6	Installation Angle		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.7	Grout Strength		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.8	Proof/Production Test Requirements and Schedule		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.9	Raker/Bracing Dimensions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.10			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
30.11			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Connections, Misc Details, And Specifications

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
40.1	Size/Extent of Welds		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.2	Electrode Type		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.3	Stiffener Plates (Spacing and Dimensions)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.4	Wale Support and Knee Brace Dimensions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.5	Bearing Plate Dimensions		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.6	Splice Detail		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.7	Material Specs (Steel Gr, Lagging, Conc Strength *etc.*)		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
40.8			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Reinforcement

	Items	Comments	N/A	Original Permit Adequate	Original Permit Inadequate	Requested Change Yes	Requested Change No	Final Drawing Adequate	Final Drawing Inadequate
50.1	Bar and Dowel Sizes		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50.2	Spacing		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50.3	Lengths		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50.4	Bend Requirements		☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50.5			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50.6			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50.7			☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐